

PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I.

FIRST LATIN COURSE.

COMPREHENDING

GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK,
WITH VOCABULARIES.

For the Use of the Lower Forms in Public and Private Schools.

BY THE LATE SIR WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

THIRTY-EIGHTH EDITION.

CAREFULLY REVISED THROUGHOUT, WITH ADDITIONS TO THE GRAMMAR FORMING A
COMPLETE LATIN PRIMER.

THIRD IMPRESSION.

LONDON:
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.
1900.

LONDON :
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

PREFACE TO THE THIRTY-SEVENTH EDITION.

THE method of teaching languages originated by the late Sir William Smith, and embodied by him in his *PRINCIPIA SERIES*, has met with very remarkable success, and has been very widely adopted throughout the English-speaking world.

The *PRINCIPIA LATINA*, which was followed by similar books on the Greek, French, German, and Italian languages, was the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction.

In some cases boys had been compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences; in others they had been burdened by a large number of explanations, exceptions, and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflexional forms.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into three parts :—

I. The first part contains the elementary grammatical forms, with exercises upon the inflexions; concurrently with which the simple rules of syntax are introduced as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of the more important idioms of the language, such as the

construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, &c., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabularies contain all the words in the Exercises, and Alphabetical Indexes of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are appended to them, forming a first Latin Dictionary.

III. The third part contains fuller details of the grammatical forms, thus forming with those given in the first part a complete Latin Primer, and obviating the necessity of using any other Grammar, till the pupil has made further progress in his studies. It is recommended, however, that the elementary forms in the first part, with the exercises upon them, should be thoroughly mastered by the pupil before his attention is directed to the additional grammatical forms.

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will be found to have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and thus be prepared to enter with advantage upon the systematic study of the language.

For many years after the publication of the Public School Latin Primer, the cases of the Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns were arranged in duplicate form, according to the old and the newer method, in order to meet the convenience of teachers; but now that the arrangement of the cases according to the system of the Public School Primer has been almost universally adopted, it has been thought better to present this form only.

Various alterations and improvements have been introduced into the PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part I., during past years, in most cases at the suggestion of teachers who had by long practice tested the book; but the present edition has undergone a thorough revision to adapt it more completely to the requirements of modern teaching: and whilst the identity of the book has been scrupulously pre-

served and no change made in its plan or arrangement, various alterations of detail have been introduced with the object of making the beginner's steps more easy and sure.

(1) Several Exercises which have hitherto proved rather a stumbling-block to young learners—especially Nos. xvii and xxv—have been re-cast ; while a few others have been slightly modified.

(2) The treatment of the Locative Case has been postponed. See pp. 93, 114.

The Indexes have been rendered more complete and are given in larger type.

• It is hoped that teachers who have become accustomed to the book will find little or no inconvenience in adapting themselves to the changes which have been made, and will recognize that they have been made with the sole object of bringing the pupil 'past the bitterness of his learning.' And it may be said without the slightest reserve, that no single change has been made which has not had that object in view.

The reviser desires to express his acknowledgments to Mr. Thomas Allen, M.A., for many valuable suggestions.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

ELEMENTARY GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, AND PRONOUNS.

	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET—PARTS OF SPEECH	1
II. PRONUNCIATION	2
III. SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS	3
IV. THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION	3
V. THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION	5
VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	7
VII. THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION ..	11.
VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	18
IX. THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION	20
X. THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION	21
XI. SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS	22
XII. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	23
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	24
XIV. THE NUMERALS	27
XV. THE VERB SUM	29
XVI. COMPOUNDS OF SUM	31
XVII. THE PRONOUNS	33

VERBS.

XVIII. THE VERB	37
XIX. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE ..	38
XX. SECOND OR E " " "	40
XXI. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION ..	42
XXII. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION	44
EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE	46

CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
XXIII. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE ..	54
XXIV. SECOND OR E " " " " ..	56
XXV. THIRD CONJUGATION " " " ..	58
XXVI. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE ..	60
EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE	63
XXVII. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES	67
XXVIII. DEPONENT VERBS	69, 70
XXIX. PREPOSITIONS	73
XXX. ADVERBS	75
XXXI. IRREGULAR VERBS:	
1. POSSUM	77
2. VOLO	78
3. NOLO	78
4. MALO	78
5. FERRO	81
6. EO	83
7. FIO	85
8. EDO	85
9. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS	86
XXXII. IMPERSONAL VERBS	87

PART II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

XXXIII. THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE	89
XXXIV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	90
XXXV. THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION ..	91
XXXVI. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS ..	92
XXXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND THE INFINITIVE ..	93
XXXVIII. DIRECT QUESTIONS	95
XXXIX. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	96
XL. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	98
XLI. USE OF THE SUPINES	101
XLII. USE OF THE GERUND	101
XLIII. USE OF THE GERUNDIVE	102
A SHORT SYNTAX	105

PART III.

ADDITIONS TO THE GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

	PAGE
I. ALPHABET	110
II. PARTS OF SPEECH—INFLEXION	112
III. DECLENSION OF NOUNS	113
IV. FIRST OR A DECLENSION	115
V. SECOND OR O DECLENSION	116
VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	117
VII. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION	117
VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	120
IX. THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION	120
X. THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION	121
XI. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE NOUNS	121
XII. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS	123
XIII. THE NUMERALS	125
XIV. THE PRONOUNS	128
XV. THE VERB	130
XVI. FORMATION OF TENSES	133
XVII. DEPONENT, SEMI-DEPONENT, AND NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS	135
XVIII. PERFECTS AND SUPINES	136
XIX. DEFECTIVE VERBS	147
XX. VERBS DERIVED FROM OTHER VERBS	148
XXI. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	149
XXII. CONJUNCTIONS	150
Vocabularies	151
LATIN INDEX	171
ENGLISH INDEX	195

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I (J), K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i (j), k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U (V), X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u (v), x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are ordinarily pronounced as *ē*. In *eu, ei, ui*, the second letter of the diphthong only is usually sounded.

A Long Vowel may be indicated by the mark (¯) over the vowel. A Short Vowel by the mark (˘). (See p. 111.)

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive or Noun. | 5. Adverb. |
| 2. Adjective. | 6. Preposition. |
| 3. Pronoun. | 7. Conjunction. |
| 4. Verb. | 8. Interjection. |

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

PR. L. I.

II.—PRONUNCIATION.

There are two different modes of pronouncing Latin in England.

1. The 'old' or ordinary, traditional, pronunciation; which gives to each letter the sound which it commonly has in our own language. The familiar words *pater*, *father*; *mater*, *mother*; *regina*, *queen*; *idem*, *the same*, may serve as examples.

2. The 'new' or restored pronunciation; which aims at giving to each letter the sound which was given to it by the Romans themselves in ancient times.

The chief points of difference between the two methods concern the long vowels *ā*, *ē*, *ī*, the short sound of *u*, the diphthong *au*, the consonants *c*, *g*, *j*, *v*, and the syllable *ti* when followed by another vowel. These differences are shown in the following table:—

Latin letters.	'Old' pronunciation.	'New' pronunciation.
<i>ā</i>	as in <i>make</i>	as in <i>father</i>
<i>ē</i>	„ <i>me</i>	„ <i>ei</i> in <i>rein</i>
<i>ī</i>	„ <i>mine</i>	„ in <i>machine</i>
<i>ū</i> (often)	„ <i>tub</i>	„ <i>full</i>
<i>au</i>	„ <i>Paul</i>	„ <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i>
<i>c</i>	soft before <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>y</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>oe</i>	always hard = <i>k</i>
<i>g</i>	soft before <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>y</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>oe</i>	always hard, as in <i>go</i>
<i>j</i>	as in <i>joke</i>	as <i>y</i> in <i>yoke</i>
<i>v</i>	„ <i>van</i>	„ <i>w</i> in <i>win</i>
<i>ti</i>	} „ <i>nation</i>	{ pure sound of <i>t</i> retained, as <i>nā-tī-o</i> .
(<i>fol.</i> by vowel)		

Which ever mode of pronunciation is adopted, it is important that the distinction between long and short vowels should be carefully observed: as, *li-ber*, *free*, but *lib-er*, *a book*; *lē-vis*, *smooth*, but *lēv-is*, *light*; *pō-pūlus*, *a poplar-tree*, but *pōp-ū-lus*, *a people* or *nation*.

e is never mute as in English, but always forms a separate syllable; as, *es-se* (two syll.), *ā-mā-rē* (three syll.), *mī-lēs* (two syll.). Also when two vowels come together which do not form a diphthong, each vowel retains its separate sound: as, *ē-am*, *rē-ār*, *bō-um*, *dī-ēs*.

ACCENT.—See page 112.

III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

Nouns are inflected for *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative*.

There was once another Case, the *Locative*: see p. 114.

There are three Genders: *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Gen. Sing.	as	I	is	ūs	ēi
Gen. Plur.	Ā-rum	ō-rum	{-um I-um}	Ū-um	Ē-rum

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I	II	III	IV	V
Ā	Ō	consonant or I	Ū	Ē

IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Mens-ā (<i>fem.</i>) a table	mens-ae	tables
Voc.	mens-ā O table	mens-ae	O tables
Acc.	mens-am a table	mens-ās	tables
Gen.	mens-ae of a table	mens-ārum	of tables
Dat.	mens-ae to or for a table	mens-is	to or for tables
Abl.	mens-ā by, with, or from a table.	mens-is	by, with, or from tables.

NOTE.—*Filiā*, a daughter, *dēā*, a goddess, and a few other Nouns, usually make the Dat. and Abl. Plur. in *ābūs*: as, *filiābūs*, *dēābūs*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, except those which designate males: as, *nautā*, a sailor. See also p. 123.

[The Vocabularies begin on p. 151.]

RULE 1.—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, *puellā currīt, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

RULE 2.—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case: as, *āquilā alās hābēt, the eagle has wings.*

NOTE.—In Latin the verb is usually put last and the Accusative case immediately before it.

Singular, 3 pers.		Plural, 3 pers.	
currīt	(he, she, it) runs.	currunt	(they) run.
hābēt	(he, she, it) has.	hābent	(they) have.

EXERCISE I.

1. Filia currit. 2. Filiae currunt. 3. Regina coronam habet. 4. Puella coronam habet. 5. Filia pecuniam habet. 6. Femina pecuniam habet. 7. Roma portas habet. 8. Coloniae portas habent. 9. Puellae rosas habent. 10. Feminae rosas habent. 11. Columbae alas habent. 12. Insulae oras habent.

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To be," they are put in the same case: as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.*

RULE 4.—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other: as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae, Britain is an island of Europe.*

est (he, she, it) is, there is.

sunt (they) are, there are.

EXERCISE II.

1. Sicilia est insula. 2. Sicilia est insula Europae. 3. Roma est regina Italiae. 4. Incolae Italiae sunt poetae. 5. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 6. Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae. 7. Insula est patria nautarum. 8. Graecia est patria poetarum. 9. Amicitia est gloria vitae. 10. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

A. Masculine.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
Nom.	<i>Dōmīn-ūs</i>	<i>a lord</i>	<i>dōmīn-i</i>	<i>lords</i>
Voc.	<i>dōmīn-ē</i>	<i>O lord</i>	<i>dōmīn-i</i>	<i>O lords</i>
Acc.	<i>dōmīn-um</i>	<i>a lord</i>	<i>dōmīn-ōs</i>	<i>lords</i>
Gen.	<i>dōmīn-i</i>	<i>of a lord</i>	<i>dōmīn-ōrum</i>	<i>of lords</i>
Dat.	<i>dōmīn-ō</i>	<i>to or for a lord</i>	<i>dōmīn-is</i>	<i>to or for lords</i>
Abl.	<i>dōmīn-ō</i>	<i>by, with, or from a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-is</i>	<i>by, with, or from lords.</i>

2.

Nom.	<i>Māgistr</i>	<i>a master</i>	<i>māgistr-i</i>	<i>masters</i>
Voc.	<i>māgistr</i>	<i>O master</i>	<i>māgistr-i</i>	<i>O masters</i>
Acc.	<i>māgistr-um</i>	<i>a master</i>	<i>māgistr-ōs</i>	<i>masters</i>
Gen.	<i>māgistr-i</i>	<i>of a master</i>	<i>māgistr-ōrum</i>	<i>of masters</i>
Dat.	<i>māgistr-ō</i>	<i>to or for a master</i>	<i>māgistr-is</i>	<i>to or for masters</i>
Abl.	<i>māgistr-ō</i>	<i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	<i>māgistr-is</i>	<i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

3.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Puēr</i>	<i>a boy</i>	<i>puēr-i</i>	<i>boys</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>O boy</i>	<i>puēr-i</i>	<i>O boys</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puēr-um</i>	<i>a boy</i>	<i>puēr-ōs</i>	<i>boys</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puēr-i</i>	<i>of a boy</i>	<i>puēr-ōrum</i>	<i>of boys</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puēr-ō</i>	<i>to or for a boy</i>	<i>puēr-is</i>	<i>to or for boys</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puēr-ō</i>	<i>by, with, or from a boy.</i>	<i>puēr-is</i>	<i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

NOTE 1.—Nouns in ūs, ium, often contract the Gen. Sing. īi into i: as, filiūs, *a son*, Gen. filiī or fili; praeimiūm, *a reward*, Gen. Sing. praeimiī or praeimi.

2. Proper Names in iūs, together with filiūs, *a son*, and gēniūs, *a guardian deity*, have Voc. Sing. in i: as, Mercūriūs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mercūri; filiūs, Voc. fili; gēniūs, Voc. gēni.

3. There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in īr, namely, vir, *a man* (as distinguished from *a woman*).

Nom.	<i>Vir</i>	<i>a man</i>	<i>vir-i</i>	<i>men</i>
Voc.	<i>vir</i>	<i>O man</i>	<i>vir-i</i>	<i>O men</i>
Acc.	<i>vir-um</i>	<i>a man</i>	<i>vir-ōs</i>	<i>men</i>
Gen.	<i>vir-i</i>	<i>of a man</i>	<i>vir-ōrum,</i> <i>vir-UM</i>	} <i>of men</i>
Dat.	<i>vir-ō</i>	<i>to or for a man</i>	<i>vir-is</i>	
Abl.	<i>vir-ō</i>	<i>by, with, or from a man.</i>	<i>vir-is</i>	<i>to or for men</i> <i>by, with, or from men.</i>

B. Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.A.	Regn-um a kingdom, or O kingdom	regn-ă kingdoms, or O kingdoms
Gen.	regn-i of a kingdom	regn-ōrum of kingdoms
Dat.	regn-ō to or for a kingdom	regn-is to or for kingdoms
Abl.	regn-ō by, with, or from a kingdom.	regn-is by, with, or from kingdoms.

NOTE.—The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative of all Neuter Nouns are the same in each Number, and in the Plural these three cases always end in a.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in ūs are Masculine, but flames of trees are Feminine; as, mālūs, an apple-tree. (See also p. 123.)

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in ūs are Neuter: virtūs, poison; vulgūs (sometimes Masc.), the multitude; pēlāgūs, the (open) sea. They are used only in the Singular.

ēt and.

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in ūs.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii ipimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Europae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhine and the Rhone are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person to whom something is given: as, māgister cōlumbam pŭērō dāt, the master gives a dove to the boy.

dāt (he, she, it) gives.

dant (they) give.

EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in ōr.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socr agros et ministros habet. 7. Socr agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys. 3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The

father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

EXERCISE V.

Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum caeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templum sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in ūs, ā, um, and ěr, (ě)rā, (ě)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension; as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, *good*; nigrĕ, nigrā, nigrum, *black*; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnĕrum, *tender*.

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
<i>Voc.</i>	bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
<i>Acc.</i>	bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā	
<i>Gen.</i>	bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is	
<i>Abl.</i>	bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is	

	Sing.			2.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>N. V.</i>	Nigrĕ	nigr-ā	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
<i>Acc.</i>	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā	
<i>Gen.</i>	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is	
<i>Abl.</i>	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is	

Sing.			3.	Plur.		
M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N. V. Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā	
Acc. tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā	
Gen. tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum	
Dat. tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	
Abl. tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	

4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.		
N. V. Parvā mensā		<i>a small table, or O small table</i>
Acc. parvam mensam		<i>a small table</i>
Gen. parvae mensae		<i>of a small table</i>
Dat. parvae mensae		<i>to or for a small table</i>
Abl. parvā mensā		<i>by, with, or from a small table.</i>
Plur.		
N. V. parvae mensae		<i>small tables, or O small tables</i>
Acc. parvas mensas		<i>small tables</i>
Gen. parvārum mensārum		<i>of small tables</i>
Dat. parvis mensis		<i>to or for small tables</i>
Abl. parvis mensis		<i>by, with, or from small tables.</i>

5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)		
Sing.		
Nom. Bōnūs dōmīnūs		<i>a good lord</i>
Voc. bōnē dōmīnē		<i>O good lord</i>
Acc. bōnum dōminum		<i>a good lord</i>
Gen. bōnī dōmīnī		<i>of a good lord</i>
Dat. bōnō dōmīnō		<i>to or for a good lord</i>
Abl. bōnō dōmīnō		<i>by, with, or from a good lord</i>
Plur.		
N. V. bōnī dōmīnī		<i>good lords, or O good lords</i>
Acc. bōnōs dōmīnōs		<i>good lords</i>
Gen. bōnōrum dōmīnōrum		<i>of good lords</i>
Dat. bōnīs dōmīnīs		<i>to or for good lords</i>
Abl. bōnīs dōmīnīs		<i>by, with, or from good lords.</i>
(B.)		
Sing.		
Nom. Bōnūs pūēr		<i>a good boy</i>
Voc. bōnē pūēr		<i>O good boy</i>
Acc. bōnum pūērum		<i>a good boy</i>
Gen. bōnī pūērī		<i>of a good boy</i>
Dat. bōnō pūērō		<i>to or for a good boy</i>
Abl. bōnō pūērō		<i>by, with, or from a good boy.</i>

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

8

Plur.

<i>N.V.</i> bōnī pūērī	<i>good boys, or O good boys</i>
<i>Acc.</i> bōnōs pūērōs	<i>good boys</i>
<i>Gen.</i> bōnōrum pūērōrum	<i>of good boys</i>
<i>Dat.</i> bōnīs pūērīs	<i>to or for good boys</i>
<i>Abl.</i> bōnīs pūērīs	<i>by, with, or from good boys.</i>

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

<i>N.V.A.</i> Magnum regnum	<i>a great kingdom, or O great kingdom</i>
<i>Gen.</i> magnī regnī	<i>of a great kingdom</i>
<i>Dat.</i> magnō regnō	<i>to or for a great kingdom</i>
<i>Abl.</i> magnō regnō	<i>by, with, or from a great kingdom.</i>

Plur.

<i>N.V.A.</i> magnā regnā	<i>great kingdoms, or O great kingdoms</i>
<i>Gen.</i> magnōrum regnōrum	<i>of great kingdoms</i>
<i>Dat.</i> magnīs regnīs	<i>to or for great kingdoms</i>
<i>Abl.</i> magnīs regnīs	<i>by, with, or from great kingdoms.</i>

B.)

Sing. only.

<i>N.V.A.</i> Magnum pēlāgūs	<i>the great sea</i>
<i>Gen.</i> magnī pēlāgī	<i>of the great sea</i>
<i>Dat.</i> magnō pēlāgō	<i>to or for the great sea</i>
<i>Abl.</i> magnō pēlāgō	<i>by, with, or from the great sea.</i>

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i> Clārus nautā	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Voc.</i> clārē nautā	<i>O famous sailor</i>
<i>Acc.</i> clārum nautam	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Gen.</i> clārī nautae	<i>of a famous sailor</i>
<i>Dat.</i> clārō nautae	<i>to or for a famous sailor</i>
<i>Abl.</i> clārō nautā	<i>by, with, or from a famous sailor.</i>

Plur.

<i>N.V.</i> clārī nautae	<i>famous sailors, or O famous sailors</i>
<i>Acc.</i> clārōs nautās	<i>famous sailors</i>
<i>Gen.</i> clārōrum nautārum	<i>of famous sailors</i>
<i>Dat.</i> clārīs nautīs	<i>to or for famous sailors</i>
<i>Abl.</i> clārīs nautīs	<i>by, with, or from famous sailors.</i>

RULE 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case: as, *bōn-us vīr, a good man; bōn-ā fēminā, a good woman; bōn-ā exemplā, good examples.*

NOTE.—The Adjective in Latin is often placed after the Noun: as, *oppidum parvum, a small town.*

EXERCISE VI.

A.—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columnae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhine is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhone is a rapid river.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Trāb-s (f.) <i>a beam, or O beam</i>	trāb-ēs	beams, or O beams
Acc. trāb-em <i>a beam</i>	trāb-ēs	beams
Gen. trāb-is <i>of a beam</i>	trāb-um	of beams
Dat. trāb-i <i>to or for a beam</i>	trāb-ibūs	to or for beams
Abl. trāb-ē <i>by, with, or from a beam.</i>	trāb-ibūs	by, with, or from beams.

		2.		
N.V. Princēp-s	(c.)	<i>a chief, or O</i>	princēp-ēs	<i>chiefs, or O chiefs</i>
Acc. princēp-em		<i>a chief, [chief]</i>	princēp-ēs	<i>chiefs</i>
Gen. princēp-is		<i>of a chief</i>	princēp-um	<i>of chiefs</i>
Dat. princēp-i		<i>to or for a chief</i>	princēp-ibūs	<i>to or for chiefs</i>
Abl. princēp-ē		<i>by, with, or from a chief.</i>	princēp-ibūs	<i>by, with, or from chiefs.</i>

3.

N.V.	Hīēm-s (f.)	<i>winter, or O</i>
Acc.	hīēm-em	<i>winter [winter]</i>
Gen.	hīēm-is	<i>of winter</i>
Dat.	hīēm-i	<i>to or for winter</i>
Abl.	hīēm-ē	<i>in, by, with, or from winter.</i>

hīēm-ēs	<i>winters, or O winters</i>
hīēm-ēs	<i>winters</i>
hīēm-um	<i>of winters</i>
hīēm-ibūs	<i>to or for winters</i>
hīēm-ibūs	<i>in, by, with, or from winters.</i>

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c, g*.

NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs, gs* are contracted into *x*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Dux (c.) <i>a leader, or O leader</i>	dūc-ēs	leaders, or O leaders
Acc. dūc-em <i>a leader</i>	dūc-ēs	leaders
Gen. dūc-is <i>of a leader</i>	dūc-um	of leaders
Dat. dūc-i <i>to or for a leader</i>	dūc-ibūs	to or for leaders
Abl. dūc-ē <i>by, with, or from a leader.</i>	dūc-ibūs	by, with, or from leaders.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
N.V. Lex (f.)	a law, or O law	lĕg-ēs	laws, or O laws
Acc. lĕg-em	a law	lĕg-ēs	laws
Gen. lĕg-is	of a law	lĕg-um	of laws
Dat. lĕg-i	to or for a law	lĕg-ibŭs	to or for laws
Abl. lĕg-ē	by, with, or from a law.	lĕg-ibŭs	by, with, or from laws.

		3.	
N.V. Jūdex (c)	a judge, or O judge	jūdic-ēs	judges, or O judges
Acc. jūdic-em	a judge	jūdic-ēs	judges
Gen. jūdic-is	of a judge	jūdic-um	of judges
Dat. jūdic-i	to or for a judge	jūdic-ibŭs	to or for judges
Abl. jūdic-ē	by, with, or from a judge.	jūdic-ibŭs	by, with, or from judges.

ērāt (he, she it) was; there was.

ērant (they) were; there were.

EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Aetā-s (f.)	an age, or O age	aetāt-ēs	ages, or O ages
Acc. aetāt-em	an age	aetāt-ēs	ages
Gen. aetāt-is	of an age	aetāt-um	of ages
Dat. aetāt-i	to or for an age	aetāt-ibŭs	to or for ages
Abl. aetāt-ē	in, by, with, or from an age.	aetāt-ibŭs	in, by, with, or from ages.

		2.	
N.V. Lāpis (m.)	a stone, or O stone	lāpīd-ēs	stones, or O stones
Acc. lāpīd-em	a stone	lāpīd-ēs	stones
Gen. lāpīd-is	of a stone	lāpīd-um	of stones
Dat. lāpīd-i	to or for a stone	lāpīd-ibŭs	to or for stones
Abl. lāpīd-ē	by, with, or from a stone.	lāpīd-ibŭs	by, with, or from stones.

3.

<i>N.V.</i> milĭ-s (c.)	a soldier, or O
<i>Acc.</i> milĭt-em	a soldier [soldier
<i>Gen.</i> milĭt-is	of a soldier
<i>Dat.</i> milĭt-i	to or for a soldier
<i>Abl.</i> milĭt-ē	by, with, or from a soldier.

milĭt-ēs	soldiers, or O soldiers
milĭt-ēs	soldiers
milĭt-um	of soldiers
milĭt-ibŭs	to or for soldiers
milĭt-ibŭs	by, with, or from soldiers.

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done : as, *dōmīnŭs hastā servum occīdit*, *the lord kills the slave with a spear*.

(2) The time when something is done or takes place : as, *noctēs hīemē longae sunt*, *the nights are long in winter*.

occīdit (he, she, it) kills.

occidunt (they) kill.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

Sing.

1.

<i>N.V.</i> consŭl (m.)	a consul, or O
<i>Acc.</i> consŭl-em	a consul [consul
<i>Gen.</i> consŭl-is	of a consul
<i>Dat.</i> consŭl-i	to or for a consul
<i>Abl.</i> consŭl-ē	by, with, or from a consul.

Plur.

consŭl-ēs	consuls, or O consuls
consŭl-ēs	consuls
consŭl-um	of consuls
consŭl-ibŭs	to or for consuls
consŭl-ibŭs	by, with, or from consuls.

2.

<i>N.V.</i> clāmōr (m.)	a shout, or O
<i>Acc.</i> clāmōr-em	a shout [shout
<i>Gen.</i> clāmōr-is	of a shout
<i>Dat.</i> clāmōr-i	to or for a shout
<i>Abl.</i> clāmōr-ē	by, with, or from a shout.

clāmōr-ēs	shouts, or O shouts
clāmōr-ēs	shouts
clāmōr-um	of shouts
clāmōr-ibŭs	to or for shouts
clāmōr-ibŭs	by, with, or from shouts.

Sing.		3.	Plur.
N.V. Ansēr (m.)	a goose, or O goose	ansēr-ēs	geese, or O geese
Acc. ansēr-em	a goose	ansēr-ēs	geese
Gen. ansēr-is	of a goose	ansēr-um	of geese
Dat. ansēr-i	to or for a goose	ansēr-ibūs	to or for geese
Abl. ansēr-ē	by, with, or from a goose.	ansēr-ibūs	by, with, or from geese.
4.			
N.V. Pātēr	a father, or O father	patr-ēs	fathers, or O fathers
Acc. patr-em	a father	patr-ēs	fathers
Gen. patr-is	of a father	patr-um	of fathers
Dat. patr-i	to or for a father	patr-ibūs	to or for fathers
Abl. patr-ē	by, with, or from a father.	patr-ibūs	by, with, or from fathers.
5.			
N.V. Flōs (m.)	a flower, or O flower	flōr-ēs	flowers, or O flowers
Acc. flōr-em	a flower	flōr-ēs	flowers
Gen. flōr-is	of a flower	flōr-um	of flowers
Dat. flōr-i	to or for a flower	flōr-ibūs	to or for flowers
Abl. flōr-ē	by, with, or from a flower.	flōr-ibūs	by, with, or from flowers.

EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ōn* (*in*).

Sing.		1.	Plur.
N.V. Lēo (m.)	a lion, or O lion	lēōn-ēs	lions, or O lions
Acc. lēōn-em	a lion	lēōn-ēs	lions
Gen. lēōn-is	of a lion	lēōn-um	of lions
Dat. lēōn-i	to or for a lion	lēōn-ibūs	to or for lions
Abl. lēōn-ē	by, with, or from a lion.	lēōn-ibūs	by, with, or from lions.
2.			
N.V. Virgo (f.)	a maiden, or O maiden	virgīn-ēs	maidens, or O maidens
Acc. virgīn-em	a maiden	virgīn-ēs	maidens
Gen. virgīn-is	of a maiden	virgīn-um	of maidens
Dat. virgīn-i	to or for a maiden	virgīn-ibūs	to or for maidens
Abl. virgīn-ē	by, with, or from a maiden.	virgīn-ibūs	by, with, or from maidens.

EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

(See also p. 117: Acc. Sing. in *im* and Abl. in *i*.)

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Host-īs</i> (c.) <i>an enemy, or O</i>	<i>host-ēs</i> <i>enemies, or O enemies</i>	
<i>Acc. host-em</i> <i>an enemy [enemy]</i>	<i>host-ēs</i> <i>enemies</i>	
<i>Gen. host-īs</i> <i>of an enemy</i>	<i>host-īum</i> <i>of enemies</i>	
<i>Dat. host-i</i> <i>to or for an enemy</i>	<i>host-ībūs</i> <i>to or for enemies</i>	
<i>Abl. host-ē</i> <i>by, with, or from an enemy.</i>	<i>host-ībūs</i> <i>by, with, or from enemies.</i>	

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined:—

	2.	
<i>N.V. Nūb-ēs</i> (f.) <i>a cloud, or O</i>	<i>nūb-ēs</i> <i>clouds, or O clouds</i>	
<i>Acc. nūb-em</i> <i>a cloud [cloud]</i>	<i>nūb-ēs</i> <i>clouds</i>	
<i>Gen. nūb-īs</i> <i>of a cloud</i>	<i>nūb-īum</i> <i>of clouds</i>	
<i>Dat. nūb-i</i> <i>to or for a cloud</i>	<i>nūb-ībūs</i> <i>to or for clouds</i>	
<i>Abl. nūb-ē</i> <i>by, with, or from a cloud.</i>	<i>nūb-ībūs</i> <i>by, with, or from clouds.</i>	

EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turre altas habet. 6. Caedes hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

B. Neuter Nouns.

I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n, r, s, t*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.A. Nōmēn a name, or O	nōmīn-ā names, or O names	
Gen. nōmīn-is of a name [name	nōmīn-um of names	
Dat. nōmīn-i to or for a name	nōmīn-ibūs to or for names	
Abl. nōmīn-ē by, with, or from	nōmīn-ibūs by, with, or from	names.
	2.	
N.V.A. Fulgūr lightning, or O	fulgūr-ā lightning, or O light-	
Gen. fulgūr-is of lightning	fulgūr-um of lightnings	
Dat. fulgūr-i to or for lightning	fulgūr-ibūs to or for lightnings	
Abl. fulgūr-ē by, with, or from	fulgūr-ibūs by, with, or from	lightnings.
	3.	
N.V.A. Crūs a leg, or O leg	crūr-ā legs, or O legs	
Gen. crūr-is of a leg	crūr-um of legs	
Dat. crūr-i to or for a leg	crūr-ibūs to or for legs	
Abl. crūr-ē by, with, or from a	crūr-ibūs by, with, or from legs.	
	4.	
N.V.A. Ōpūs a work, or O work	ōpēr-ā works, or O works	
Gen. ōpēr-is of a work	ōpēr-um of works	
Dat. ōpēr-i to or for a work	ōpēr-ibūs to or for works	
Abl. ōpēr-ē by, with, or from a	ōpēr-ibūs by, with, or from	works.
	5.	
N.V.A. Corpūs a body, or O body	corpōr-ā bodies, or O bodies	
Gen. corpōr-is of a body	corpōr-um of bodies	
Dat. corpōr-i to or for a body	corpōr-ibūs to or for bodies	
Abl. corpōr-ē by, with, or from	corpōr-ibūs by, with, or from	bodies.
	6.	
N.V.A. Cāpūt a head, or O head	cāpīt-ā heads, or O heads	
Gen. cāpīt-is of a head	cāpīt-um of heads	
Dat. cāpīt-i to or for a head	cāpīt-ibūs to or for heads	
Abl. cāpīt-ē by, with, or from	cāpīt-ibūs by, with, or from	heads.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ē, āl, ār*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.A. Mār-ē the sea, or O sea	mār-īā seas, or O seas	
Gen. mār-is of the sea	mār-ium of seas	
Dat. mār-i to or for the sea	mār-ibūs to or for seas	
Abl. mār-i by, with, or from	mār-ibūs by, with, or from	seas.

Sing.		2.	Plur.
N.V.A.	Ānimāl an animal, or O animal	ānimāl-īā	animāls, or O ani- mals
Gen.	• ānimāl-īs of an animal	ānimāl-īum	of animals
Dat.	ānimāl-ī to or for an animal.	ānimāl-ībūs	to or for animals
Abl.	ānimāl-ī by, with, or from an animal.	ānimāl-ībūs	by, with, or from animals.

3.			
N.V.A.	Calcār a spur, or O spur	calcār-īā	spurs, or O spurs
Gen.	calcār-īs of a spur	calcār-īum	of spurs
Dat.	calcār-ī to or for a spur	calcār-ībūs	to or for spurs
Abl.	calcār-ī by, with, or from a spur.	calcār-ībūs	by, with, or from spurs.

EXERCISE XII.

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephantī magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt cōmicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are wide. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are strong. 5. The king gives new nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. Magnus dux,—a great leader.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Magnūs dux	magnī dūcēs
Voc. magnē dux	magnī dūcēs
Acc. magnum dūcem	magnōs dūcēs
Gen. magnī dūcis	magnōrum dūcum
Dat. magnō dūci	magnis dūcībūs
Abl. magnō dūcē	magnis dūcībūs.

2. Bōnā mātēr,—a good mother.

	Sing.	Plur
N.V.	Bōnā mātēr	bōnae mātērēs
Acc.	bōnam mātrem	bōnās mātērēs
Gen.	bōnae mātēris	bōnārum mātrum
Dat.	bōnae mātēri	bōnīs mātēribūs
Abl.	bōnā mātēre	bōnīs mātēribūs.

3. Rāpīdum flūmēn,—a rapid river.

N.V.A.	Rāpīdum flūmēn	rāpīdā flūminā
Gen.	rāpīdī flūminis	rāpīdōrum flūminum
Dat.	rāpīdō flūminī	rāpīdis flūminibūs
Abl.	rāpīdō flūminē	rāpīdis flūminibūs.

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the Third Declension have some of them three terminations in the Nominative Singular, some two, and some one only.

I. Those of THREE TERMINATIONS end in ēr, (ē)rīs, (ē)rē: as, ācer, ācrīs, ācrē, *sharp*; cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē, *swift*. (The ending is is also sometimes used for the Masculine.)

	Sing.		Plur.
	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	Ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācrēs
Gen.	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīs
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
			M. and F.
			N.
			ācrīs
			ācrēs
			ācrīum
			ācrībūs
			ācrībūs

II. Those of TWO TERMINATIONS include—

1. Adjectives ending in īs: as, tristīs (*masc. and fem.*), tristē (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparative Adjectives, ending in iōr, iūs: as, mēliōr (*masc. and fem.*), mēliūs (*neut.*), *better*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Trist-īs	trist-ēs	trist-īā
Acc.	trist-em	trist-ēs	trist-īā
Gen.	trist-īs	trist-īum	trist-īum
Dat.	trist-ī	trist-ībūs	trist-ībūs
Abl.	trist-ī	trist-ībūs	trist-ībūs

Sing.		2.	Plur.	
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N. V. <i>Mēliōr</i>	<i>mēliūs</i>		<i>mēliōr-ēs</i>	<i>mēliōr-ā</i>
Acc. <i>mēliōr-em</i>	<i>mēliūs</i>		<i>mēliōr-ēs</i>	<i>mēliōr-ā</i>
Gen. <i>mēliōr-is</i>	<i>mēliōr-is</i>		<i>mēliōr-um</i>	<i>mēliōr-um</i>
Dat. <i>mēliōr-i</i>	<i>mēliōr-i</i>		<i>mēliōr-ibūs</i>	<i>mēliōr-ibūs</i>
Abl. <i>mēliōr-ē (i)</i>	<i>mēliōr-ē (i)</i>		<i>mēliōr-ibūs</i>	<i>mēliōr-ibūs</i>

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings: *as*, *fēlix* (*masc.*, *fem.*, and *neut.*), *fortunate*; *prūdēns* (*masc.*, *fem.*, and *neut.*), *prudent*.

Sing.		1.	Plur.	
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N. V. <i>Fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-iā</i>
Acc. <i>fēlic-em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-iā</i>
Gen. <i>fēlic-is</i>	<i>fēlic-is</i>		<i>fēlic-ium</i>	<i>fēlic-ium</i>
Dat. <i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-i</i>		<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>	<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>
Abl. <i>fēlic-i (ē)</i>	<i>fēlic-i (ē)</i>		<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>	<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>

Sing.		2.	Plur.	
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
N. V. <i>Prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>		<i>prūdēt-ēs</i>	<i>prūdēt-iā</i>
Acc. <i>prūdēt-em</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>		<i>prūdēt-ēs</i>	<i>prūdēt-iā</i>
Gen. <i>prūdēt-is</i>	<i>prūdēt-is</i>		<i>prūdēt-ium</i>	<i>prūdēt-ium</i>
Dat. <i>prūdēt-i</i>	<i>prūdēt-i</i>		<i>prūdēt-ibūs</i>	<i>prūdēt-ibūs</i>
Abl. <i>prūdēt-i (ē)</i>	<i>prūdēt-i (ē)</i>		<i>prūdēt-ibūs</i>	<i>prūdēt-ibūs</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. *Cēlērīs sāgittā*,—a swift arrow.

Sing.	Plur.
N. V. <i>Cēlērīs sāgittā</i>	<i>cēlērēs sāgittae</i>
Acc. <i>cēlērem sāgittam</i>	<i>cēlērēs sāgittas</i>
Gen. <i>cēlērīs sāgittae</i>	<i>cēlērīum sāgittarum</i>
Dat. <i>cēlērī sāgittae</i>	<i>cēlērībūs sāgittis</i>
Abl. <i>cēlērī sāgittā</i>	<i>cēlērībūs sāgittis</i>

2. *Tristē proelium*,—a sad battle.

Sing.	Plur.
N. A. V. <i>Tristē proelium</i>	<i>tristīa proeliā</i>
Gen. <i>tristīs proelii</i>	<i>tristium proeliorum</i>
Dat. <i>tristī proeliō</i>	<i>tristībūs proeliis</i>
Abl. <i>tristī proeliō</i>	<i>tristībūs proeliis</i>

3. *Fēlix hōmo*,—a happy man.

Sing.	Plur.
N. V. <i>Fēlix hōmo</i>	<i>fēlicēs hōminēs</i>
Acc. <i>fēlicem hōminem</i>	<i>fēlicēs hōminēs</i>
Gen. <i>fēlicis hōminis</i>	<i>fēlicium hōminum</i>
Dat. <i>fēlici hōminī</i>	<i>fēlicībūs hōminībūs</i>
Abl. <i>fēlici hōminē</i>	<i>fēlicībūs hōminībūs</i>

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. *Ira furor brevis est.* 2. *Ira militum erat acris.* 3. *Via est facilis.* 4. *Omne initium est difficile.* 5. *Leges hominibus utiles sunt.* 6. *Vulnus militis est leve.* 7. *Carmen est dulce.*

8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arrows. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolaе vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *u*. (For Feminines in *ūs*, see p. 124.)

Sing.		1.	Plur.
N. V. Grād-ūs (m.),	a step, or O step	grād-ūs	steps, or O steps
Acc. grād-um	a step	grād-ūs	steps
Gen. grād-ūs	of a step	grād-ūm	of steps
Dat. grād-ūi	to or for a step	grād-ibūs	to or for steps
Abl. grād-ū	by, with, or from a step.	grād-ibūs	by, with, or from steps.
		2.	
N. V. A. Gēn-ū (n.),	a knee or O knee	gēn-ūā	knees, or O knees
Gen. gēn-ūs	of a knee	gēn-ūm	of knees
Dat. gēn-ūi	to or for a knee	gēn-ibūs	to or for knees
Abl. gēn-ū	by, with, or from a knee.	gēn-ibūs	by, with, or from knees.

NOTE.—Some Nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in *-ūbūs*: as, *acūbūs*, *arcūbūs*, with a few others. (See p. 120.)

EXERCISE XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus caelestis varios colores habet.

9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	<i>dī-ēs</i> a day, or O day	<i>dī-ēs</i> days, or O days
Acc.	<i>dī-em</i> day	<i>dī-ēs</i> days
Gen.	<i>dī-ēi</i> of a day	<i>dī-ērum</i> of days
Dat.	<i>dī-ēi</i> to or for a day [day.	<i>dī-ēbūs</i> to or for days [days.
Abl.	<i>dī-ē</i> in, by, with, or from a	<i>dī-ēbūs</i> in, by, with, or from

NOTE.—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, *rēi*, *spēi*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīēs*, which is Common in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural, and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in*, *in*: as, *hostēs in plānitīe erant*, *the enemies were in the plain*.

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magnā planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est

domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitie.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined :—

Dēūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>God.</i> (2 Decl.)		Dōmūs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a house.</i> (2 and 4 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. V.</i> Dēūs	dēī, dīī, or dī	Dōmūs	dōmūs
<i>Acc.</i> dēum	dēōs	dōmum	dōmōs (<i>rarely</i> dōmūs)
<i>Gen.</i> dēī	dēōrum, or dēūm	dōmūs	dōmūm, or dōmōrum
<i>Dat.</i> dēō	dēīs, dīīs, or dīs	dōmūī (-ō)	dōmībūs
<i>Abl.</i> dēō	dēīs, dīīs, or dīs	dōmō	dōmībūs

The *dat. dōmō* is rarely used. The form *dōmī*, *at home*, is a *Locative*: see p. 114.

Bōs, <i>c.</i> , <i>an ox or cow.</i> (3 Decl.)		Sēnex, <i>m.</i> , <i>an old man.</i> (3 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. V.</i> Bōs	bōvēs	Sēnex	sēnēs
<i>Acc.</i> bōvem	bōvēs	sēnem	sēnēs
<i>Gen.</i> bōvis	bōvam, or bōum	sēnis	sēnum
<i>Dat.</i> bōvi	bōbūs, or būbūs	sēni	sēnībūs
<i>Abl.</i> bōvē	bōbūs, or būbūs	sēnē	sēnībūs

Vis, <i>f.</i> , <i>strength.</i> (3 Decl.)		Jūpītēr (= Jōv-pītēr, <i>i.e.</i> -pātēr), <i>the god Jupiter</i> (3 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Vis	virēs	<i>N. V.</i> Jūpītēr	No plural.
<i>Acc.</i> vim	virēs	<i>Acc.</i> Jōvem	
<i>Gen.</i> wanting	virium	<i>Gen.</i> Jōvis	
<i>Dat.</i> wanting	virībūs	<i>Dat.</i> Jōvi	
<i>Abl.</i> vi	virībūs	<i>Abl.</i> Jōvē	

Jusjūrandum, *n.*, *an oath* (properly two words, *jūs*, 3 Decl., and *jūrandum*, neut. participle, 2 Decl.).

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. V. A.</i> Jusjūrandum	No plural.
<i>Gen.</i> jūrisjūrandī	
<i>Dat.</i> jūrijūrandō	
<i>Abl.</i> jūrjūrandō	

Respublicā, *f.*, *a commonwealth, a republic* (properly two words, *res*, 5 Decl., and *publicā*, fem. adj., 1 Decl.).

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. V.</i> Respublicā	Rare in plural.
<i>Acc.</i> rempublicam	
<i>Gen.</i> reipublicae	
<i>Dat.</i> reipublicae	
<i>Abl.</i> reipublicā	

EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Jurisjurandi vis est magna. 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. Grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* and in the Dative *i* :—

<i>ūnūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>one, alone.</i>
<i>sōlus, ā, um,</i>	<i>alone.</i>
<i>tōtus, ā, um,</i>	<i>whole.</i>
<i>ullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>any.</i>
<i>nullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>no, none.</i>
<i>ūter, utrā, utrum,</i>	<i>which of two.</i>
<i>neuter, neutrā, neutrum,</i>	<i>neither.</i>

<i>altēr, altērā, altērum,</i>	<i>one of two ;</i>
<i>altēr . . . altēr,</i>	<i>the one . . .</i>
<i>the other.</i>	
<i>aliūs, aliā, aliūd,</i>	<i>one of any</i>
<i>number ; aliūs . . . aliūs,</i>	<i>one</i>
<i>. another ; in pl. aliī . . .</i>	
<i>aliī, some . . . others.</i>	

For example—

	Sing.	
	M.	F.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūn-ūs</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ūn-ē</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūn-um</i>	<i>ūn-am</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ūn-iūs</i>	<i>(of all genders)</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ūn-i</i>	<i>(of all genders)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ūn-ō</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>

	Plur.	
	M.	F.
<i>ūn-i</i>	<i>ūn-ae</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>ūn-i</i>	<i>ūn-ae</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>ūn-ōs</i>	<i>ūn-as</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>ūn-ōrum</i>	<i>ūn-ārum</i>	<i>ūn-ōrum</i>
<i>ūn-is</i>	<i>(of all genders)</i>	
<i>ūn-is</i>	<i>(of all genders)</i>	

Of the above adjectives only *ūnūs* and *sōlūs* have a Vocative Case. *Altēr* has Gen. Sing. *altēr-iūs*; *aliūs* has Gen. Sing. *āl-iūs*, Dat. *āl-i*. The rest have mostly both *-iūs* and *-iūs* in Gen., but more frequently *-iūs*. See Latin Index.

For the plural use of *ūnus*, see p. 125.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. *Virtus sola dat laudem.* 2. *Cives dant uni homini laudem.*
3. *Alius* est doctus, alius indoctus.* 4. *Alii sunt docti, alii indocti.*
5. *Coronam alii, librum alii dat.* 6. *Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus.* 7. *Tota vita hominis memorabilis erat.* 8. *Alteri laudem, alteri culpam dat.* 9. *Totam laudem neutri dat.* 10. *Neutra civitas multos cives habet.*

* One man: see p. 46, Note.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither (*sing.*). 4. To-which-of-the-two does-he-give (dat) the praise? 5. Neither (man) has any praise. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. One (man) has fields, another (has) horses. 8. Some (men) have horses, others (have) bulls. 9. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 10. The one (man) was pleasing to the citizens, the other (was) troublesome.

XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>altūs, high.</i>	<i>altīōr, higher.</i>	<i>altissimūs, { highest, most high, or very high.</i>

The Comparative is formed by adding *īōr* and the Superlative by adding *issimūs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular: as,

Nom.	Posit. Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
<i>altūs,</i>	<i>alt-i,</i>	<i>high,</i>	<i>alt-īōr,</i>	<i>alt-issimūs,</i>
<i>hābīlis,</i>	<i>hābīl-is,</i>	<i>handy,</i>	<i>hābīl-īōr,</i>	<i>hābīl-issimūs,</i>
<i>fēlix,</i>	<i>fēlic-is,</i>	<i>fortunate,</i>	<i>fēlic-īōr,</i>	<i>fēlic-issimūs,</i>
<i>prūdēns,</i>	<i>prūdēt-is,</i>	<i>prudent,</i>	<i>prūdēt-īōr,</i>	<i>prūdēt-issimūs.</i>

The Comparative is declined as on p. 19 (*māl-īōr*). The Superlative is declined like *bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum*.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. All Adjectives ending in *ēr* form the Superlative in *rīmūs* : as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
Nom. Gen.		
pulchēr, pulchr-ī, <i>beautiful</i> ,	pulchr-īōr,	pulcher-rīmūs.
libēr, libēr-ī, <i>free</i> ,	libēr-īōr,	liber-rīmūs.
ācēr, ācr-īs, <i>sharp</i> ,	ācr-īōr,	ācer-rīmūs.
cēlēr, cēlēr-īs, <i>swift</i> ,	cēlēr-īōr,	cēler-rīmūs.

Also *vētūs* (*Gen. vētēr-īs*), *old*, has Superlative *vēter-rīmūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *īl-īs* form their Superlative in *il-līmūs* :

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
fācīlīs, <i>easy</i> ,	fācīl-īōr,	fācil-līmūs.
difficīlīs, <i>difficult</i> ,	difficīl-īōr,	difficil-līmūs.
sīmīlīs, <i>like</i> ,	sīmīl-īōr,	sīmil-līmūs.
dissīmīlīs, <i>unlike</i> ,	dissīmīl-īōr,	dissīmil-līmūs.
grācīlīs, <i>slender</i> ,	grācīl-īōr,	grācil-līmūs.
hūmīlīs, <i>low</i> ,	hūmīl-īōr,	hūmil-līmūs.

All other Adjectives in *īlīs* are compared regularly ; as, *frāgīlīs*, *brittle*, *frāgīlīōr*, *frāgīlissīmūs*.

III. Adjectives ending in *dicūs*, *fictūs*, and *vōlūs*, form their Comparative in *entiōr*, and their Superlative in *entissīmūs* : as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
mālēdicūs, <i>slandorous</i> ,	mālēdicentiōr,	mālēdicentissīmūs.
bēnēficūs, <i>beneficent</i> ,	bēnēficentiōr,	bēnēficentissīmūs.
bēnēvōlūs, <i>benevolent</i> ,	bēnēvōlentiōr,	bēnēvōlentissīmūs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *ūs*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgīs*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, *most*, to the Positive : as, *noxīūs*, *hurtful* ; *māgīs noxīūs*, *more hurtful* ; *maximē noxīūs*, *most hurtful*.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
bōnūs, <i>good</i> ,	mēlīōr,	optimūs.
mālūs, <i>bad</i> ,	pējōr,	possīmūs.
magnūs, <i>great</i> ,	mājōr,	maximūs.
parvūs, <i>small</i> ,	mīnōr,	minimūs.
multūs, <i>much</i> ,	plūs (<i>see foll. page</i>),	plūrimūs.
nēquam <i>worthless</i> ,	nēquīōr,	nēquissīmūs.
(<i>not declined</i>),		
divēs, <i>rich</i> ,	divitīōr, ditīōr,	divitissīmūs, ditissīmūs.
sēnex, <i>old</i> ,	sēnīōr [nātū mājōr],	[nātū maximūs].
jūvenīs, <i>young</i> ,	jūnīōr [nātū mīnōr],	[nātū minimūs].
supērūs, <i>upper</i> ,	supērīōr,	suprēmūs, summūs.
infērūs, <i>lower</i> ,	infērīōr,	infīmūs, imūs.
extērūs, <i>outside</i> ,	extērīōr,	extrēmūs, extīmūs.
intērūs, <i>inside</i> ,	intērīōr,	intīmūs.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
postērius,	<i>hinder, latter,</i>	postērior,	postremus (<i>last</i>).
[prae, prep.	<i>before</i>]	prior (<i>former</i>),	primus (<i>first</i>).
[præp, adv.	<i>near</i>]	propior (<i>nearer</i>)	proximus (<i>nearest, next</i>).
[ultra, prep.	<i>beyond</i>]	ulterior (<i>further</i>),	ultimus (<i>furthest, last</i>).

The Comparative plūs is thus declined :—

	Singular. Neut. only.	Masc. and Fem. Plural.	Neut. Plural.
Nom. & Acc.	plūs	plūrēs	plūrē
Gen.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	plūri	plūribūs	plūribūs
Abl.	plūrē	plūribūs	plūribūs

EXERCISE XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiore sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhone is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Verrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos oculos habent. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In spring the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima

animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many and very large islands are in the sea. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely : as, ūnūs, *one* ; dūō, *two* ; trēs, *three*. See p. 28.

The declension of ūnūs is given on p. 23.

Dūō, *two*, trēs, *three*, and milīā, *thousands*, are declined as follows :—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Dū-ō	dū-ae	dū-ō	Trēs	triā	Milīā
Acc.	dū-ōs or dū-ō	dū-ās	dū-ō	trēs or triīs	triā	milīā
Gen.	dū-ōrum	dū-ārum	dū-ōrum	triūm	triūm	milīum
Dat.	dū-ōbūs	dū-ābūs	dū-ōbūs	tribūs	tribūs	milībūs
Abl.	dū-ōbūs	dū-ābūs	dū-ōbūs	tribūs	tribūs	milībūs

Obs. Ambō, *both*, is declined like dūō.

Millē, *a thousand*, is usually an indeclinable adjective like decem, centum, &c. ; but milīa (also milīā), *thousands*, is a substantive plural : as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men* (less frequently, millē hōmīnum) ; but dūō milīa hōmīnum, *two thousand men* (literally, *two thousands of men*).

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dūcentī, ae, ā, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series : as, primūs, *first* ; secūdūs, or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus	primus.
2	II	dūō	sēcundus <i>or</i> altēr.
3	III	trēs	tertius.
4	IV	quattuōr (quātūōr)	quartus.
5	V	quinqūē	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septimus.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus.
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus.
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septimus dēcimus.
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus.
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus.
20	XX	vigintī	vicēsīmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī ūnus	primus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus primus.
22	XXII	duō et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī duō	alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī trēs	tertius et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus tertius.
28	XXVIII	duōdētrigintā	duōdētrigēsīmus.
29	XXIX	undētrigintā	undētrigēsīmus.
30	XXX	trigintā	trigēsīmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus.
50	L	quinqūāgintā	quinqūāgēsīmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus.
70	LXX	septūāgintā	septuāgēsīmus.
80	LXXX	octogintā	octogēsīmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus.
100	C	centum	centēsīmus.
200	CC	dūcentī, ae, ā	ducentēsīmus.
300	CCC	trēcentī, ae, ā	trecentēsīmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, ae, ā	quadringentēsīmus.
500	D <i>or</i> IQ	quingentī, ae, ā	quingentēsīmus.
600	DC	sexcentī (sesc-), ae, ā	sexcentēsīmus (sesc-).
700	DCC	septingentī, ae, ā	septingentēsīmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī, ae, ā	octingentēsīmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, ae, ā	nongentēsīmus.
1,000	M <i>or</i> CIQ	millē	millēsīmus.
2,000	MM	duō millā (millā)	bis millēsīmus.
00,000	CCCIQOO	centum (centēnā) millā	centiēs millēsīmus.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puerq; tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim milia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducen-tarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus est octavus anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

• 1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. A Roman legion has ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (*there*) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.

XV.—THE VERB SUM, *I am*.

Sum, fūi, essē, —to be. Stems: ēs-, fu-.

• VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> sum	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur.</i> sūmūs	<i>we are</i>
ēs	<i>thou art</i>	estis	<i>ye are</i>
est	<i>he is.</i>	sunt	<i>they are.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> eram	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i> erāmūs	<i>we were</i>
erās	<i>thou wast</i>	erātis	<i>ye were</i>
erāt	<i>he was.</i>	erant	<i>they were.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> ero	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> erimūs	<i>we shall be</i>
eris	<i>thou wilt be</i>	eritis	<i>ye will be</i>
erit	<i>he will be.</i>	erunt	<i>they will be.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> fui	<i>I have been, or</i> <i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i> fuimūs	<i>we have been, or</i> <i>we were</i>
fuisti	<i>thou hast been, or</i> <i>thou wast</i>	fuistis	<i>ye have been, or</i> <i>ye were</i>
fuit	<i>he has been, or</i> <i>he was.</i>	fuērunt or fuērē }	<i>they have been, or</i> <i>they were.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> fuëram	<i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> fuëramûs	<i>we had been</i>
fuërās	<i>thou hadst been</i>	fuërātīs	<i>ye had been</i>
fuërāt	<i>he had been.</i>	fuërant	<i>they had been.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> fuëro	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> fuërimûs	<i>we shall have been</i>
fuëris	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	fuëritīs	<i>ye will have been</i>
fuërit	<i>he will have been.</i>	fuërint	<i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> ës	<i>be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> estë	<i>be ye.</i>
-----------------	-----------------	-------------------	---------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> estö	<i>thou shalt or must be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> estötë	<i>ye shall or must be</i>
estö	<i>he shall or must be,</i>	suntö	<i>they shall or must be,</i>
	<i>or let him be.</i>		<i>or let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(N.B.—Concerning the translation of the Subjunctive Mood, see p. 40, Note 3.)

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> sim	<i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> sîmûs	<i>we may be, or let us be</i>
sîs	<i>thou mayst be</i>	sîtîs	<i>ye may be</i>
sît	<i>he may be, or let him be.</i>	sînt	<i>they may be, or let them be.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> essem or förem	<i>I might be thou mightst be he might be.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> essëmûs or föremûs	<i>we might be ye might be they might be.</i>
essës or föres		essëtis or företis	
essët or föret		essent or förent	

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> fuërim	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> fuërimûs	<i>we may have been</i>
fuëris	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	fuëritīs	<i>ye may have been</i>
fuërit	<i>he may have been.</i>	fuërint	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> fuissëm	<i>I should</i>	<i>Plur.</i> fuissëmûs	<i>we should</i>
fuissës	<i>thou wouldst</i>	fuissëtis	<i>ye would</i>
fuissët	<i>he would</i>	fuissent	<i>they would</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT and IMPERFECT	essē	to be.
PERFECT and PLUPERFECT	fuissē	to have been.
FUTURE	fūtūrūs essē, or fōrē	to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE	fūtūrūs, -ā, -um,	about to be.
--------	-------------------	--------------

EXERCISE XX.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

A.—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erant pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. Iudex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli sunto attentī. 4. Iudices justī sunto. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles sunto. 7. Reges patres patriae sunto. 8. Attentī este, discipulī. 9. Contentī estote sorte vestrā. 10. Praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Let praise be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. (There) must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be (*fut. ind.*) successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum, abfui, ābessē,	<i>I am absent, away, distant.</i>
adsum, adfui, ādessē,	<i>I am present, side with, help.</i>
desum, defui, deessē (pron. dēsse),	<i>I am wanting.</i>

insum, infūi, inessē,	<i>I am in or among.</i>
intersum, interfūi, intēressē,	<i>I am among, present at.</i>
obsum, obfūi, ōbessē,	<i>I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.</i>
praesum, praefūi, praeessē,	<i>I am before, am at the head of.</i>
prōsum, prōfūi, prōdessē,	<i>I am serviceable, do good to.</i>
subsum (no perf.), sūbessē,	<i>I am under, or at hand.</i>
sūpersum, sūperfūi, sūpēressē,	<i>I remain over, survive.</i>

All these compounds are conjugated like sum, but prōsum takes *d* before forms beginning with *e*: as,

INDICATIVE.			
Present.			
<i>Sing.</i>	prō-sum prōd-ēs prōd-est.		<i>Plur.</i> prō-sūmūs prōd-estis prō-sunt.
	<i>Imperfect.</i> prōd-ēram, &c.		<i>Future.</i> prōd-ēro, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE—*Imperfect.*

prōd-essem, &c.

INFINITIVE—*Present.*

prōd-essē.

RULE 9.—The compounds of sum are followed by the Dative Case: as, prōdessē civitāti, *to do good to the State.*

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Varias cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deest animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was among his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	<i>Ēgō I</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>we</i>
Acc.	<i>mē me</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>us</i>
Gen.	<i>mēi of me</i>	<i>nostrī or nostrum</i>	<i>of us</i>
Dat.	<i>mīhi to or for me</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>to or for us.</i>
Abl.	<i>mē by, with, or from me.</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>by, with, or from us.</i>

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	<i>Tū thou (you)</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>ye, you</i>
Acc.	<i>tē thee</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>you</i>
Gen.	<i>tūi of thee</i>	<i>vestrī or vestrum</i>	<i>of you</i>
Dat.	<i>tībī to or for thee</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>to or for</i>
Abl.	<i>tē by, with, or from thee.</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>by, with, or from</i>

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, the former part *id*, and *illē*, *illā*, *illūd*, are employed.

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflexive Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

Sing. and Plur.	
Acc.	<i>sē or sēsē himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Gen.	<i>sui of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Dat.	<i>sibi to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Abl.	<i>sē or sēsē by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

The different cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively : as, *mēi, of myself ; tībī, to thyself (yourself), etc.*

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns, and are declined like Adjectives in *-ūs* and *-ēr* (see p. 7), except that *meus* makes *mī* in Voc. Sing. Masc.

<i>Mēus</i>	<i>mēa</i>	<i>mēum</i>	<i>my or mine.</i>
<i>tūus</i>	<i>tūa</i>	<i>tūum</i>	<i>thy or thine (your, yours).</i>
<i>noster</i>	<i>nostra</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>our, ours.</i>
<i>vester</i>	<i>vestra</i>	<i>vestrum</i>	<i>your, yours.</i>
<i>sūus</i>	<i>sūa</i>	<i>sūum</i>	<i>his own, her own, its own, their own.</i>

Obs. *Suus*, like *se*, refers back to the Subject of the sentence : as, *Titus librum suum frātrī suo dat, Titus gives his (own) book to his (own) brother.* When the English *his, her, its, their*, do not refer

to the Subject, they are often omitted in Latin, but may be expressed by the Genitive of *is* or *ille*: as, *Titum vidi et sororem ejus*, *I saw Titus and his sister* (lit. *the sister of him*).

EXERCISE XXII.

NOTE.—The Personal Pronouns *ego*, *tū*, &c. must be expressed along with the Verb when there is an emphasis on them.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis.
2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem.
3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis.
4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita.
5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.
6. Parentes vobis cari sunt.
7. Memores sumus tui.
8. Amicus memor est vestri.
9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est.
10. Mihi mea vita cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me.
2. Wisdom is owing to you, citizens!
3. In thee is all our hope of safety.
4. My native-land must be most-dear to thee.
5. Thine indolence is my way, Titus!
6. A true friend will be with thee in danger.
7. The memory of our works survives us.
8. The general was grateful to thee.
9. He was serviceable to his friends.
10. To me my life is dear.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

hic, hoc, *this* (near me); pl. *hæc* (of ours).

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>hoc</i>		<i>hic</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>hoc</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>		<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hujus</i> (of all genders)				<i>hujus</i> (of all genders)		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huius</i> (of all genders)				<i>huius</i> (of all genders)		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hinc</i>				<i>hinc</i> (of all genders)		

2. *Istæ, ista, istud*, *that* (near you), *that of yours*; pl. *istæ*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>istæ</i>	<i>istæ</i>	<i>istud</i>		<i>istæ</i>	<i>istæ</i>	<i>istud</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>		<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>istius</i> (of all genders)				<i>istius</i> (of all genders)		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>isti</i> (of all genders)				<i>isti</i> (of all genders)		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>istò</i>				<i>istò</i> (of all genders)		

3. *Illæ, illa, illud*, *that, that yonder*; pl. *illæ*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illæ</i>	<i>illæ</i>	<i>illud</i>		<i>illæ</i>	<i>illæ</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>		<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i> (of all genders)				<i>illius</i> (of all genders)		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illi</i> (of all genders)				<i>illi</i> (of all genders)		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illò</i>				<i>illò</i> (of all genders)		

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. *Hæc carmina suavissima sunt.*
2. *Hi montes altissimi sunt.*
3. *Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt.*
4. *Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum.*
5. *Hic puer industrius est, ille iners.*
6. *De-*

mosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; *ille erat Graecus, *hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus est vir optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poetae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very-high and very-rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this body (*dat.*). 4. That man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (*illa*) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

* When *hic* and *ille* are contrasted, *hic* often means *the latter*, *ille* *the former*.

V. DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Īs, ĕā, ĭd, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

	M.	Sing. F.	N		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Īs	ĕā	ĭd		ĕī or ĭī	ĕae	ĕā
Acc.	ĕum	ĕam	ĭd		ĕos	ĕās	ĕā
Gen.	ĕjus (of all genders)				ĕorum	ĕarum	ĕorum
Dat.	ĕī (of all genders)				ĭis or ĕīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō		ĭis or ĕīs (of all genders)		

2. *Īdem, ĕādem, ĭdem, the same.*

Nom.	Īdem	ĕādem	ĭdem	ĕidem (Īdem)	ĕaedem	ĕādem
Acc.	ĕundem	ĕandem	ĭdem	ĕōsdem	ĕāsdem	ĕādem
Gen.	ĕjusdem (of all genders)			ĕorundem	ĕarundem	ĕorundem
Dat.	ĕidem (of all genders)			ĕisdem (ĭdem) (of all genders)		
Abl.	ĕodem	ĕādem	ĕodem	ĕisdem (ĭdem) (of all genders)		

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Gen.	ipsius (of all genders)			ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsī (of all genders)			ipsis (of all genders)		
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis (of all genders)		

4. Relative—*Quī, quae, quōd, who or which.*

Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	ejus (of all genders)			quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui (of all genders)			quibus or quīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus or quīs (of all genders)		

5. Interrogative—Quis or quī, quae, quid or quōd, *who ? which ? what ?*

Nom.	Quis or quī	quae	quid or quōd	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quid or quōd	quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	cujus (of all genders)			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui (of all genders)			quibus or quīs (of all genders)		
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus or quīs (of all genders)		

The forms *quīs* and *quid* are used by themselves, without a Noun : as, *quīs es ? who art thou ? quid est ? what is it ?* The forms *quī* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun : as, *quī hōmo es ? what man art thou ? quōd mārē, what sea ?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case : as, *felix est rex (Nom.) quem (Acc.) omnēs civēs laudant, fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

laudāt (he, she, it) praises.

laudant (they) praise.

EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Felix est puer quem magister laudat. 2. Felix est ea civitas cujus leges bonae sunt. 3. Felix est is discipulus cui magister praemium dat. 4. Ei (ii) sunt boni cives qui civitati prosunt. 5. Labor ipse jucundus est. 6. Fons voluptatis in nobis est. 7. Melior pars nostri animus est. 8. Cimbrorum mulieres ipsae erant fortes. 9. Idem dies initium erit alterius vitae. 10. Eadem res non omnibus hominibus prosunt.

1. Fortunate are the boys whom the master praises. 2. Fortunate are those countries whose (*gen. pl. fem.*) laws are good. 3. Fortunate are those pupils to whom the masters give rewards. 4. His (*ejus*) brother himself is an elegant writer. 5. (He) who praises bad men, injures all. 6. (He) who injures a friend, injures himself (*sibi*). 7. A just judge praises good men, not bad (men). 8. The same things are not pleasing to all. 9. All the masters praise the same pupils. 10. Sallust and Livy are very-elegant writers.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum ? Quis est dux ? 2. Cujus est equus ? Cujus sunt arma ? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges ? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum ? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae ? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est ? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est ? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima ? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam ? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens ?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful ? 2. Which poet

is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (*prudens*) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

XVIII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices :

I. ACTIVE.

II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have two Parts :

I. FINITE.

II. INFINITE.

I. The VERB FINITE has Three Moods :

- (1.) The INDICATIVE MOOD.
- (2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
- (3.) The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives :

- (1.) The INFINITIVE MOOD, the tenses of which are Verbal Nouns.
- (2.) PARTICIPLES, which are Verbal Adjectives.
- (3.) SUPINES, } which are Verbal Nouns.
- (4.) GERUNDS, }

Verbs have SIX TENSES :

I. Three expressing unfinished action :

Present.
Imperfect.
Future-Simple.

II. Three expressing finished action :

Perfect.
Pluperfect.
Future-Perfect.

Obs. The Perfect has the meaning of both a Present-Perfect and of an Indefinite-Past: thus, *amāvi* signifies, *I have loved*, and *I loved*.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four Classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final letter of the Stem, which is seen in the Present Infinitive Active. The Stem of

		Present Infinitive.	
I. The First Conjugation ends in A:	.	as,	āmā-rē, to love.
II. The Second	„	E:	as, mōnē-rē, to advise.
III. The Third	„	{ a Consonant or U:	as, { rēg-ērē, to rule. nu-ērē, to nod. flū-ērē, to flow.
III. The Fourth	„	I:	as, audi-rē, to hear.

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb. The formation of the other Tenses from them is explained on p. 134.

XIX.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārē,—to love. Stem: āma-.

(āmo is contracted from āma-o.)

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Āmo	<i>I love or am loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> ām-āmūs	<i>we love or are loving</i>
ām-ās	<i>thou lovest or art loving</i>	ām-ātīs	<i>ye love or are loving</i>
ām-āt	<i>he loves or is loving.</i>	ām-ant	<i>they love or are loving.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> ām-ābam	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> ām-ābāmūs	<i>we were loving</i>
ām-ābās	<i>thou wast loving</i>	ām-ābātīs	<i>ye were loving</i>
ām-ābāt	<i>he was loving</i>	ām-ābant	<i>they were loving.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> ām-ābo	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> ām-ābīmūs	<i>we shall love</i>
ām-ābis	<i>thou wilt love</i>	ām-ābitīs	<i>ye will love</i>
ām-ābit	<i>he will love.</i>	ām-ābunt	<i>they will love.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> ām-āvī	<i>I have loved or I loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> ām-āvīmūs	<i>we have loved or we loved</i>
ām-āvistī	<i>thou hast loved or thou lovedst</i>	ām-āvistīs	<i>ye have loved or ye loved</i>
ām-āvīt	<i>he has loved or he loved.</i>	ām-āvērunt, or ām-āvērē	<i>they have loved or they loved.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ăm-ăvëram</i> <i>I had loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ăvëramûs</i> <i>we had loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăvërās</i> <i>thou hadst loved</i>	<i>ăm-ăvërātīs</i> <i>ye had loved</i>
<i>ăm-ăvërāt</i> <i>he had loved.</i>	<i>ăm-ăvërant</i> <i>they had loved.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ăm-ăvëro</i> <i>I shall</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ăvërimûs</i> <i>we shall</i>	} <i>have</i>
<i>ăm-ăvëris</i> <i>thou wilt</i>	<i>ăm-ăvëritīs</i> <i>ye will</i>	
<i>ăm-ăvërit</i> <i>he will</i>	<i>ăm-ăvërint</i> <i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ăm-ă</i> <i>love thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ătē</i> <i>love ye.</i>
--	--

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ăm-ăto</i> <i>thou shalt, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ătôtē</i> <i>ye shall or</i>
<i>ăm-ăto</i> <i>must love</i>	<i>ăm-ăto</i> <i>must love</i>
<i>ăm-ăto</i> <i>he must love or</i>	<i>ăm-ăto</i> <i>they must love or</i>
<i>let him love.</i>	<i>let them love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ăm-em</i> <i>I may love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ēmûs</i> <i>we may love or</i>
<i>ăm-ēs</i> <i>thou mayst love</i>	<i>ăm-ētīs</i> <i>let us love</i>
<i>ăm-ēt</i> <i>he may love or</i>	<i>ăm-ent</i> <i>ye may love</i>
<i>let him love.</i>	<i>ăm-ent</i> <i>they may love or</i>
	<i>let them love.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ăm-ărem</i> <i>I might love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ărēmûs</i> <i>we might love</i>
<i>ăm-ărēs</i> <i>thou mightst love</i>	<i>ăm-ărētīs</i> <i>ye might love</i>
<i>ăm-ărēt</i> <i>he might love.</i>	<i>ăm-ărent</i> <i>they might love.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>ăm-ăvërim</i> <i>I may</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>ăm-ăvërimûs</i> <i>we may</i>	} <i>have</i>
<i>ăm-ăvëris</i> <i>thou mayst</i>	<i>ăm-ăvëritīs</i> <i>ye may</i>	
<i>ăm-ăvërit</i> <i>he may</i>	<i>ăm-ăvërint</i> <i>they may</i>	

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> <i>ăm-ăvissem</i> <i>I should</i>	<i>P.</i> <i>ăm-ăvissēmûs</i> <i>we should</i>	} <i>have</i>
<i>ăm-ăvissēs</i> <i>thou wouldst</i>	<i>ăm-ăvissētīs</i> <i>ye would</i>	
<i>ăm-ăvissēt</i> <i>he would</i>	<i>ăm-ăvissent</i> <i>they would</i>	

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE.

<i>PRES. and IMP.</i>	<i>ăm-ărē</i> <i>to love.</i>
<i>PERF. and PLUP.</i>	<i>ăm-ăvissē</i> { <i>to have</i> <i>loved.</i>
<i>FUTURE.</i>	<i>ăm-ătūrûs</i> { <i>to be about</i> <i>essē</i> <i>to love.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>ăm-ătum</i> <i>to love</i>
<i>ăm-ătū</i> <i>in loving, or to be</i>
<i>loved.</i>

GERUNDS.

<i>Acc.</i> <i>ăm-andum</i> <i>loving</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ăm-andī</i> <i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ăm-andō</i> <i>for loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ăm-andō</i> <i>by loving.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRESENT.</i> <i>ăm-ans, -antis,</i> <i>loving</i>
<i>FUTURE.</i> <i>ăm-ătūrûs (ă, um),</i> <i>about</i>
<i>to love.</i>

NOTES.

1. The Imperfect Indicative may often be rendered by '*used to . .*': as, *saepē ambulābāt in hortō, he often used to walk in the garden.*

2. The two meanings of the Perfect Indicative should be most carefully distinguished. When it is to be rendered by *have*, it is a Present-complete Tense, or Present-perfect: as, *jam aedificāvi dōmum, I have now built a house*: otherwise it is a Past-indefinite, as *ōlim dōmum aedificāvi, once upon a time I built a house.*

3. The force of the Subjunctive may sometimes be best expressed by *may, might*, and at other times by *should* or *would*. In some cases it must be translated in English by the Indicative. See Rule 13, page 48; also Ex. xxx, B, English, Nos. 2, 3.

4. The Future Participle may be used with any tense of *sum*: as, *aedificātūrus sum, I am about to build.* See also Ex. xxv, E, 3.

XX.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōnēo, mōnui, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem: *mōne-*.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Mōn-eo</i>	<i>I advise or am advising</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēmūs</i>	<i>we advise or are advising</i>
<i>mōn-ēs</i>	<i>thou adviseest or art advising</i>	<i>mōn-ētīs</i>	<i>ye advise or are advising</i>
<i>mōn-ēt</i>	<i>he advises or is advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ent</i>	<i>they advise or are advising.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ēbam</i>	<i>I was advising</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēbāmūs</i>	<i>we were advising</i>
<i>mōn-ēbās</i>	<i>thou wast advising</i>	<i>mōn-ēbātīs</i>	<i>ye were advising</i>
<i>mōn-ēbāt</i>	<i>he was advising.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbant</i>	<i>they were advising.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ēbo</i>	<i>I shall advise</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēbimūs</i>	<i>we shall advise</i>
<i>mōn-ēbis</i>	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	<i>mōn-ēbitīs</i>	<i>ye will advise</i>
<i>mōn-ēbit</i>	<i>he will advise.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbunt</i>	<i>they will advise.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-uī</i>	<i>I have advised or I advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-uīmūs</i>	<i>we have advised or we advised</i>
<i>mōn-uistī</i>	<i>thou hast advised or advisedst</i>	<i>mōn-uistīs</i>	<i>ye have advised or ye advised</i>
<i>mōn-uīt</i>	<i>he has advised or he advised.</i>	<i>mōn-uērunt, or -uērē</i>	<i>they have advised or they advised.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-uēram</i>	<i>I had advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-uērāmūs</i>	<i>we had advised</i>
<i>mōn-uērās</i>	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	<i>mōn-uērātīs</i>	<i>ye had advised</i>
<i>mōn-uērāt</i>	<i>he had advised.</i>	<i>mōn-uērant</i>	<i>they had advised.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-uēro</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>P. mōn-uērimūs</i>	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>
<i>mōn-uēris</i>	<i>thou wilt</i>	<i>mōn-uēritīs</i>	<i>ye will</i>	
<i>mōn-uērīt</i>	<i>he will</i>	<i>mōn-uērīnt</i>	<i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ē</i>	<i>advise thou.</i>	<i>P. mōn-ētē</i>	<i>advise ye.</i>
-----------------	---------------------	-------------------	-------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ēto</i>	<i>thou shalt or must</i>	<i>P. mōn-ētōtē</i>	<i>ye shall or must</i>
	<i>advise</i>		<i>advise</i>
<i>mōn-ēto</i>	<i>he must advise or</i>	<i>mōn-ento</i>	<i>they must advise or</i>
	<i>let him advise.</i>		<i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-eam</i>	<i>I may advise</i>	<i>P. mōn-eāmūs</i>	<i>we may advise or</i>
			<i>let us advise</i>
<i>mōn-eās</i>	<i>thou mayst advise</i>	<i>mōn-eātīs</i>	<i>ye may advise</i>
<i>mōn-eā</i>	<i>he may advise or let</i>	<i>mōn-eant</i>	<i>they may advise or</i>
	<i>him advise.</i>		<i>let them advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ērem</i>	<i>I might advise</i>	<i>P. mōn-ērēmūs</i>	<i>we might advise</i>
<i>mōn-ērēs</i>	<i>thou mightst advise</i>	<i>mōn-ērētīs</i>	<i>ye might advise</i>
<i>mōn-ērēt</i>	<i>he might advise.</i>	<i>mōn-ērēnt</i>	<i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-uērim</i>	<i>I may</i>	<i>P. mōn-uērimūs</i>	<i>we may</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>
<i>mōn-uēris</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<i>mōn-uēritīs</i>	<i>ye may</i>	
<i>mōn-uērīt</i>	<i>he may</i>	<i>mōn-uērīnt</i>	<i>they may</i>	

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-uissēm</i>	<i>I should</i>	<i>P. mōn-uissēmūs</i>	<i>we should</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>
<i>mōn-uissēs</i>	<i>thou wouldst</i>	<i>mōn-uissētīs</i>	<i>ye would</i>	
<i>mōn-uissēt</i>	<i>he would</i>	<i>mōn-uissent</i>	<i>they would</i>	

VERB INFINITIVE.

GERUNDS.

INFINITIVE.		GERUNDS.	
PRES. and IMP.	<i>mōn-ērē</i> <i>to advise.</i>	Acc. <i>mōn-endum</i>	<i>advising</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	<i>mōn-uissē</i> <i>{ to have</i> <i>advised.</i>	Gen. <i>mōn-endī</i>	<i>of advising</i>
FUTURE.	<i>mōn-ītūrūs</i> <i>{ to be about</i> <i>essē</i> <i>to advise.</i>	Dat. <i>mōn-endō</i>	<i>for advising</i>
		Abl. <i>mōn-endō</i>	<i>by advising.</i>

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.
mōn-ītum	<i>to advise</i>	PRESENT. mōn-ens, -entis, advis- ing
mōn-ītū	<i>in advising, or to be advised.</i>	FUTURE. mōn-ītūrūs (a, um), about to advise.

N.B.—The Notes given on p. 40 apply equally to all the Conjugations.

XXI.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—*to rule*. Stem: rēg-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-o	<i>I rule or am</i>	} ruling	P. rēg-īmūs	<i>we rule or are</i>	} ruling
rēg-is	<i>thou rulest or art</i>		rēg-ītīs	<i>ye rule or are</i>	
rēg-īt	<i>he rules or is</i>		rēg-unt	<i>they rule or are</i>	

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. rēg-ēbam	<i>I was ruling</i>	P. rēg-ēbāmūs	<i>we were ruling</i>
rēg-ēbās	<i>thou wast ruling</i>	rēg-ēbātīs	<i>ye were ruling</i>
rēg-ēbāt	<i>he was ruling.</i>	rēg-ēbant	<i>they were ruling</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. rēg-am	<i>I shall rule</i>	P. rēg-ēmūs	<i>we shall rule</i>
rēg-es	<i>thou wilt rule</i>	rēg-ētīs	<i>ye will rule</i>
rēg-et	<i>he will rule.</i>	rēg-ent	<i>they will rule.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. rex-i	<i>I have ruled or I ruled</i>	P. rex-īmūs	<i>we have ruled or we ruled</i>
rex-istī	<i>thou hast ruled or thou ruledst</i>	rex-istīs	<i>ye have ruled or ye ruled</i>
rex-īt	<i>he has ruled or he ruled.</i>	rex-ērunt or rex-ērē	<i>they have ruled or they ruled.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. rex-eram	<i>I had ruled</i>	P. rex-ērāmūs	<i>we had ruled</i>
rex-erās	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	rex-erātīs	<i>ye had ruled</i>
rex-erāt	<i>he had ruled.</i>	rex-erant	<i>they had ruled.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. rex-ero	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	P. rex-erimūs	<i>we shall have ruled</i>
rex-eris	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	rex-eritīs	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
rex-erit	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	rex-erint	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-ē</i>	<i>rule thou.</i>		<i>P. rēg-ītē</i>	<i>rule ye.</i>
-----------------	-------------------	--	-------------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-īto</i>	<i>thou shalt or must rule</i>		<i>P. rēg-ītōtē</i>	<i>ye shall or must rule</i>
<i>rēg-īto</i>	<i>he must rule or let</i>		<i>rēg-unto</i>	<i>they must rule or</i>
	<i>him rule.</i>			<i>let them rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-am</i>	<i>I may rule</i>		<i>P. rēg-āmūs</i>	<i>we may rule or let</i>
				<i>us rule</i>
<i>rēg-ās</i>	<i>thou mayst rule</i>		<i>rēg-ātīs</i>	<i>ye may rule</i>
<i>rēg-āt</i>	<i>he may rule or let</i>		<i>rēg-ant</i>	<i>they may rule or let</i>
	<i>him rule.</i>			<i>them rule.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-ērem</i>	<i>I might rule</i>		<i>P. rēg-ērēmūs</i>	<i>we might rule</i>
<i>rēg-ērēs</i>	<i>thou mightst rule</i>		<i>rēg-ērātīs</i>	<i>ye might rule</i>
<i>rēg-ērēt</i>	<i>he might rule.</i>		<i>rēg-ērent</i>	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rex-ērim</i>	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>	<i>P. rex-ērīmūs</i>	<i>we may</i>	} <i>have</i>
<i>rex-ēris</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<i>rex-ērītīs</i>	<i>ye may</i>	
<i>rex-ērīt</i>	<i>he may</i>		<i>rex-ērīt</i>	<i>they may</i>	

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rex-issem</i>	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>	<i>P. rex-issēmūs</i>	<i>we should</i>	} <i>have</i>
<i>rex-issēs</i>	<i>thou wouldst</i>		<i>rex-issētīs</i>	<i>ye would</i>	
<i>rex-issēt</i>	<i>he would</i>		<i>rex-issent</i>	<i>they would</i>	

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. and	} <i>rēg-ērē</i>	} <i>to rule.</i>
IMP.		
PERF. and	} <i>rex-issē</i>	} <i>to have</i>
PLUP.		
FUTURE.	<i>rec-tūrūs</i>	<i>to be about</i>
	<i>essē</i>	<i>to rule.</i>

GERUNDS.

Acc. <i>rēg-endum</i>	<i>ruling</i>
Gen. <i>rēg-endī</i>	<i>of ruling</i>
Dat. <i>rēg-endō</i>	<i>for ruling</i>
Abl. <i>rēg-endō</i>	<i>by ruling.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>rec-tum</i>	<i>to rule</i>
<i>rec-tū</i>	<i>in ruling, or to be</i>
	<i>ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. <i>rēg-ens, -entis</i>	<i>ruling</i>
FUTURE. <i>rec-tūrūs (ā, um)</i>	<i>about</i>
	<i>to rule.</i>

NOTE.—The formation of the Perfect in this Conjugation varies much more than in the others: see pp. 138-143. But whatever the form of the Perfect may be, the other Perfect Tenses are formed from it: as, *rumpo, I burst*; Perf. *rūpī*; Pluperf. *rūperam*; Fut.-Perf. *rūpēro*, &c. See p. 134, C.

XXII.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audīo, audīvī, auditum, audirē,—to hear. Stem: audi-

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io	<i>I hear or am</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>	P. aud-imūs	<i>we hear or are</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>
aud-is	<i>thou hearest or art</i>		aud-iūs	<i>ye hear or are</i>	
aud-it	<i>he hears or is</i>		aud-iunt	<i>they hear or are</i>	

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-iēbam	<i>I was hearing</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>	P. aud-iēbāmūs	<i>we were hearing</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>
aud-iēbās	<i>thou wast hearing</i>		aud-iēbātis	<i>ye were hearing</i>	
aud-iēbāt	<i>he was hearing.</i>		aud-iēbant	<i>they were hearing.</i>	

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. aud-iam	<i>I shall hear</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>	P. aud-iēmūs	<i>we shall hear</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>
aud-iēs	<i>thou wilt hear</i>		aud-iētis	<i>ye will hear</i>	
aud-iēt	<i>he will hear.</i>		aud-ient	<i>they will hear.</i>	

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ivi	<i>I have heard or</i>	} <i>heard.</i>	P. aud-ivīmūs	<i>we have heard</i>	} <i>heard.</i>
	<i>I heard</i>			<i>or we heard</i>	
aud-ivistī	<i>thou hast heard</i>		aud-ivistis	<i>ye have heard or</i>	
	<i>or thou heardst</i>			<i>ye heard</i>	
aud-ivīt	<i>he has heard or</i>		aud-ivērunt,	<i>they have heard</i>	
	<i>he heard.</i>		<i>or -ivērē</i>	<i>or they heard.</i>	

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ivēram	<i>I had heard</i>	} <i>heard.</i>	P. aud-ivērāmūs	<i>we had heard</i>	} <i>heard.</i>
aud-ivērās	<i>thou hadst heard</i>		aud-ivērātis	<i>ye had heard</i>	
aud-ivērāt	<i>he had heard.</i>		aud-ivērant	<i>they had heard.</i>	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ivēro	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>	P. aud-ivērimūs	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>
aud-ivēris	<i>thou wilt</i>		aud-ivēritis	<i>ye will</i>	
aud-ivērit	<i>he will</i>		aud-ivērint	<i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. aud-i	<i>hear thou.</i>	P. aud-itē	<i>hear ye.</i>
----------	-------------------	------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. aud-ito	<i>thou shalt or must</i>	} <i>hear</i>	P. aud-ittētē	<i>ye shall or must</i>	} <i>hear</i>
	<i>hear</i>			<i>hear</i>	
aud-ito	<i>he must hear or</i>		aud-iunto	<i>they must hear or</i>	
	<i>let him hear.</i>			<i>let them hear</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. aud-iam	<i>I may hear</i>	P. aud-iāmūs	<i>we may hear or let us hear</i>
• aud-iās	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	aud-iātis	<i>ye may hear</i>
aud-iāt	<i>he may hear or let him hear.</i>	aud-iant	<i>they may hear or let them hear.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-irem	<i>I might hear</i>	P. aud-irēmūs	<i>we might hear</i>
aud-irēs	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	aud-irētis	<i>ye might hear</i>
aud-irēt	<i>he might hear.</i>	aud-irent	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ivērim	<i>I may</i>	P. aud-ivērimus	<i>we may</i>
aud-ivēris	<i>thou mayst</i>	aud-ivēritis	<i>ye may</i>
aud-ivērit	<i>he may</i>	aud-ivērint	<i>they may</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. aud-ivissem	<i>I should</i>	P. aud-ivissēmūs	<i>we should</i>
aud-ivissēs	<i>thou wouldst</i>	aud-ivissētis	<i>ye would</i>
aud-ivissēt	<i>he would</i>	aud-ivissent	<i>they would</i>

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. and IMP.	aud-irē	<i>to hear.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	aud-ivissē	<i>{ to have heard.</i>
FUTURE.	aud-itūrus	<i>{ to be about essē to hear.</i>

SUPINES.

aud-ītum	<i>to hear</i>
aud-ītū	<i>in hearing, or to be heard.</i>

GERUNDS.

Acc. aud-iendum	<i>hearing</i>
Gen. aud-iendī	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat. aud-iendō	<i>for hearing</i>
Abl. aud-iendō	<i>by hearing.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	aud-iens, -entis,
	<i>hearing</i>
FUTURE.	aud-itūrus (ā, um),
	<i>about to hear.</i>

NOTE.—In all the Perfect Tenses of the 4th Conjugation *v* may be omitted before *e* and *i*. *ii* is often contracted into *i*: as,

audivistī becomes	{ audistī or audistī	audivēram becomes	audīeram
		audivērim	audīerim
audivistis	{ audistis or audistis	audivissem	{ audissem or audissem
audivīt	audīit	audivissē	{ audissē or audissē.
audivērunt	audīerunt		
audivēro	audīero		

Similarly in the 1st Conjugation, *āmāvistī* often becomes *āmāstī*; *āmāverāt*, *āmārat*, &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXV.

The Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Tenses, Indicative.

NOTE.—When an adjective in the masculine gender is used without a substantive, the word *man* or *person* must be supplied in translating; and when a neuter adjective is so used, the word *thing* must be supplied: as, laudat bonos, *he praises the good*, i.e. *good men*; difficile est, *it is difficult*, i.e. *a difficult thing*; eadem, *the same things*; multa, *many things*.

A.—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Cum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. Thou wilt always praise the good, thou wilt always blame the bad. 3. The Romans gave (*imperf.* of *do* is *dābam*) honours to good citizens. 4. By virtue ye will gain true glory. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves (*se* or *sese*) the enemy (*pl.*) were watching. 6. We adorn houses with gold and silver. 7. The general will give the booty to the soldiers. 8. You (*sing.*) blame yourself, I blame you not. 9. All (persons) praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens were watching, the soldiers were preparing (their) arms.

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indicative.

RULE 11.—When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and are put in the same case: as, Rōmūlus rex, *Romulus, the king*.

B.—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Cum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris, centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Cum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Cum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (*agros*) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of) Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (say, *shall have*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When thou hast (shalt have) improved thy life, thou wilt have gained for thyself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you (*sing.*); I have not blamed you (*sing.*). 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If thou hast gained for thyself true friends, thou art happy.

Imperative Mood.

N.B. In commands *not* is expressed by *ne*; after which the Perfect Subjunctive is preferred to the Imperative: *as, ne intrāveris, do not enter.*

- C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines amato! 3. Mores vestros mutare, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudate probos homines, vituperate improbos! 8. Omnes homines amato Deum! 9. Ne nomen mutaveris; muta mores.

1. Enter (*pl.*), O friends! 2. Improve (*pl.*) those ill manners of yours (those-of-yours, *istos*), scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. Change not this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (*pl.*). 6. Change not (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, the citizens must watch. 8. Good and upright citizens must be-at-the-head-of the commonwealth (*dut.*). 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Indicative Mood states a thing positively; the Subjunctive speaks of it conditionally: *see p. 131.*

A Verb in the Subjunctive Mood cannot properly be the principal Verb in a sentence. There are, however, two exceptions to this rule:—

1. The Present Subjunctive may be the principal Verb when it expresses a command or a wish: *as, mūtēmus haec, let us change these things; sint cives beāti, may my countrymen be happy!*

2. The Perfect Subjunctive may be the principal Verb in a sentence when it is used after *nē* to express a prohibition: *as, nē pūtāveris, do not suppose.*

Sequence of Tenses.—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood depends upon that of the principal Verb. A Present Tense Indicative cannot be followed by an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, nor a Past Tense Indicative by a Present Subjunctive. See Rule 26, page 96.

RULE 12.—The Conjunctions *ut*, *that*, *in-order-that*, and *nē*, *lest*, *that . . . not*, *in-order-that . . . not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

The Present and Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

D.—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in-order-that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in-order-that he might improve him. 6. We fight lest the enemy (*pl.*) may lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms that the soldiers might not enter their lands. 8. We prepare (our) arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in-order-that we might refresh ourselves (*nos*). 10. They are building houses, in-order-that others may dwell in them.

RULE 13.—*Quin* is used with the Subjunctive after such phrases as, *nōn dūbito*, *I do not doubt*, *I have no doubt*; *quīs dūbitāt*? *who doubts?* *nōn est dūbium*, *it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt*; and is translated in English by *that*.

After such expressions as these, the Subjunctive must be translated into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative: as, *nemo dūbitāt quin sīt justum*, *no one doubts that it is just*.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

E.—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. 2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint.* 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnassent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin nostri fortissime pugnassent.

* The Future Participle with *sum* forms a kind of Future Subjunctive.

9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit.
10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

N.B.—In the following Exercise the verbs in italics are to be rendered in Latin by the corresponding Tenses of the Subjunctive.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy *had entered* the city.
2. There is no doubt that our soldiers *have fought* bravely. 3. I do not doubt that *ye have* always *praised* the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) *overcame* the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they *had prepared* arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy *have prepared* arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers *have taken-by-storm* the city. 8. Who doubts that our (men) *fought* bravely? 9. There is no doubt that *he has improved* his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen always fights (*pres. subj.*) for (*prō* with *abl.*) his native-land?

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

RULE 14.—The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood : as, *Caesār hostēs sup̄erārē pōtest, Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

pōtest, (he, she, it) is able.

possunt, (they) are able.

F.—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Vir bonus sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscina cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar was able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome these enemies. 5. The soldiers entered the city, carrying booty. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Ego te monebam, tu flebas. 2. Ego te monebo, tu flebis. 3. Arbores vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet. 5. Romani primis temporibus regibus parebant. 6. Gaudebam quod tu valebas. 7. Praeceptor gaudebat, quod vos praeceptis ejus parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri!

PR. L. I.

1. *We* (see p. 34, Note) shall rejoice, *you* will weep. 2. The young-man obeys not the laws. 3. The commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

B.—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. 2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. Fortes milites! laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis prae buerunt voluptatem. 5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. Divitiae multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coercueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very-many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his (fellow) citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (*praebeo*) a good example to thy (fellow) citizens. 7. Destroy ye not the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his (fellow) citizens. 9. The wise man curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercerem. 3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. Nemo dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit. 8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit. 9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult (i.e. a difficult *thing*; see p. 46, Note) to curb the tongue. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that they entered the city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*fut. part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

* *Obs.*—To set—that I may set: ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by ut and the Subjunctive.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Ego id dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas et frater meus pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Caelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (*agri, pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; my brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (*my*) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (*it*) is very beautiful. 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell * me (*dat.*), (*my*) son; what has hurt you?

B.—1. Tarquinius Priscus urbem Romam muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas et pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjunctionem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, cum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (*say, joined the river by a bridge*). 6. As soon as I have written (*fut.-perf.*) the letter, I shall take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (*when*) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (*things*).

* The verbs dico, dūco, fācio, drop the final e in 2 *sing. pres. imper.*: thus, dic, tell thou; dūc, lead thou; fāc, do thou.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narra nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint? 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his mind. 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*ut* and *Subj.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*pres. inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudit. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunt. 10. Qui puer Deo obedit, is etiam parentibus obedit.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens were keeping-guard, the soldiers were sleeping. 5. We shall keep-guard, and you will sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of (them). 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes (*acc.*) of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not (*nē*) bury (*ut* and *Subj.*) a dead man within (in) the city.

B.—1. Natura Italian Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicero domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos discipulos, qui non obediverant. 4. Vincite eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram vocem hujus avis audivisti? eam non audiui. 6. Servi dominum sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Cum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*superl.*) song of the night-gale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honour to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the wicked citizens with the strongest chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam, ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater tuus scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage (*Fut. Participle* with *sim*) their grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the mind of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Fut. Participle* with *sim*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (*animus**). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (*et . . . et*). 10. (He) who knows not (*nescio*) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

* Use the Singular.

XXIII.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

āmōr, āmātūs sum, āmārī,—to be loved. Stem: āma-

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Ām-ōr</i>	<i>I am being loved or I am loved</i>	<i>P. ām-āmūr</i>	<i>we are being loved or we are loved</i>
<i>ām-ārīs or</i>	<i>thou art being loved</i>	<i>ām-āmīnī</i>	<i>ye are being loved</i>
<i>ām-ārē</i>	<i>or thou art loved</i>		<i>or ye are loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūr</i>	<i>he is being loved or he is loved.</i>	<i>ām-antūr</i>	<i>they are being loved or they are loved.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. ām-ābār</i>	<i>I was being loved or I was loved</i>	<i>P. ām-ābāmūr</i>	<i>we were being loved or we were loved</i>
<i>ām-ābārīs</i>	<i>thou wast being loved</i>	<i>ām-ābāmīnī</i>	<i>ye were being loved</i>
<i>or ām-ābārē</i>	<i>or thou wast loved</i>		<i>or ye were loved</i>
<i>ām-ābātūr</i>	<i>he was being loved or he was loved.</i>	<i>ām-ābantūr</i>	<i>they were being loved or they were loved.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. ām-ābōr</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>P. ām-ābīmūr</i>	<i>we shall be loved</i>
<i>ām-ābērīs</i>	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>	<i>ām-ābīmīnī</i>	<i>ye will be loved</i>
<i>or ām-ābēre</i>			
<i>ām-ābītūr</i>	<i>he will be loved.</i>	<i>ām-ābuntūr</i>	<i>they will be loved.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. ām-ātūs</i>	<i>I have been loved or</i>	<i>P. ām-ātī</i>	<i>we have been loved</i>
<i>sum</i>	<i>I was loved</i>	<i>sūmūs</i>	<i>or we were loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs ēs</i>	<i>thou hast been loved</i>	<i>ām-ātī estīs</i>	<i>ye have been loved</i>
	<i>or thou wast loved</i>		<i>or ye were loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs est</i>	<i>he has been loved or</i>	<i>ām-ātī sunt</i>	<i>they have been loved</i>
	<i>he was loved.</i>		<i>or they were loved.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. ām-ātūs ēram</i>	<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>P. ām-ātī ērāmūs</i>	<i>we had been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs ērās</i>	<i>thou hadst been loved</i>	<i>ām-ātī ērātīs</i>	<i>ye had been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs ērāt</i>	<i>he had been loved.</i>	<i>ām-ātī ērant</i>	<i>they had been loved.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. ām-ātūs ēro</i>	<i>I shall have been loved</i>	<i>P. ām-ātī ērimūs</i>	<i>we shall have been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs ērīs</i>	<i>thou wilt have been loved</i>	<i>ām-ātī ērītīs</i>	<i>ye will have been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs ērīt</i>	<i>he will have been loved.</i>	<i>ām-ātī ērunt</i>	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.		FUTURE TENSE.	
S. <i>ām-ārē</i>	<i>be thou loved.</i>	P. <i>ām-āmīnī</i>	<i>be ye loved.</i>
S. <i>ām-ātōr</i>	<i>thou shalt or must be loved</i>		
<i>ām-ātōr</i>	<i>he shall or must be loved or let him be loved.</i>	P. <i>ām-antōr</i>	<i>they shall or must be loved or let them be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1. PRESENT TENSE.			
S. <i>ām-ēr</i>	<i>I may be loved</i>	P. <i>ām-ēmūr</i>	<i>we may be loved or let us be loved</i>
<i>ām-ērīs or</i>	<i>thou mayst be loved</i>	<i>ām-ēmīnī</i>	<i>ye may be loved</i>
<i>ām-ērē</i>			
<i>ām-ētūr</i>	<i>he may be loved or let him be loved.</i>	<i>ām-entūr</i>	<i>they may be loved or let them be loved.</i>
2. IMPERFECT TENSE.			
S. <i>ām-ārēr</i>	<i>I might be loved</i>	P. <i>ām-ārēmūr</i>	<i>we might be loved</i>
<i>ām-ārērīs</i>	<i>thou mightst be loved</i>	<i>ām-ārēmīnī</i>	<i>ye might be loved</i>
<i>or ām-ārērē</i>			
<i>ām-ārētūr</i>	<i>he might be loved.</i>	<i>ām-ārentūr</i>	<i>they might be loved.</i>
3. PERFECT TENSE.			
S. <i>ām-ātūs sim</i>	<i>I may have been loved</i>	P. <i>ām-ātī sīmūs</i>	<i>we may have been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs sīs</i>	<i>thou mayst have been loved</i>	<i>ām-ātī sītīs</i>	<i>ye may have been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs sīt</i>	<i>he may have been loved.</i>	<i>ām-ātī sint</i>	<i>they may have been loved.</i>
4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.			
S. <i>ām-ātūs essem</i>	<i>I should have been loved</i>	P. <i>ām-ātī essēmūs</i>	<i>we should have been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs essēs</i>	<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	<i>ām-ātī essētīs</i>	<i>ye would have been loved</i>
<i>ām-ātūs essēt</i>	<i>he would have been loved.</i>	<i>ām-ātī essent</i>	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	<i>ām-ārī</i>	<i>to be loved</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	<i>ām-ātūs (ā um) essē</i>	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE.	<i>ām-ātum (same for all genders) irī</i>	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	<i>ām-ātūs ā um</i>	<i>loved or having been loved</i>
GERUNDIVE	<i>ām-andūs ā um</i>	<i>fit to be loved or that must be loved.</i>

N.B.—Concerning the translation of the Subj. Mood, see p. 40, Note 3.

XXIV.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—

PASSIVE VOICE.

mōnšōr, mōnītūs sum, mōnēri,—to be advised. Stem: mōne-

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-eōr</i>	<i>I am being advised or I am advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēmūr</i>	<i>we are being advised or we are advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēris or mōn-ērē</i>	<i>thou art being advised or thou art advised</i>	<i>mōn-ēmīni</i>	<i>ye are being advised or ye are advised</i>
<i>mōn-ētūr</i>	<i>he is being advised or he is advised.</i>	<i>mōn-entūr</i>	<i>they are being advised or they are advised.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ēbār</i>	<i>I was being advised or I was advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēbāmūr</i>	<i>we were being advised or we were advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbāris or mōn-ēbārē</i>	<i>thou wast being advised or thou wast advised</i>	<i>mōn-ēbāmīni</i>	<i>ye were being advised or ye were advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbātūr</i>	<i>he was being advised or he was advised.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbantūr</i>	<i>they were being advised or they were advised.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ēbōr</i>	<i>I shall be advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēbimūr</i>	<i>we shall be advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbēris or mōn-ēbērē</i>	<i>thou wilt be advised</i>	<i>mōn-ēbīmīni</i>	<i>ye will be advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbitūr</i>	<i>he will be advised.</i>	<i>mōn-ēbuntūr</i>	<i>they will be advised.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ītūs sum</i>	<i>I have been advised or I was advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-ītī sumūs</i>	<i>we have been advised or we were advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs ēs</i>	<i>thou hast been advised or thou wast advised</i>	<i>mōn-ītī estīs</i>	<i>ye have been advised or ye were advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs est</i>	<i>he has been advised or he was advised.</i>	<i>mōn-ītī sunt</i>	<i>they have been advised or they were advised.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ītūs ēram</i>	<i>I had been advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-ītī ērāmūs</i>	<i>we had been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs ērās</i>	<i>thou hadst been advised</i>	<i>mōn-ītī ērātīs</i>	<i>ye had been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs ērāt</i>	<i>he had been advised.</i>	<i>mōn-ītī ērant</i>	<i>they had been advised.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ītūs ēro</i>	<i>I shall have been advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-īti ērimūs</i>	<i>we shall have been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs ēris</i>	<i>thou wilt have been advised</i>	<i>mōn-īti ēritīs</i>	<i>ye will have been advised</i>
<i>• mōn-ītūs ērit</i>	<i>he will have been advised.</i>	<i>mōn-īti ērunt</i>	<i>they will have been advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ērē</i>	<i>be thou advised.</i>	<i>P. mōn-ēmīnī</i>	<i>be ye advised.</i>
-------------------	-------------------------	---------------------	-----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ētōr</i>	<i>thou shalt or must be advised</i>		
<i>mōn-ētōr</i>	<i>he shall or must be advised or let him be advised.</i>	<i>P. mōn-entōr</i>	<i>they shall or must be advised or let them be advised.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-eār</i>	<i>I may be advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-eāmūr</i>	<i>we may be advised or let us be advised</i>
<i>mōn-eārīs or mōn-eārē</i>	<i>thou mayst be advised</i>	<i>mōn-eāmīnī</i>	<i>ye may be advised</i>
<i>• mōn-eātūr</i>	<i>he may be advised or let him be advised.</i>	<i>mōn-eantūr</i>	<i>they may be advised or let them be advised.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ērēr</i>	<i>I might be advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-ērēmūr</i>	<i>we might be advised</i>
<i>mōn-ērērīs or mōn-ērērē</i>	<i>thou mightst be advised</i>	<i>mōn-ērēmīnī</i>	<i>ye might be advised</i>
<i>mōn-ērētūr</i>	<i>he might be advised.</i>	<i>mōn-ērentūr</i>	<i>they might be advised.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ītūs sim</i>	<i>I may have been advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-īti sīmūs</i>	<i>we may have been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs sis</i>	<i>thou mayst have been advised</i>	<i>mōn-īti sitīs</i>	<i>ye may have been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs sit</i>	<i>he may have been advised.</i>	<i>mōn-īti sint</i>	<i>they may have been advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. mōn-ītūs essem</i>	<i>I should have been advised</i>	<i>P. mōn-īti essēmūs</i>	<i>we should have been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs essēs</i>	<i>thou wouldst have been advised</i>	<i>mōn-īti essētīs</i>	<i>ye would have been advised</i>
<i>mōn-ītūs essēt</i>	<i>he would have been advised.</i>	<i>mōn-īti essent</i>	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	mōn-ērī	<i>to be advised</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	mōn-ītūs ā um	<i>to have been advised</i>
FUTURE.	mōn-ītum (same for all genders) īrī	<i>to be about to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	mōn-ītūs ā um	<i>advised or having been advised</i>
GERUNDIVE.	mōn-endūs ā um	<i>fit to be advised or that must be advised.</i>

XXV.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

rēgōr, rectūs sum, rēgī,—to be ruled. Stem: rēg-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ōr	<i>I am being ruled or I am ruled</i>	P. rēg-īmūr	<i>we are being ruled or we are ruled</i>
rēg-ērīs or rēg-ērē	<i>thou art being ruled or thou art ruled</i>	rēg-īmīnī	<i>ye are being ruled or ye are ruled</i>
rēg-ītūr	<i>he is being ruled or he is ruled.</i>	rēg-untūr	<i>they are being ruled or they are ruled.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. rēg-ēbār	<i>I was being ruled or I was ruled</i>	P. rēg-ēbāmūr	<i>we were being ruled or we were ruled</i>
rēg-ēbārīs or rēg-ēbārē	<i>thou wast being ruled or thou wast ruled</i>	rēg-ēbāmīnī	<i>ye were being ruled or ye were ruled</i>
rēg-ēbātūr	<i>he was being ruled or he was ruled.</i>	rēg-ēbantūr	<i>they were being ruled or they were ruled.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. rēg-ār	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	P. rēg-ēmūr	<i>we shall be ruled</i>
rēg-ārīs or rēg-ārē	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	rēg-ēmīnī	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
rēg-ētūr	<i>he will be ruled.</i>	rēg-entūr	<i>they will be ruled.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rec-tūs sum</i>	<i>have been ruled or I was ruled</i>	<i>P. rec-tī sūmūs</i>	<i>we have been ruled or we were ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs es</i>	<i>thou hast been ruled or thou wast ruled</i>	<i>rec-tī estīs</i>	<i>ye have been ruled or ye were ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs est</i>	<i>he has been ruled or he was ruled.</i>	<i>rec-tī sunt</i>	<i>they have been ruled or they were ruled.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rec-tūs ēram</i>	<i>I had been ruled</i>	<i>P. rec-tī ērāmūs</i>	<i>we had been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs ērās</i>	<i>thou hadst been ruled</i>	<i>rec-tī ērātīs</i>	<i>ye had been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs ērāt</i>	<i>he had been ruled.</i>	<i>rec-tī ērant</i>	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rec-tūs ēro</i>	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>	<i>P. rec-tī ērīmūs</i>	<i>we shall have been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs ērīs</i>	<i>thou wilt have been ruled</i>	<i>rec-tī ērītīs</i>	<i>ye will have been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs ērīt</i>	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>	<i>rec-tī ērunt</i>	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-ērē</i>	<i>be thou ruled.</i>	<i>P. rēg-īmīnī</i>	<i>be ye ruled.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	---------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-ītōr</i>	<i>thou shalt or must be ruled</i>		
<i>rēg-ītōr</i>	<i>ne shall or must be ruled or let him be ruled.</i>	<i>P. rēg-untōr</i>	<i>they shall or must be ruled or let them be ruled.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-ār</i>	<i>I may be ruled</i>	<i>P. rēg-āmūr</i>	<i>we may be ruled or let us be ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ārīs or rēg-ārē</i>	<i>thou mayst be ruled</i>	<i>rēg-āmīnī</i>	<i>ye may be ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ātūr</i>	<i>he may be ruled or let him be ruled.</i>	<i>rēg-antūr</i>	<i>they may be ruled or let them be ruled.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rēg-ērēr</i>	<i>I might be ruled</i>	<i>P. rēg-ērēmūr</i>	<i>we might be ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ērērīs or rēg-ērērē</i>	<i>thou mightst be ruled</i>	<i>rēg-ērēmīnī</i>	<i>ye might be ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ērētūr</i>	<i>he might be ruled.</i>	<i>rēg-ērētūr</i>	<i>they might be ruled.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rec-tūs sim</i>	<i>I may have been ruled</i>	<i>P. rec-tī simūs</i>	<i>we may have been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs sīs</i>	<i>thou mayst have been ruled</i>	<i>rec-tī sītīs</i>	<i>ye may have been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs sīt</i>	<i>he may have been ruled.</i>	<i>rec-tī sint</i>	<i>they may have been ruled.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. rec-tūs essem</i>	<i>I should have been ruled</i>	<i>P. rec-tī essēmūs</i>	<i>we should have been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs essēs</i>	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled</i>	<i>rec-tī essētis</i>	<i>ye would have been ruled</i>
<i>rec-tūs essēt</i>	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>	<i>rec-tī essent</i>	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>PRES. and IMP. rēg-i</i>	<i>to be ruled</i>
<i>PERF. and PLUP. rec-tūs (ā um) essē</i>	<i>to have been ruled</i>
<i>FUTURE. rec-tum (same for all genders) iri</i>	<i>to be about to be ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PERFECT rec-tūs ā um</i>	<i>ruled or having been ruled</i>
<i>GERUNDIVE. rēg-endūs ā um</i>	<i>fit to be ruled or that must be ruled.</i>

XXVI.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—

PASSIVE VOICE.

audīōr, audītūs sum, audīrī,—to be heard. Stem: audī-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-iōr</i>	<i>I am being heard or I am heard</i>	<i>P. aud-īmūr</i>	<i>we are being heard or we are heard</i>
<i>aud-irīs or aud-irē</i>	<i>thou art being heard or thou art heard</i>	<i>aud-īmīni</i>	<i>ye are being heard or ye are heard</i>
<i>aud-ītūr</i>	<i>he is being heard or he is heard.</i>	<i>aud-īuntūr</i>	<i>they are being heard or they are heard.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-iēbār</i>	<i>I was being heard or I was heard</i>	<i>P. aud-iēbāmūr</i>	<i>we were being heard or we were heard</i>
<i>aud-iēbāris</i> or <i>thou wast being • aud-iēbārē</i>	<i>heard or thou wast heard</i>	<i>aud-iēbāmīnī</i>	<i>ye were being heard or ye were heard</i>
<i>aud-iēbātūr</i>	<i>he was being heard or he was heard.</i>	<i>aud-iēbantūr</i>	<i>they were being heard or they were heard.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. aud-iār</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>	<i>P. aud-iēmūr</i>	<i>we shall be heard</i>
<i>aud-iēris</i> or	<i>thou wilt be heard</i>	<i>aud-iēmīnī</i>	<i>ye will be heard</i>
<i>aud-iērē</i>			
<i>aud-iētūr</i>	<i>he will be heard.</i>	<i>aud-ientūr</i>	<i>they will be heard.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-itūs sum</i>	<i>I have been heard or I was heard</i>	<i>P. aud-iti sūmūs</i>	<i>we have been heard or we were heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs ēs</i>	<i>thou hast been heard or thou wast heard</i>	<i>aud-iti estīs</i>	<i>ye have been heard or ye were heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs est</i>	<i>he has been heard or he was heard.</i>	<i>aud-iti sunt</i>	<i>they have been heard or they were heard.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-itūs ēram</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>	<i>P. aud-iti ērāmūs</i>	<i>we had been heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs ērās</i>	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>	<i>aud-iti ērātīs</i>	<i>ye had been heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs ērāt</i>	<i>he had been heard.</i>	<i>aud-iti ērant</i>	<i>they had been heard.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-itūs ēro</i>	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	<i>P. aud-iti ērimūs</i>	<i>we shall have been heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs ēris</i>	<i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	<i>aud-iti ēritīs</i>	<i>ye will have been heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs ērit</i>	<i>he will have been heard.</i>	<i>aud-iti ērunt</i>	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-irē</i>	<i>be thou heard.</i>	<i>P. aud-imīnī</i>	<i>be ye heard.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	---------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. aud-itōr</i>	<i>thou shalt or must be heard</i>		
<i>aud-itōr</i>	<i>he shall or must be heard or let him be heard.</i>	<i>P. aud-iuntōr</i>	<i>they shall or must be heard or let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-iār</i>	<i>I may be heard</i>	<i>P. aud-iāmūr</i>	<i>we may be heard</i>
<i>aud-iārīs or</i>	<i>thou mayst be</i>	<i>aud-iāmīnī</i>	<i>or let us be heard</i>
<i>aud-iārē</i>	<i>heard</i>		<i>ye may be heard</i>
<i>aud-iātūr</i>	<i>he may be heard</i>	<i>aud-iantūr</i>	<i>they may be heard</i>
	<i>or let him be</i>		<i>or let them be</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-irēr</i>	<i>I might be heard</i>	<i>P. aud-irēmūr</i>	<i>we might be heard</i>
<i>aud-irērīs or</i>	<i>thou mightst be</i>	<i>aud-irēmīnī</i>	<i>ye might be heard</i>
<i>aud-irērē</i>	<i>heard</i>		
<i>aud-irētūr</i>	<i>he might be heard.</i>	<i>aud-irentūr</i>	<i>they might be</i>
			<i>heard.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-itūs sim</i>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>P. aud-iti simūs</i>	<i>we may have been</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs sis</i>	<i>thou mayst have</i>	<i>aud-iti sītīs</i>	<i>ye may have been</i>
	<i>been heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs sīt</i>	<i>he may have been</i>	<i>aud-iti sint</i>	<i>they may have</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>been heard.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. aud-itūs essem</i>	<i>I should have</i>	<i>P. aud-iti essēmūs</i>	<i>we should have</i>
	<i>been heard</i>		<i>been heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs essēs</i>	<i>thou wouldst have</i>	<i>aud-iti essētīs</i>	<i>ye would have</i>
	<i>been heard</i>		<i>been heard</i>
<i>aud-itūs essēt</i>	<i>he would have</i>	<i>aud-iti essent</i>	<i>they would have</i>
	<i>been heard.</i>		<i>been heard.</i>

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	<i>aud-irī</i>	<i>to be heard</i>
PERP. and PLUP.	<i>aud-itus (ā um) essē</i>	<i>to have been heard</i>
FUTURE.	<i>aud-ītum (same for all genders) irī</i>	<i>to be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	<i>aud-itūs ā um</i>	<i>heard or having been heard</i>
GERUNDIVE.	<i>aud-iendūs ā um</i>	<i>fit to be heard or that must be heard.</i>

Obs. The Gerundive Participles of all Passive Verbs may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *audiendūs sum*, *I am fit to be heard*; *audiendūs eram*, *I was fit to be heard*.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

RULE 15.—A statement in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative of the agent into the ablative. If the agent is a living being, the preposition *ā* or *āb* is prefixed; the former before a consonant and the latter before a vowel (or *h*). Thus *māgister puerum laudāt*, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, *puer ā māgistrō laudatūr*, *the boy is praised by the master*.

EXERCISE XXIX.

NOTE.—In all Tenses compounded of the Perfect Participle and the verb *sum*, the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with the subject of the verb: as,

puēr āmāt- <i>ūs</i> est,	<i>the boy was loved.</i>
puellā āmāt- <i>ā</i> est,	<i>the girl was loved.</i>
bellum āmāt- <i>um</i> est,	<i>war was loved.</i>
puērī āmāt- <i>i</i> sunt,	<i>the boys were loved.</i>
puellae āmāt- <i>ae</i> sunt,	<i>the girls were loved.</i>
bellā āmāt- <i>ā</i> sunt,	<i>wars were loved.</i>

A.—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attentī a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Non est dulce ab hoste superari. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer bene educatus omnibus placet. 10. Cum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (parō) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

B.—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edūcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnāt, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I

will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Arms must be prepared (*Imper.*); the gates of the city must be strengthened (*Imper.*). 7. The general takes-care that the gates may be strengthened. 8. Let not the good be blamed; let not the bad be praised. 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXX.

A.—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great-thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified by his (ejus) arrival. 7. Nero was grievously feared (*imperf.*) by all the citizens. 8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. The bodies of the children must be actively exercised (*Imper.*). 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego strenue exercerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceam. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercerem. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He was taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take-care that the boys are taught (*subj.*) carefully. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught (*subj.*). 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified by his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took-care that we might be carefully taught. 8. I have taken-care that my sons should (*pres. subj.*) be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful (*fem.*) of (all) things; take-care that it is diligently exercised (*pres. subj.*).

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

A.—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligere. 7. Cum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjunctio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, cum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the river Rhine by Caesar. (Say, the river Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaëthon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaëthon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru veheretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid ad te a sorore scriptum sit.* 8. Dixit mihi, quid ad te a sorore scriptum esset.* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took-care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*dat.*) what (*quae, neuter plural*) was written (*perfect subj.**) to thee. 8. He told me (*dat.*) what (*quae*) had been written (*pluperf. subj.**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently See p. 96. The Indicative must be used in translating into English.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

A.—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo puniuntur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finiuntur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntur. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*imperf. pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honours. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (*nostra*) will be found exceedingly-short (*superl.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*fut.-perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and strengthened with guards.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceretur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me graviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit (see p. 47, *Sequence of Tenses*), quin puella a me graviter custodita sit.

1. The boys must be carefully trained (*Imper.*). 2. Let not the boys be trained (*Imper.*) by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained (*pres. subj.*). 4. I took care that my son should be trained by a good master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad (one)? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained (*pres. subj.*). 10. Well trained boys love their master.

XXVII.—THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES).

Jāpio, cēpī, captum, cāpērē,—to take. Stem: cāp- or cāpi-.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-io.	<i>I take</i>	cāp-imūs	<i>we take</i>
	cāp-is	<i>thou takest</i>	cāp-itīs	<i>ye take</i>
	cāp-it	<i>he takes.</i>	cāp-iunt	<i>they take.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>		cāp-lēbam		<i>I was taking.</i>
<i>Future.</i>		cāp-iam		<i>I shall take.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-iam	<i>I may take.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	cāp-ērem	<i>I might take.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-ē	<i>take thou.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	cāp-ito	<i>thou shalt or must take.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-ērē	<i>to take.</i>
-----------------	----------------	-----------------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-iens	<i>taking.</i>
-----------------	-----------------	----------------

GERUNDS.

<i>Acc.</i>	cāp-iendum, &c.	<i>taking.</i>
-------------	----------------------------	----------------

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-iōr	<i>I am taken</i>	cāp-imūr	<i>we are taken</i>
	cāp-erīs	<i>thou art</i>	cāp-imīnī	<i>ye are taken</i>
	or -ērēs	<i>taken</i>	cāp-iuntūr	<i>they are taken.</i>
	cāp-itūr	<i>he is taken.</i>		
<i>Imperfect.</i>		cāp-iēbar		<i>I was being taken</i>
<i>Future.</i>		cāp-iār		<i>I shall be taken.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-iār	<i>I may be taken.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	cāp-ērēr	<i>I might be taken.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-ērē	<i>be thou taken.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	cāp-ītōr	<i>thou must be taken.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	cāp-i	<i>to be taken.</i>
-----------------	--------------	---------------------

NOTE.—The Perfect Tenses are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular : cēp-i, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, etc. ; passive, captus sum, captus eram, etc.

The following Verbs are conjugated like cāpio : see p. 144.

fācio,	fēcī,	factum,	fācērē,	<i>to make.</i>
jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jācērē,	<i>to throw.</i>
fūgio,	fūgī,	fūgitum,	fūgērē,	<i>to flee.</i>
fōdio,	fōdī,	fossūm,	fōdērē,	<i>to dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpērē,	<i>to seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpēri,	partum,	pārērē,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
quātio, (no perfect,)		quassum,	quātērē,	<i>to shake.</i>
cūpio,	cūpivi (ii),	cūpitum,	cūpērē,	<i>to desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpivi (ii),	—	sāpērē,	<i>to savour of, be wise.</i>

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives; rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, frater tuus in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat cum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites: saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne feceritis absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a high rock. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We shall dig in the earth, in order that we may find metals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find (*subj.*) pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole oration savours-of the poets (*acc.*).

XXVIII.—DEPONENT VERBS.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation : see p. 70.

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, cum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate on these things. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does-good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at length will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*fut.-perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (*ea, n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation : see p. 70.

RULE 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit: nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. The generals have promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. He has confessed the crime, and will be punished. 7. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 8. Ye will call-to-mind these things (*acc. neut.*) when I am cast forth (*fut.-perf.*) from the city. 9. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 10. He reverences the gods.

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,

I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortārī, to exhort, like ämör.

II. Vëreör, vëritüs sum, vërerī, to fear, „ möneör.

	I.	II.
INDICATIVE MOOD.	<p><i>Present.</i> hort-ör, { I exhort or am exhorting. hort-ärls or -ärö, } thou exhortest, &c. &c.,</p> <p><i>Imperfect.</i> hort-ähär, I was exhorting. <i>Future-Simple.</i> hort-ihör, I shall exhort. <i>Perfect.</i> hort-itüs sum, } I have exhorted, or I exhorted. <i>Pluperfect.</i> hort-itüs eram, } I had exhorted. <i>Fut.-Perfect.</i> hort-itüs êro, } I shall have exhorted.</p>	<p>Vër-eör, { I fear or am fearing. vër-ërls or -ëre, } thou fearest, &c. &c.</p> <p>vër-ëhär, I was fearing. vër-ëhör, I shall fear. vër-itüs sum, } I have feared, or I feared. vër-itüs eram, } I had feared. vër-itüs êro, } I shall have feared.</p>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	<p><i>Present.</i> hort-ër, I may exhort. <i>Imperfect.</i> hort-ërër, I might exhort. <i>Perfect.</i> hort-itüs sim, } I may have exhorted. <i>Pluperfect.</i> hort-itüs essem, } I should have exhorted.</p>	<p>vër-eär, I may fear. vër-ërër, I might fear. vër-itüs sim, } I may have feared. vër-itüs essem, } I should have feared.</p>
IMPERATIVE.	<p><i>Present.</i> hort-ärë, exhort thou. <i>Future.</i> hort-ätör, { thou shalt or must exhort.</p>	<p>vër-ërë, fear thou. vër-ëtör, { thou shalt or must fear.</p>
INFINITIVE.	<p><i>Pres. & Imperf.</i> hort-ärl, to exhort. <i>Perf. & Plup.</i> hort-itüs essë, } to have exhorted. <i>Future.</i> hort-ätürüs essë, } to be about to exhort.</p>	<p>vër-ërl, to fear. vër-itüs essë, } to have feared. vër-itürüs essë, } to be about to fear.</p>
PARTICIPLES.	<p><i>Present.</i> hort-ans, exhorting. <i>Future.</i> hort-ätürüs, about to exhort. <i>Perfect.</i> hort-itüs, having exhorted. <i>Gerundive.</i> hort-andüs, { meet or fit to be exhorted.</p>	<p>vër-ens, fearing. vër-itürüs, about to fear. vër-itüs, having feared. vër-endüs, { meet or fit to be feared.</p>
SUPINES.	hort-ätum, to exhort.	vër-ëtum, to fear.
GERUNDS.	hort-itül, to be exhorted. hort-andum, exhorting, &c. &c.	vër-itül, to be feared, vër-endum, fearing, &c. &c.

Besides the Passive forms, Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle Active; as, hortätüs, having exhorted.

but an Active meaning.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, to speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīri, to divide, ,, audiōr.

III.			IV.			
<i>Present.</i>	lōqu-ōr,	{ <i>I speak or am speaking.</i>	Part-lōr,	{ <i>I divide or am dividing</i>		INDICATIVE MOOD.
	lōqu-ōris ōr-ōrē, &c.	{ <i>thou speakest, &c.</i>	part-lōris or -lōrē, &c.	{ <i>thou dividest, &c.</i>		
<i>Imperfect.</i>	lōqu-ēbār,	<i>I was speaking.</i>	part-lēbār,	<i>I was dividing.</i>		
<i>Fut.-Simple.</i>	lōqu-ār,	<i>I shall speak</i>	part-lār,	<i>I shall divide.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	lōcū-tūs sum, Pluperfect. lōcū-tūs eram, <i>Fut.-Perfect.</i> lōcū-tūs ero,	{ <i>I have spoken, or I spoke. I had spoken. I shall have spoken.</i>	part-ītūs sum, part-ītūs eram, part-ītūs ero,	{ <i>I have divided, or I divided. I had divided. I shall have divided.</i>		
<i>Present.</i>	lōqu-ār,	<i>I may speak.</i>	part-lār,	<i>I may divide.</i>		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	lōqu-ārēr,	<i>I might speak.</i>	part-lōrēr,	<i>I might divide.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	*lōcū-tūs sim,	{ <i>I may have spoken.</i>	part-ītūs sim,	{ <i>I may have divided.</i>		
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	lōcū-tūs essem,	{ <i>I should have spoken.</i>	part-ītūs essem,	{ <i>I should have divided.</i>		
<i>Present.</i>	lōqu-ōrē,	<i>speak thou.</i>	part-lōrē,	<i>divide thou.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	lōqu-ītōr,	{ <i>thou shalt or must speak.</i>	part-lōrē,	{ <i>thou shalt or must divide.</i>		
<i>Pres. & Imp.</i>	lōqu-l,	<i>to speak.</i>	part-lōrē,	<i>to divide.</i>		INFINITIVE.
<i>Perf. & Plup.</i>	lōcū-tūs essē,	{ <i>to have spoken.</i>	part-ītūs essē,	{ <i>to have divided.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	lōcū-tūtūs essē,	{ <i>to be about to speak.</i>	part-ītūtūs essē,	{ <i>to be about to divide.</i>		
<i>Present.</i>	lōqu-ens,	<i>speaking.</i>	part-lōrē,	<i>dividing.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	lōcū-tūtūs,	<i>about to speak.</i>	part-lōrē,	<i>about to divide.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	lōcū-tūs,	<i>having spoken.</i>	part-ītūs,	<i>having divided.</i>		
<i>Gerundive.</i>	lōqu-endūs,	{ <i>meet or fit to be spoken.</i>	part-lōrē,	{ <i>meet or fit to be divided.</i>		
<i>SUPINES.</i>	lōcū-tum, lōcū-tū, lōqu-endum, &c.	{ <i>to speak. to be spoken. speaking, &c.</i>	part-lōrē,	{ <i>to divide. to be divided. dividing, &c.</i>		

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning.

Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in u.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

RULE 17.—*Ūtor, fruor, vescor, fungor*, govern the Ablative Case : also *pōtior* (4), *I gain-possession-of* (sometimes Gen.).

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruuntur. 4. Virtutis viam semper sequemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungere! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur munere suo.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. By this death he has obtained immortal glory. 3. It is a small-thing to enjoy life; it is a great-thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take-care that you always follow (*subj.*) the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body has died (*fut.-perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*imperfect*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the greatest freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse (them). 10. Follow us; we will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci iubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagravit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve (*and not*) liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (your) ancient valour, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small-thing to speak kindly (benigne) to one's fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we enjoy peace; shortly we shall carry-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day (see Latin No. 8), on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortunā. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus

nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiantur.

1. We shall try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. It is extremely-base (*superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (*pl.*) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us try our valour; let us obtain-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

I. With the Accusative alone.

ad	to, near, against.	ob	{ in front of, on account of.
adversus	} towards, against.	p̄nēs	} in the power of.
adversum		p̄r	
antē	before.	p̄nē	through.
ap̄d	at, near, among.	p̄nē	behind.
cirēā, circum	around.	post	after.
circit̄r	about.	praet̄r	beside.
cis & citrā	on this side of.	pr̄pē	near.
contrā	against, contrary to.	propt̄r	on account of.
ergā	{ towards (only of the feelings).	s̄cundum	{ following, in accord-
extrā	outside of.		ance with.
infrā	below.	suprā	above.
int̄r	between, among.	trans	across.
intrā	inside of, within.	ultrā	on the farther side of.
juxtā	near, hard by, next to.	versūs	towards (only of place or direction).

Versus is put after the word it governs.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Iudices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fuit. 10. Equitatum praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army towards the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge in-accordance-with the laws. 8. We (nos) shall dwell within the city, but you (vos) will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The nightingale migrates across the sea in winter.

II. With the Ablative alone.

ā, āb, or abs	<i>by or from.</i>	ex or ē	<i>out of, from.</i>
absquē (rare)	<i>without.</i>	prae	<i>before, in comparison with.</i>
cōram	<i>in the presence of.</i>	prō	<i>before, for, on behalf of.</i>
cum	<i>with. [concerning.]</i>	sine	<i>without.</i>
dē	<i>down from, from,</i>	tēnūs	<i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

Tēnūs often takes the Gen. of plural nouns: it is put after the word it governs.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Magnā cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Cicerone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi quae scripseram. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The sea separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He has said this in-the-presence-of his father.

III. With the Accusative or Ablative.

in, in (abl.); into (of motion towards), against (acc.).	super, over, above; usually acc.
sub, under (of place where, abl.; of motion towards, acc.); of time, towards (acc.).	subter, beneath, usually acc.
	clam, concealing (a thing) from; without the knowledge of, acc. or, less frequently, abl.

* Mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, quōcum (quicum), nōbiscum, vōbiscum, quībuscum, are used instead of cum me, cum te, &c.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar ultra Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth (there) are many beautiful (say, many *and* beautiful) things. 10. Towards (sub) winter these birds migrate into other lands.

XXX.—ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives, by means of the terminations *-ē* and *-tēr*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions end in *-ē*, as *doctē*, *learnedly*, from *doctūs*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Third Declension end in *-tēr*, as *fortitēr*, *bravely*, from *fortis*.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *iūs*: as, *fortius*, *more bravely*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*: as, *fortissimē*, *most bravely*.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.			
		Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
doctus	learned.	doctē	learnedly.	doctius	doctissimē
liber	free.	liberē	freely.	liberius	liberrimē
pulcher	beautiful.	pulchrē	beautifully.	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis	brave.	fortitēr	bravely.	fortius	fortissimē
similis	like.	similitēr	alike.	similius	simillimē
acer	keen.	acritēr	keenly.	acrius	acerrimē
felix	lucky.	feliciter	luckily.	felicius	felicissimē
prudens	prudent.	prudenter	prudently.	prudentialius	prudentialissimē

Adverbs derived from Adjectives which are compared irregularly follow their formation in the Comparative and Superlative: as, *fácilis*, *easy*, Superlative *fácilissimus*, with corresponding adverb *fácilissimē*, *very easily*; *magníficus*, *magnificent*, Superlative *magníficentissimus*, with corresponding adverb *magníficentissimē*, *most magnificently*. The following are the principal Adverbs which have irregularities of formation:—

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bēnē	<i>well.</i>	mālius	optimē
mālē	<i>badly, ill.</i>	pējus	pessimē
multum	<i>much.</i>	plūs	plūrimum
[magnōpère]	<i>greatly.</i>	magis	maximē
pārum	<i>little.</i>	minus	minimē
paulum, -o	<i>a little.</i>		
prōpē	<i>near.</i>	prōpius	proximē
[prae]	<i>before.</i>	prius	primum

EXERCISE XLI.

A.—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Qui male fecerunt ii iudicem timere debent. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10. Orationes Desmosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

B.—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (*he is*) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal. 9. Pessime omnium fecisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbos laudavisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very near to (ad) the

gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse than all the others. 7. It is not a great-thing to write much, it is a very-great-thing to write well. 8. First of all (things) reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult (superl.).

XXXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. Possum, pōtūi, possē, to be able; can.

[Possum is compounded of pot (pōtis, able) and sum, I am, the t in pot being changed into s before another s.]

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.		4. Perfect.	
S. Pos-sum	pos-sim	S. pōt-ūi	pōt-uērim
pōt-ēs	pos-sis	pōt-uistī	pōt-uēris
pōt-est	pos-sit	pōt-uīt	pōt-uērit
P. pos-sūmūs	pos-simūs	P. pōt-uīmūs	pōt-uērimūs
pōt-estis	pos-sitis	pōt-uistis	pōt-uēritis
pos-sunt	pos-sint	pōt-uērunt (uērē)	pōt-uērint
2. Imperfect.		5. Pluperfect.	
S. pōt-ēram	pos-sem	S. pōt-uēram	pōt-nissem
pōt-ēs	pos-sēs	pōt-uēras	pōt-nissēs
pōt-erāt	pos-sēt	pōt-uērāt	pōt-nissēt
P. pōt-erāmūs	pos-sēmūs	P. pōt-uērāmūs	pōt-nissēmūs
pōt-erātis	pos-sētis	pōt-uērātis	pōt-nissētis
pōt-erant	pos-sent	pōt-uērant	pōt-nissent
3. Future-Simple.		6. Future-Perfect.	
S. pōt-ēro	(wanting.)	S. pōt-uēro	(wanting.)
pōt-eris		pōt-uēris	
pōt-erit		pōt-uērit	
P. pōt-erimūs		P. pōt-uērimūs	
pōt-eritis		pōt-uēritis	
pōt-erunt		pōt-uērunt	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—possē. Perf. and Plup.—pōtuisse. Future—wanting.
(Participle wanting: pōtens being used only as Adjective, powerful.)

EXERCISE XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror nostra potest acupingere. 2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poteras? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non

potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the soldiers were able to defend the city. 6. We cannot all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer (his) enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to leave life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

2. Völo, völuī, vellē, *to be willing, to wish.*

3. Nölo, nöluī, nollē, *to be unwilling, not to wish [non völo].*

4. Mälo, mäluī, mallē, *to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather [mägis or mägē völo].*

INDICATIVE.

1. Present.

<i>Sing.</i> Völo	Nölo	Mälo
vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
vult	nōn vult	māvult
<i>Plur.</i> völmūs	nölmūs	mālmūs
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
völunt	nölunt	mälunt

2. Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> völ-ēbam	nöl-ēbam	mäl-ēbam
völ-ēbās	nöl-ēbās	mäl-ēbās
völ-ēbāt	nöl-ēbāt	mäl-ēbāt
<i>Plur.</i> völ-ēbāmūs	nöl-ēbāmūs	mäl-ēbāmūs
völ-ēbātis	nöl-ēbātis	mäl-ēbātis
völ-ēbant	nöl-ēbant	mäl-ēbant

3. Future-Simple.

<i>Sing.</i> völ-am	nöl-am	mäl-am
völ-es	nöl-es	mäl-es
völ-ēt	nöl-ēt	mäl-ēt
<i>Plur.</i> völ-ēmūs	nöl-ēmūs	mäl-ēmūs
völ-ētis	nöl-ētis	mäl-ētis
völ-ent	nöl-ent	mäl-ent

4. Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i> völ-uī	nöl-uī	mäl-uī
völ-uistī	nöl-uistī	mäl-uistī
völ-uīt	nöl-uīt	mäl-uīt
<i>Plur.</i> völ-uīmūs	nöl-uīmūs	mäl-uīmūs
völ-uistis	nöl-uistis	mäl-uistis
völ-uērunt or -uērē	nöl-uērunt or -uērē	mäl-uērunt or -uērē

5. *Pluperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> vōl-uēram	nōl-uēram	māl-uēram
vōl-uērās	nōl-uērās	māl-uērās
vōl-uērāt	nōl-uērāt	māl-uērāt
<i>Plur.</i> vōl-uērāmūs	nōl-uērāmūs	māl-uērāmūs
vōl-uērātīs	nōl-uērātīs	māl-uērātīs
vōl-uērant	nōl-uērant	māl-uērant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> vōl-uēro	nōl-uēro	māl-uēro
vōl-uēris	nōl-uēris	māl-uēris
vōl-uērīt	nōl-uērīt	māl-uērīt
<i>Plur.</i> vōl-uērimūs	nōl-uērimūs	māl-uērimūs
vōl-uērītīs	nōl-uērītīs	māl-uērītīs
vōl-uērint	nōl-uērint	māl-uērint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> vēl-im	nōl-im	māl-im
vēl-is	nōl-is	māl-is
vēl-it	nōl-it	māl-it
<i>Plur.</i> vēl-imūs	nōl-imūs	māl-imūs
vēl-itīs	nōl-itīs	māl-itīs
vēl-int	nōl-int	māl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> vel-lem	nol-lem	mal-lem
vel-lēs	nol-lēs	mal-lēs
vel-lēt	nol-lēt	mal-lēt
<i>Plur.</i> vel-lēmūs	nol-lēmūs	mal-lēmūs
vel-lētīs	nol-lētīs	mal-lētīs
vel-lent	nol-lent	mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> vōl-uērim	nōl-uērim	māl-uērim
vōl-uēris	nōl-uēris	māl-uēris
vōl-uērīt	nōl-uērīt	māl-uērīt
<i>Plur.</i> vōl-uērimūs	nōl-uērimūs	māl-uērimūs
vōl-uērītīs	nōl-uērītīs	māl-uērītīs
vōl-uērint	nōl-uērint	māl-uērint

4. *Pluperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> vōl-nissem	nōl-nissem	māl-nissem
vōl-nissēs	nōl-nissēs	māl-nissēs
vōl-nissēt	nōl-nissēt	māl-nissēt
<i>Plur.</i> vōl-nissēmūs	nōl-nissēmūs	māl-nissēmūs
vōl-nissētīs	nōl-nissētīs	māl-nissētīs
vōl-nissent	nōl-nissent	māl-nissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	nōl-i nōl-itē	(wanting.)
------------	------------------	------------

Future.

(wanting.)	nōl-īto nōl-ito	nōl-ītōtē nōl-unto	(wanting.)
------------	--------------------	-----------------------	------------

N.B.—The Imperative of *nolo* is very often used to express a prohibition: as, *nōlī crēdēre*, *do not believe* (lit. *be unwilling to believe*).

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. and Imperf.</i>	vel-lē	nōl-lē	māl-lē
<i>Perf. and Pluperf.</i>	vōl-uissē	nōl-uissē	māl-uissē

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

vōl-ens	nōl-ens	(wanting.)
---------	---------	------------

GERUNDS.

vōlendum, -dī, -dō	nōlendum, -dī, -dō	(wanting.)
--------------------	--------------------	------------

EXERCISE XLIII.

A.—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut me comitari malis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*pres.*) fight (*inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to (ut) be willing to accompany me.

B.—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus mavult diligi quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Amici eadem velle debent.

1. I prefer to be good (rather) than to seem (so). 2. Do not * deceive; do not * lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas was unwilling to lie. 4. You wish the same (things) which I (wish). 5. We had-rather (*pres.*) be (*inf.*) useful to our country than be (*inf.*) rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather (*pres.*) be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger: he preferred to restrain it. 10. Do not* follow bad examples, my son!

* Say, be unwilling to Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

5. Fēro, tūli, ferrē, lātum, to bear, bring, carry, endure.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. <i>Present.</i>		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-o	fēr-am	S. tūl-i	tūl-ērim
fēr-s	fēr-ās	tūl-istī	tūl-ēris
fēr-t	fēr-āt	tūl-īt	tūl-ērit
P. fēr-imūs	fēr-amūs	P. tūl-imūs	tūl-ērimūs
fēr-tis	fēr-ātis	tūl-istīs	tūl-ēritis
fēr-unt	fēr-ant	tūl-ērunt or ērē	tūl-ērint
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
S. fēr-ēbam	fēr-rem	S. tūl-ēram	tūl-issem
fēr-ēbās	fēr-rēs	tūl-ērās	tūl-issēs
fēr-ēbāt	fēr-rēt	tūl-ērāt	tūl-issēt
P. fēr-ēmūs	fēr-rēmūs	P. tūl-ērāmūs	tūl-issēmūs
fēr-ēbātis	fēr-rētis	tūl-ērātis	tūl-issētis
fēr-ēbant	fēr-rent	tūl-ērant	tūl-issent
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S. fēr-am	(wanting.)	S. tūl-ēro	(wanting.)
fēr-ēs		tūl-ēris	
fēr-ēt		tūl-ērit	
P. fēr-ēmūs		P. tūl-ērimūs	
fēr-ētis		tūl-ēritis	
fēr-ent		tūl-ērint	

IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Present.</i> fēr-ens
	<i>Future.</i> lātūrus (ā, um)
<i>Future.</i>	
	SUPINES.
	lātum
	lātū
INFINITIVE.	GERUNDS.
<i>Pres. and Imp.</i> fēr-rē	<i>Acc.</i> fēr-endum
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i> tūl-issē	&c.
<i>Future.</i> lātūrus essē	G
P. R. L. I.	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. <i>Present.</i>		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-ōr fer-rīs, fer-rē fer-tūr	fēr-ār fēr-ārīs, -ārē fēr-ātūr	S. lātūs sum lātūs ēs lātūs est	lātūs sim lātūs sis lātūs sit
P. fēr-īmūr fēr-īmīnī fēr-untūr	fēr-āmūr fēr-āmīnī fēr-antūr	P. lāti sūmūs lāti estīs lāti sūt	lāti sīmūs lāti sitīs lāti sint
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
S. fēr-ēbār fēr-ēbārīs, -ārē fēr-ēbātūr	fer-rēr fer-rērīs, -ērē fer-rētūr	S. lātūs eram lātūs erās lātūs erāt	lātūs essem lātūs essēs lātūs essēt
P. fēr-ēbāmūr fēr-ēbāmīnī fēr-ēbantūr	fer-rēmūr fer-rēmīnī fer-rentūr	P. lāti ērāmūs lāti ērātīs lāti ērānt	lāti essēmūs lāti essētīs lāti essent
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S. fēr-ār fēr-ārīs, -ārē fēr-ētūr	(wanting.)	S. lātūs ēro lātūs erīs lātūs erit	(wanting.)
P. fēr-ēmūr fēr-ēmīnī fēr-entūr		P. lāti ērimūs lāti erītīs lāti ērunt	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	fer-rē fēr-īmīnī	Pres. and Imp.	fer-ri
		Perf. and Plup.	lātūs essē
		Future.	lātum iri
Future.	fer-tōr fer-tōr fēr-untōr	PARTICIPLES.	
		Perfect.	lātūs (ā, um)
		Gerundive.	fēr-endūs (ā, um)

The Compounds of fēro are conjugated in the same way, e.g. :

affēro	(ad)	attūli	allātum	afferrē	bring (to).
aufēro	(ab)	abstūli	ablātum	auferrē	carry away.
confēro	(cum)	contūli	collātum	conferrē	bring together
effēro	(ex)	extūli	elātum	efferrē	carry out.
infēro	(in)	intūli	illātum	inferrē	carry into.
offēro	(ob)	obtūli	oblātum	offerrē	present.
perfēro	(per)	pertūli	perlātum	perferrē	bear through,
praeferō	(prae)	praetūli	praelātum	praeferre	prefer. [endure
profferō	(pro)	protūli	prolātum	proferrē	extend.
refēro	{ red, re }	{ retūli rettūli }	relātum	referrē	bring back.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod miseris atque inopibus auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil potest praeferri virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager qui seritur fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most-patiently. 2. Learn thou to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently-well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (*secum*). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

6. *Ēo, Ivī or Ī, Irē, Itum, to go.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
S.	<i>Ē-o</i>	<i>i-vī or i-i</i>	<i>i-vērim or i-ērim</i>
	<i>i-s</i>	<i>i-vistī</i>	<i>&c. i-vēris &c.</i>
	<i>i-t</i>	<i>i-vīt</i>	<i>&c. i-vērit &c.</i>
P.	<i>i-mūs</i>	<i>i-vīmūs</i>	<i>&c. i-vērimūs &c.</i>
	<i>*i-tis</i>	<i>i-vistīs</i>	<i>&c. i-vēritīs &c.</i>
	<i>e-unt</i>	<i>i-vērunt</i>	<i>&c. i-vērint &c.</i>
		<i>or i-vērē</i>	
		5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
S.	<i>i-bam</i>	<i>i-vēram or i-ēram</i>	<i>i-vissem, i-issem, or i-ssem</i>
	<i>i-bās</i>	<i>i-vērās</i>	<i>&c. i-vissēs &c.</i>
	<i>i-bāt</i>	<i>i-vērāt</i>	<i>&c. i-vissēt &c.</i>
P.	<i>i-bāmūs</i>	<i>i-vērāmūs</i>	<i>&c. i-vissēmūs &c.</i>
	<i>i-bātīs</i>	<i>i-vērātīs</i>	<i>&c. i-vissētīs &c.</i>
	<i>i-bant</i>	<i>i-vērant</i>	<i>&c. i-vissent &c.</i>
		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S.	<i>i-bo</i>	<i>i-vēro or i-ēro</i>	<i>(wanting.)</i>
	<i>i-bis</i>	<i>i-vērīs</i>	<i>&c.</i>
	<i>i-bīt</i>	<i>i-vērīt</i>	<i>&c.</i>
P.	<i>i-bīmūs</i>	<i>i-vērīmūs</i>	<i>&c.</i>
	<i>i-bītīs</i>	<i>i-vērītīs</i>	<i>&c.</i>
	<i>i-bunt</i>	<i>i-vērint</i>	<i>&c.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Present.		Future.	
	<i>i</i>		<i>i-to</i>
	<i>i-tē</i>		<i>i-to</i>
			<i>i-tētē</i>
			<i>ē-unto</i>

INFINITIVE.			PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	<i>i-rē</i>	[<i>iissē</i>]	<i>Present.</i>	<i>i-ens (Gen. ē-untis)</i>
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	<i>i-vissē, iissē, or</i>		<i>Future.</i>	<i>i-tūrus (ā, um)</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>i-tūrus essē</i>			
GERUND.			SUPINE.	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ē-undum, &c.</i>		<i>i-tum</i>	

The Compounds of *ēō*, with *quēō*, *I am able*, and *nēquēō*, *I am unable*, are conjugated in the same way. The following are the principal:—

<i>āb-ēō,</i>	<i>-īi (rarely -īvi), -ītum,</i>	<i>to go away.</i>
<i>ād-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to go to.</i>
<i>cō-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to join together.</i>
<i>ex-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to go out.</i>
<i>in-ēō, intr-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to go into, enter; come on (in-).</i>
<i>intēr-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>ōb-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to meet; esp. to meet death; to die.</i>
<i>pēr-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>prae-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to go before.</i>
<i>praeter-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to pass by.</i>
<i>rēd-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to return.</i>
<i>stīb-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to go up to.</i>
<i>trans-ēō,</i>	" "	<i>to cross over, pass through.</i>
<i>vēn-ēō (= vēnum</i>		
<i>eo),</i>	" "	<i>to go for sale, be sold.</i>

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Cum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. Hac pugna atrocissimā multī et fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam ignave transamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) pass through (transēō) life indolently. 2. Let us go-out (*pres. subj.*) from the camp; let us return (*pres. subj.*) into the city. 3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order that his soldiers might cross on foot (pedibus). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that sanguinary battle. 6. We ought all to be able to meet (our) last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*abl.*) and cold (*abl.*). 8. Let us go-to (*pres. subj.*) the temples of the gods. 9. I pass-by very many (things) in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross-over.

7. *Fio, factus sum, fieri, to become or be made, to happen, to be done.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				3. <i>Future.</i>			
S. <i>Fi-o</i>		<i>fi-am</i>		S. <i>fi-am</i>		(wanting.)	
<i>fi-s</i>		<i>fi-as</i>		<i>fi-es</i>			
<i>fi-t or fi-t</i>		<i>fi-āt</i>		<i>fi-ēt</i>			
P. [<i>fi-mūs</i>]		<i>fi-āmūs</i>		P. <i>fi-ēmūs</i>			
[<i>fi-tīs</i>]		<i>fi-ātīs</i>		<i>fi-ētīs</i>			
<i>fi-unt</i>		<i>fi-ant</i>		<i>fi-ent</i>			
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S. <i>fi-ēbam</i>		<i>fi-ērem</i>		<i>factūs sum, &c. factūs sim, &c.</i>			
<i>fi-ēbās</i>		<i>fi-ērēs</i>		5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>			
<i>fi-ēbāt</i>		<i>fi-ērēt</i>		<i>factūs ēram, &c. factūs essem, &c.</i>			
P. <i>fi-ēbāmūs</i>		<i>fi-ērēmūs</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
<i>fi-ēbātīs</i>		<i>fi-ērētīs</i>		<i>factūs ēro, &c. (wanting.)</i>			
<i>fi-ēbant</i>		<i>fi-ērent</i>					

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	fi, fi-tē	Pres. and Imp.	fi-ērī
PARTICIPLES.		Perf. and Plup.	factūs essē
Perfect.	factūs (ā, um)	Future.	factum irī
Gerundive.	faciendūs (ā, um)		

8. *Ēdo, ēdī, ēsum, ēdērē or essē, to eat.*

This Verb has the following contracted forms :

Pres. Indic.		Imperf. Subj.	
2 Sing.	ēdis or ēs	1 Sing.	ēdērem or essem
3 "	ēdit or est	2 "	ēdērēs or essēs, &c.
2 Plur.	ēdītīs or estīs.		

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. 2 Sing.	ēdē or ēs	Plur. ēdītē or estē
Fut. 2 "	ēdīto or esto	Plur. ēdītōtē or estōtē
3 "	ēdīto or esto	
Pres. Inf.	ēdērē or essē	

Also there are two forms of the Pres. Subj., ēdam, ēdās, &c., and ēdim, ēdis, &c.

EXERCISE XLVI.

N.B.—*Fio*, like *sum*, takes the same case after it as before it.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus.
2. Saepe ex inimico amicus fieri potest.
3. Senectute prudentior fis.
4. Nemo ignaviā immortalis factus est.
5. Deus dixit: fiat mundus, et mundus factus est.
6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules.
7. Hoc Themistoclis consilio factum est.
8. Onus quod bene fertur leve fit.
9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest.
10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, is fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*superl.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest griefs become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things, citizens: (things) which have been done cannot become undone. 5. In time our soldiers will become more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. The Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not (*noli*) assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (= of) his fault.

9. *Semi-Dependent Verbs.*

Some Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect tenses after the manner of Passives, and are called Semi-Deponents. They are the following:—

audeo, ausus sum, audēre	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
fido, fisis sum, fidēre (usu. with <i>Dat.</i>)	<i>to trust.</i>
(with its compounds <i>confido, I trust;</i> <i>diffido, I distrust.</i>)	
gaudeo, gāvisus sum, gaudēre	<i>to rejoice.</i>
sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

Also *cēno* (cae-), *to sup or dine*, has *Perf. Part. cēnātus*, *having supped*, and *jūro, to swear, jūrātus, having sworn*.

NOTE.—The Future Infinitive of these Verbs is formed as in the Active voice: *ausūrus essē, &c.*

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam cenati, in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisus sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati, debetis iusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisus sunt Romani quod Poenos navali proelio vicerant. 9. Caesar confisus est fortunae suae. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium reppererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted to himself. 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*fut.-perf.*), we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to (*in* with *acc.*) the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end (*finis*). 10. The whole city rejoiced that (quod) the conspiracy had been discovered.

XXXII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES.

dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē	<i>it is seemly, becomes.</i>
dēdēcēt, dēdēcūt, dēdēcērē	<i>it is unseemly, unbecomes.</i>
libēt, libuit & libitum est, libērē	<i>it pleases.</i> [coming.]
licet, licuit & licitum est, licērē	<i>it is lawful, it is allowed.</i>
liquet, liquerē	<i>it is clear.</i>
miserēt or miserētūr, miseritum est, miserērē	<i>it excites pity.</i>
oportet, oportuit, oportērē	<i>it behoves; (one) ought.</i>
pigēt, piguit & pigitum est, pigērē	<i>it vexes.</i>
placet, placuit or placitum est, placērē	<i>it pleases.</i>
paenitet (poe-), paenituit, paenitērē	<i>it causes sorrow, repents.</i>
pudet, puduit or puditum est, pudērē	<i>it shames.</i>
taedet, taeduit or pertaesum est, taedērē	<i>it disgusts, wearies.</i>

The Persons are expressed in the following way :—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	pudet mē	<i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
	pudet tē	<i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
	pudet eum	<i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
	pudet nōs	<i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
	pudet vōs	<i>it shames you, or ye are ashamed.</i>
	pudet eōs	<i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	pudēbāt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,	<i>it was shaming me, thee, him, us, &c., or I, thou, he, we, &c., were being ashamed.</i>
	pudēbāt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,	<i>it will shame me, thee, him, us, &c., or I, thou, he, we, &c., shall be ashamed.</i>
<i>Fut.-Simp.</i>	pudēbīt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,	<i>it will shame me, thee, him, us, &c., or I, thou, he, we, &c., shall be ashamed.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	puduit mē, tē, eum, &c., I, thou, he, &c.,	<i>was ashamed.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	puduerāt mē, tē, eum, &c., I, thou, he, &c.,	<i>had been ashamed.</i>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	puduerīt mē, tē, eum, &c., I, thou, he, &c.,	<i>will have been ashamed.</i>

Similarly for the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperative is not found, the Pres. of the Subjunctive being used instead; as, pudeat te, *let it shame thee, or be ashamed!*

All these Verbs take the Subject in the Accusative Case, except libet, licet, liquet, and placet, which govern the Dative: as, mihi libet, *it pleases me; mihi licet, it is lawful for me, I am at liberty, &c.*

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

grandināt, -āvit, -arē	<i>it hails.</i>
ningit, ninxit, ningērē	<i>it snows.</i>
plūit, plūit, plūere	<i>it rains.</i>
tōnāt, tōnuīt, tōnārē	<i>it thunders.</i>
lūescit, (illuxit,) lūescērē	<i>it becomes light.</i>
vespēscit, vespērāvīt, vespērascērē	<i>evening comes on.</i>

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet paenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Eos homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*acc.*) repents not of his crime (*scelus*). 2. What does it behove us to do? 3. It behoved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to deceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out-from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day, it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

PART II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given :—

Page			Page			Page		
RULE 1	..	4	RULE 7	..	13	RULE 13	..	48
" 2	..	4	" 8	..	21	" 14	..	49
" 3	..	4	" 9	..	32	" 15	..	63
" 4	..	4	" 10	..	36	" 16	..	69
" 5	..	6	" 11	..	46	" 17	..	72
" 6	..	10	" 12	..	48			

XXXIII.—THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE.

RULE 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative : as, *vilius argentum est aurō, silver is more common than gold.*

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* 2. *Deus major et potentior est cunctis.* 3. *Nihil est majus amicitia, nihil jucundius.* 4. *Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit.* 5. *Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior esse videtur scientia.* 6. *Elephanto nulla beluarum prudentior est.* 7. *Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit.* 8. *Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute.* 9. *Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius.* 10. *Sol major et splendidior est luna.*

1. What is brighter than the sun? What more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter (*pl. neut.*) than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all-other (*ceteri*) beasts. 6. The knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens. 8. What is commoner than water? yet (*autem*) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretence of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

XXXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE 19.—When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal sentence, the English Noun and Verb in the subordinate clause are often expressed in Latin by a Noun and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE : as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vīderunt*, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*], *the Romans saw the enemy*.

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs. But the English Perfect Participle Active may often be expressed by means of the Latin Perfect Participle Passive, in the Ablative Absolute : as, *Caesār, expōsitō exercitū, ād hostēs contendit*, *Caesar, having landed the army* [lit. *the army having been landed*], *hastens against the enemy*.

EXERCISE L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperata pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpius superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vere, bellum suscepit. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendet. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisis-tratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—In the two following Exercises, the words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in italics.

1. *When the sun rises (the sun rising)*, all (things) become brighter. 2. *When the moon had risen*, the night was made brighter. 3. *When Cato was slain*, the commonwealth perished. 4. *When these things were done*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, *after he had overcome the Gauls*, waged war with Pompeius. 6. *Having heard these things*, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. *Whilst Servius Tullius was king (Serv. Tull. being-king)*, the city was fortified with a wall of stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy. 9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river (the river being joined by a bridge)*, he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked, his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbela victo, Alexander Asiā potitus est. 3. His litteris perlectis, consul comprehendi eos jubet. 4. Conjuratio detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero litteras recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His

rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catone mortuo, nulla jam erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their (eorum) plan*, Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry*, ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard (of) this disaster*, sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended (his) empire* as far as the Indus, Alexander returned towards the west. * 7. *When this war is finished*, we shall be able to enjoy peace. 8. *(With) you (for) leader,** we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained* (adeptus†), our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, he led his army into winter quarters.

* The participle *being* is implied in the Noun *dux*.

† *Adeptus*, with a few other Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense: see p. 135.

XXXV.—THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION.

RULE 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative case: as, *sex et viginti annos regnavit, he reigned twenty-six years; aggerem latum pedēs trecentos, altum pedēs quinquaginta exstruxerunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time*.

EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit.
2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt.
3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat.
4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est.
5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita.
6. Dionysius annos quinque et viginti natus dominatum occupavit.
7. Turre pedes ducentos alta est.
8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum.
9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit.
10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter milia passuum viginti.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty-four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high, (and) eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were-distant about four thousand paces (*gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty-one years. 7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behoves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live a hundred (use distrib. numeral, p. 127) years.

XXXVI.—CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

RULE 21.—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative case without prepositions: as, *Consul Rōmam prōfectūs est, the Consul set out for Rome.*

In like manner are used, *dōmum* (to one's) home; *rūs*, to the country.

In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative case without prepositions: as, *Consul Rōmā Athēnās prōfectūs est, the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

In like manner are used, *dōmō*, from home; *rūrē*, from the country.

EXERCISE LII.

1. *Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit.* 2. *Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium.* 3. *Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit.* 4. *Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit.* 5. *Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent.* 6. *Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit.* 7. *Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, domum revertit.* 8. *Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Spartā, se opposuit hostibus.* 9. *Tiberius domo cessit, et se rus contulit.* 10. *Alexander, Dario ad Arbela victo, Babylonem profectus est.*

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We (see Ex. xxii) will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*ablative absolute*), returned immediately home. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I shall betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out to the country. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria

(acc.). 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (abl. absol.), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

RULE 22.—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive if of the First or Second Declension and Singular; otherwise in the Ablative: as,

Rōmae, at Rome.

Cōrīnthī, at Corinth.

Athēnis, at Athens.

Carthāginē, at Carthage.

See p. 114, concerning the Locative Case.

In like manner are used *hūmī*, on the ground; *dōmī*, at home, with *dōmī meae*, tuae, etc., at my house, at your house, &c.; *rūrī* or *rūrē*, in the country; *terrae*, on the ground; *militiae*, in warfare; *belli*, in war

EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbī. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis (such) Romae Fabricius, qualis (as) Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*imperf.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae* a sanguinary battle was fought (*committo*) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather (*pres.*) dwell at home than in the country. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon both (et) boys and girls were most carefully trained-up (*imperf.*).

* The site of a battle is usually indicated by *ad* and *acc.*

XXXVII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE.

RULE 23.—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

- I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: as, *Livius narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē*, *Livy relates that Rome was founded by Romulus*; *sentimūs calērē ignem, nivem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, vē*

perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.

- II. After such expressions as *certum est, it is certain*; *justum est, it is just*; *verisimile est, it is probable*; *constat, it is agreed*: as, *constat Rōmam ā Gallīs captam esse, it is agreed that Rome was taken by the Gauls.*

EXERCISE LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon rempublicam praemiis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertibat, totum exercitum propter ducum imprudentiam perituum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides duros (esse). 9. Videmus aves autumnō in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*infin. pres.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*imperf.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*ad*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very far distant (*absur.*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae traditum est, Latonam confugisse Delon atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed amongst all writers that Romulus was (*perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you make-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*fut.-perf.*) in the city.

XXXVIII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS.

RULE 24.—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles : as, *Quid agis ? What are you doing ? Pūtas-nē ? Do you think ? Non-nē pūtas ? Do you not think ?*

The principal Interrogative particles are -nē, num, utrum, ān. Of these -nē is always written as an enclitic like the Conjunction -quē. Utrum and ān are used only when two alternatives are spoken of ; and ān always with the second alternative.

-nē does not need to be expressed by any English word, as *visnē ? Do you wish ? nonnē pūtas ? Do you not think ?*

Utrum . . . ān may be translated by *whether . . . or*, as *utrum sol ān lūnā mājor est ? Whether is the sun or the moon the greater ?*

Num has a negative force, as *num itā pūtas = You don't think so, do you ?* It is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for.

EXERCISE LV.

A.—1. Estne voluptas summum bonum ? 2. Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus ? 3. Nonne sol longe major est luna ? 4. Num tu ita audes dicere ? 5. Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum ? 6. Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit ? 7. Suntne haec vera bona ? 8. Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis ? 9. Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere ? 10. Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentia ?

1. Are these things true ? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil ? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher ? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you ? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom ? (No.) 6. Are you wiser than (your) father ? (No.) 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful ? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold ? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that ? 10. Is not the world governed by the Divine wisdom ?

B.—1. Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est ? 2. Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primum fuisse virum ? 3. Num audes dicere haec benevolo animo facta esse ? 4. Utrum Romae an ruri hibernis mensibus manere mavis ? 5. Utrum est turpitudine omnium malorum maximum an non ? 6. Utrum haec benevolo an malevolo animo fecisti ? 7. Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior

et clarior vir esse videtur? 8. Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis? 9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse? tune ita credis? 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are-you-able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over his life? Does it not behove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

XXXIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

RULE 25.—An Indirect Question is one which is dependent upon a previous verb or phrase: as, scio quid factum sit, *I know what has been done*; mirum est quae fuerit causa, *It is strange what the reason may have been*; videbo num redierit, *I will see whether he has returned*. The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

RULE 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Perfect Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense Subjunctive.

Present, Perfect, and Future Time.

PRESENT.	Scio quid agās	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
	scio quid egēris	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
	scio quid actūrus sis	<i>I know what you are going to do.</i>
PERFECT.	cognōvi quid agās	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
	cognōvi quid egēris	<i>I have learnt what you have done</i>
	cognōvi quid actūrus sis	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>

FUTURE.	audiam quid agās	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
	audiam quid egēris	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
	audiam quid actūrus sis	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

Past Time.

PAC. PERFECT. IMPERF.	sciēbam quid agērēs	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
	sciēbam quid egissēs	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
	sciēbam quid actūrus essēs	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PAC. PERFECT. PERFECT.	cognōvī quid agērēs	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
	cognōvī quid egissēs	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
	cognōvī quid actūrus essēs	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PAC. PERFECT. PERFECT.	cognōvēram quid agērēs	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	cognōvēram quid egissēs	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	cognōvēram quid actūrus essēs	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally.

N.B.—In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by *num*, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by *utrum* or *-ne*.

EXERCISE LVI.

N.B.—In the following Latin sentences the Subjunctive must in English be rendered by the Indicative; and in the English sentences, the dependent verb must in Latin be expressed by the Subjunctive.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (ex) the oracle what *it behoved* him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy *is*. 4. I do-not-know what *it behoves* me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you *are* going-to-do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he *was* going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts *have been thrown* (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two *has conquered*. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*imperf.*) what *was* just, what unjust. 10. It is a great-thing to know what things *are* just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenerint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint

veteribus anteponendi. 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent. 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse. 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepe numero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalisme esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether *he knows* these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things *are* true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *-ne*) *he is* a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he *deserve* praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead *felt* cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you *are sleeping* or waking. 7. I doubt whether he *will return* (*subj.-pres.*) immediately. 8. He asked whether the city *was* very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you *were* not (*nonne*) on that night in-the-house-of (*apud*) M. Laeca? 10. Do you doubt whether *it behoves* a good citizen to side-with his country in time of danger?

XL.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 27.—Besides *ūt*, *nē*, and *quīn* (see Ex. xxv, &c.), the Conjunctions *quō*, *that*, and *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. *ūt* = *that*, *in order that*, *granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence*: as, *ēo ūt spectem lūdōs*, *I am going in order that I may look at the games*; *accidit ūt nōn dōmī essem*, *it happened that I was not at home*.

2. *nē* = *that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence: as, *Haec faciō nē mē inimicum tibi pūtēs*, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy*; but, *sēquitur ūt haec nōn vērā sint*, *it follows that these things are not true*.

Obs. After verbs of *fearing*, *ūt* has the meaning of *that not*, and *nē* of *that*: as, *tīmēo ūt dux milītēs ē castris ēducāt*, *I fear that the general will not lead the soldiers out of the camp*: *tīmēo nē dux milītēs ē castris ēducāt*, *I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp*.

3. *quīn*, *that not*, but *that*, is used only after negative or virtually negative clauses: as, *dīēs nullūs est, quīn littērās scribam*, *there is no day that I do not write a letter*; *nōn dūbīto quīn vērūm dixērīs*, *I do not doubt but that you have spoken the truth*. (See Ex. xxv, C, &c.)

4. *quō* is used for *ut* *ēō*, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that*: *haec lex datā est, quō mālēfici dēterērentūr, this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred*; *portās oppidī obstruxit, quō faciiliūs impētum hostium rētardārēt, he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

quō is used in preference to *ut* when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

5. *quōmīnūs, that not*, is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* with a verbal substantive: *as, aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littēras tractēmus, age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

EXERCISE LVII.

A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent cum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive-hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may be serviceable to (our) native-country. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they might obtain-possession-of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fit*) that no one of (them) all returned * to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituo*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed * to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

* Remember that *ut* is followed by the Subjunctive Mood whether it denotes a purpose (= *in order that*) or only a consequence, as here.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine facere, quo facilius copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugnemus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin

sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp, that (*quo*) the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many (and) wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting that I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp but (*quin*) they were overwhelmed with missiles.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te litteras haberemus. 4. Bibulum deteruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstat quominus nobis adesces? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fiant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

N.B.—In the following Exercise, express *from* by *quominus*.

1. It was owing to you that we did not (*quominus*) obtain possession of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from* coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen *from* siding with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato *from* appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me *from* siding with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us *from* worshipping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children *from* obeying their parents. 8. I fear that we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear that we may not be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I cannot but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

XLI.—USE OF THE SUPINES.

RULE 28.—The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: as, Lacedaemoniū Agēsilaum bellatum in Asiam miserunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives : as, *fácilis*, *easy*, *diffícilis*, *difficult*, *dulcís*, *sweet*, &c., and with *fás est*, *it is lawful*, *néfás est*, *it is unlawful*, *ópūs est*, *it is necessary* : as, *rēs diffícilis factū est*, *the thing is difficult to be done* ; *néfás est dictū*, *it is (or it would be) impious to say (such a thing)*.

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. *Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum.* 2. *Veientes, pacem petitem, oratores Romam mittunt.* 3. *Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium.* 4. *Milites pabulatum et aquatum longius progressi erant.* 5. *Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulat.* 6. *Athenienses oratores Delphos miserunt, consultum quidnam facerent de rebus suis.* 7. *Pira dulcia sunt gustatu.* 8. *Difficile dictu est.* 9. *Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies.* 10. *Nefas est dictu miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.*

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games.
2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war.
3. Chaerephon went-to (*adeo*) Delphi to ask who was (*subj.*) the wisest of men.
4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water.
5. These things are very difficult to be done.
6. Very many things are easier to be said than done.
7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste.
8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines.
9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable.
10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

XLII.—USE OF THE GERUND.

RULE 29.—The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing* ; as *writing*, *walking*.

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative : as,

<i>Nom.</i> <i>légere pulchrā carminā suāve est</i>	<i>reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>nātūs ad agendum</i>	<i>born for action (lit. for doing).</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>ars puērōs educandī diffícilis est</i>	<i>the art of educating boys is difficult.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>scribendō opēram dāt</i>	<i>he devotes his care to writing.</i>
<i>Abt.</i> <i>littērās tractandō mens acutitur</i>	<i>the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.</i>

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, *disco nātare, I learn swimming.*

EXERCISE LIX.

1. Saepissime pernicioſa eſt plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis ſtudio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratiā comparantur. 4. Beate vivendi ſtudioſi ſumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud utilis eſt bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum ſe inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens diſcendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundiſſimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid poteſt eſſe jucundius quam inter ambulandum libere de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many perſons burn with the deſire of having more (*n. pl.*). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horſes and (que) dogs for-the-ſake-of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preſerve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The ſoul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting. 9. Converſing (*infin.*) about (de) theſe things is moſt delightful. 10. It is be-coming in a youth (*acc.*) to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*gen.* of *gerund*).

XLIII.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

RULE 30.—The Gerundive is a Paſſive Verbal Adjective: as, ſcribendus, a, um, *to be written, neceſſary or fit to be written.*

The Gerundive may be conjugated with all the tenses of ſum: as, *amandūſ ſum, I am to be loved, or I ought to be loved; amandūſ eram, I was to be loved, or I ought to have been loved, &c.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accuſative Caſe, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Caſe of its Noun: as, *ſcribenda eſt mihi epiſtōlā, a letter muſt be or ought to be written by me, or I muſt or ought to write a letter.*

The perſon by whom the thing is *to be done* is uſually put in the Dative (ſee preceding example).

EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter ſunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapientia non ſolum paranda eſt nobis, ſed etiam fruenda. 3. Prae omnibus rebus adhibenda eſt prudentia. 4. Agenda eſt omnibus aetas

non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Prae ceteris observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*dat.*) ought so (*ita*) to train-up (his) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (*pro*) their-country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*dat.*). 8. Before (*prae*) all other things (*res*) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*dat.*) should not despise death.

RULE 31.—But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Neuter Singular, with the Verb *est*. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject, when expressed, usually in the Dative Case: as, *obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis (dative), we must obey the lessons of virtue: cuique (dative) utendum est iudicio suo (ablative), each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B.—The Ablative with *ab*, *a*, is also used after the Gerundive, and is preferred when an ambiguity would arise from the use of the Dative: as, *his (dative) est a vobis consulendum, you must consult the interests of these men.* Without the preposition it would be impossible to say which was the Object of the Verb, *his* or *vobis*.

EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est istuc quo pervenisti. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non dubium est quin a bono-cive legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Profiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (*nonne*) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please (*ut* with *subj.*) their parents. 4. We must strive with (*our*) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in every thing. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is

greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (*dat.*) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

RULE 32.—The Gerundive participle is very often used in Latin where in English a verbal noun in *-ing* is followed by a Direct Object: as, *fond of waging WAR, a plan of (for) burning THE CITY*. This substantive then becomes immediately dependent upon the foregoing part of the sentence, and the verbal noun is expressed by a Gerundive participle agreeing with it in gender, number, and case.

Thus, *fond of waging war* becomes *fond of war to-be-waged*, *cūpidus belli gērendi*; *a plan of (for) burning the city* becomes *a plan of (for) the city to-be-burned*, *consilium urbis incendendae*. This construction cannot be used when the Verb governs the Dative Case.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causā. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratiā initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribentis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum. 10. Oculis probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (*pl.*) were trained up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (instruo) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (*res*). 4. He burned (*ardeo*) with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (*maxime*) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*perf.*) on-the-subject-of (*de*) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (*cipio*) from (*ex*) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (*oportet*) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

A SHORT SYNTAX.

RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES ALREADY GIVEN.

First Concord.

§ 1. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in Number and Person : as, *püellä currît, the girl runs ; püellae currunt, the girls run.*

Second Concord.

§ 2. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case : as, *servûs tímîdûs, a timid slave ; püellä tímîdâ, a timid girl ; parvum oppîdum, a small town.*

Third Concord.

§ 3. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case : as, *Fêlix est rex quem omnês cívês laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Apposition.

§ 4. When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition* : as, *Rômûlûs, rex Rômânôrum, Romulus, king of the Romans.*

Nominative Case.

§ 5. The Nominative case denotes the Subject.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by *sum, fio, vidêor, vöcör*, and similar Verbs, they are put in the same case : as, *Brîtanniâ est insulâ, Britain is an island.*

Accusative Case.

§ 6. The Accusative case denotes the Object.—Transitive Verbs govern the Accusative : as, *âquîlâ âlâs hâbêt, the eagle has wings.*

§ 7. The answers to the questions, *How long ? How far ? How high ? How deep ? How broad ? How old ?* are put in the Accusative : as, *sex ôt vigintî annôs regnâvit, he reigned twenty-six years ; aggêrem lâtum pêdês trêcentôs, altum pêdês quinquâgintâ extruxêrunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*—The Accusative, answering the question *How long ?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

Genitive Case.

§ 8. The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive when one is dependent upon the other : as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurpae, Britain is an island of Europe.*

§ 9. Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are commonly followed by the Genitive : as, *miserōrum hominum miserēbimur, we shall pity the wretched men.*

Dative Case.

§ 10. The Dative indicates the person to whom something is given : as, *magister columbam puērō dāt, the master gives a dove to the boy.*

Ablative Case.

§ 11. The Ablative indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done : as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occidit, the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place : as, *noctēs hiēmē longae sunt, the nights are long in winter.*

§ 12. But when the Ablative indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in* : as, *hostēs in planitiē erant, the enemies were in the plain.*

§ 13. *Ūtōr, frūōr, vescōr, fungōr*, govern the Ablative : as, *sāpientēr ūtīmīni tempōrē, use time wisely.*

§ 14. When a subordinate clause has a different subject from that of the principal clause, the English Noun and Verb in the subordinate clause are in Latin often expressed by a Noun and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE : as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt, when the sun had risen [lit. the sun having risen], the Romans saw the enemy.* (See also p. 90.)

Construction of the Names of Towns.

§ 15. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without prepositions : as, *Consul Rōmam prōfectus est, the Consul set out for Rome.*

§ 16. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without prepositions : as, *Consul Rōmā Āthēnās prōfectus est, the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

§ 17. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive if of the First or Second Declension and Singular; otherwise in the Ablative: as, *Rōmae, at Rome; Cōrinthī, at Corinth; Āthēnis, at Athens; Carthāginē, at Carthage.*

See p. 114 concerning the Locative Case.

§ 18. In like manner are used *hūmī, on the ground; dōmī, at home; rūri* or *rūrē, in the country; terrae, on the ground; militiæ, in warfare; bellī, in war.*

Comparative Degree.

§ 19. The Ablative is also used after the Comparative instead of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative: as, *vilius argentum est aurō, silver is more common than gold.*

Indicative Mood.

§ 20. The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedifico dōmum, I am building a house; habitābo in ēā, I shall dwell in it.*

Subjunctive Mood.

§ 21. The Indicative Mood states a thing positively; the Subjunctive speaks of it conditionally.

Sequence of Tenses.—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood depends upon that of the principal Verb. A Present Tense Indicative must not be followed by an Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, nor a Past Tense Indicative by a Present Subjunctive.

§ 22. The Conjunctions *ūt, that, in order that, and nē, that not,* are construed with the Subjunctive: as, *ēo ūt spectem lūdōs, I am going in order that I may look at the games; haec faciō nē mē inimicum tibi pūtēs, these things I do that you may not think me your enemy.*

§ 23. The Conjunction *quīn, that not, but that,* is used with the Subjunctive after negative or virtually negative clauses: as, *diēs nullus est, quīn littērās scribam, there is no day that I do not write a letter; nōn dūbito quīn verum dixēris, I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth.*

§ 24. The Conjunction *quō* is used for *ūt ēō* with the Subjunctive, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that*: as, *haec lex dātā est, quō mālēfici dēterrērentūr, this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred.*

§ 25. The Conjunction *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting*, &c., and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive : as, *aetās nōs nōn impēdit quōmīnūs littērās tractēmūs*, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature*.

§ 26. The Subjunctive is used in an Indirect Question ; that is, a question dependent upon some previous verb or clause : as, *Rōgābo quīd factum sit*, *I will ask what has been done* ; *Mirum est quae fūerit causā*, *It is strange what the reason may have been* ; *Vidēbo num redierit*, *I will see whether he has returned*.

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on pp. 96, 97.

The Infinitive.

§ 27. The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive : as, *Caesār hostēs sup̄erārē pōtest*, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy*.

§ 28. The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used :

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing* : as, *Livius narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē*, *Livy relates that Rome was founded by Romulus* ; *sentimūs calērē ignem, nivem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl*, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet*.

II. After such expressions as *nōtum est*, *it is known* ; *justum est*, *it is just* ; *verisimile est*, *it is probable* ; *constāt*, *it is agreed*, *it is certain*, &c. : as, *constāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē*, *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus*.

The Supines.

§ 29. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion : as, *Lacedaemoniī Agēsilaum bellātum in Asiam miserunt*, *the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war*.

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives : as, *fācilis*, *easy*, *difficilis*, *difficult*, *dulcis*, *sweet*, &c., and with *fās est*, *it is lawful*, *nēfās est*, *it is unlawful*, *ōpūs est*, *it is necessary* : as, *rēs difficilis factū est*, *the thing is difficult to be done*.

The Gerund.

§ 30. The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing*, *walking*.

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative Case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative: as,

<i>Nom.</i> lēgēre pulchrā carminā suāve est	<i>reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> nātūs ad āgendum	<i>born for action (lit. for doing).</i>
<i>Gen.</i> ars puērōs educandī difficilis est	<i>the art of educating boys is difficult.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> scribendō opēram dāt	<i>he devotes his care to writing.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> littērās tractandō mens acūtūr	<i>the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.</i>

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, *disco natāre, I learn swimming.*

The Gerundive.

§ 31. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, *scribendūs, ā, um, to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun: as, *scribendā est mihi epistolā, a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is to be done is usually put in the Dative (see preceding example).

§ 32. But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Neuter Singular with the Verb *est*. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject, when expressed, usually in the Dative Case: as, *obtemperandum est virtūtis praeceptis (dative), we must obey the lessons of virtue; cuique (dative) utendum est iudicio suo (ablative), each one must use his own judgment.*

But the Ablative with *ab, ā*, is also used after the Gerundive, and is preferred when ambiguity would arise from the use of the Dative.

§ 33. The Gerundive participle is very often used in Latin where in English a verbal noun in *-ing* is followed by a Direct Object: as, *fond of waging WAR, a plan of (for) burning THE CITY*. This substantive then becomes immediately dependent upon the foregoing part of the sentence, and the verbal noun is expressed by a Gerundive participle agreeing with it in gender, number, and case. See p. 104.

PART III.

ADDITIONS TO THE GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

I. ALPHABET.

[See pages 1 and 2.]

1. The LATIN LANGUAGE was the language of the inhabitants of Latium, of which Rome was the chief city.
2. The LATIN ALPHABET consists of the same number of letters as the English without w.

NOTE 1. The distinction of the forms *i, j* and *v, u*, is of modern origin. *i* originally represented both the vowel *i* and the semi-vowel *j* (probably pronounced *y*), and *v* both the vowel *u* and the semi-vowel *v*.

2. The letters *y* and *z* occur only in words borrowed from the Greek.
3. The letters consist of (1) Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and (2) Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.
4. The VOWELS are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.
5. The CONSONANTS may be classified according to the organ used in articulating them, and may be divided into

Mutes (closed sounds), capable only of a momentary sound, and *Spirants* (open sounds), having a more continuous sound. The Mutes and Spirants are also divided into *HARD* (*tenuēs*) and *SOFT* (*mediae*).

CLASSIFIED TABLE OF CONSONANTS.

	Mutes.		Spirants.		Nasals.
	Hard (<i>tenuēs</i>).	Soft (<i>mediae</i>).	Hard (<i>tenuēs</i>).	Soft (<i>mediae</i>).	
GUTTURALS (throat sounds) }	c (k), q	g	h		ng
DENTALS (teeth sounds) }	t	d	s	[z]	n
LABIALS (lip sounds) }	p	b	f	v	m

LINGUALS
(tongue sounds) } l, r.

- NOTE 1. *K* was used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: as, *Kālendae*, *the Kalends*.
- 2. *Q* is used only in the combination of *qu* followed by a vowel: as, *sēquor*, *I follow*; *quis*, *who*?

Certain Consonants are further classified as *Liquids* and *Sibilants*.

The *Liquids* are l, m, n, r.

The *Sibilants* are s, x, z.

X is compounded of *cs* or *gs*: as, *dux*=*ducs*, *leader*; *rex*=*regs*, *king*.

The letters *j* and *v* are also called *Semi-vowels*; the sounds of *i* and *y* before a vowel becoming consonantal.

On the pronunciation of the letters, see p. 2.

6. QUANTITY.—A Vowel is either *short* or *long*, according as it is to be pronounced lightly and rapidly, or slowly, so as to allow the voice to dwell upon it.

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘): as, *pāter*, *a father*. A

vowel followed by another vowel or the letter *h* is usually short : as, pŭer, *a boy* ; vĕho, *I carry*.

A *long vowel* is marked by (¯), and may be either long by nature : as, māter, *a mother* ; or long by position : as, māgnus, *great* ; dŭx, *a leader*. A vowel is long by position when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

A *doubtful vowel* is one that is sometimes short, sometimes long ; and is often marked (≡). A vowel naturally short is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid (especially *l* or *r*) : as, dŭplex or dŭplex, *twofold* ; tenēbrae or tenēbrac, *darkness*. But a vowel naturally long remains so, although followed by a mute and a liquid : as, āter, ātra, ātrum, *black*.

7. ACCENT.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable : as, mŭsa, *a muse* ; dŏlus, *deceit*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the penultimate, i.e. the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long : as, Rŏmānus, *a Roman* ; or on the antepenultimate, i.e. the last syllable but two, if the penultimate is short : as, dŏminus, *a lord*.

NOTE.—Neither Accents nor Quantities were written by the Romans themselves.

II. PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION.

[See page 1.]

There are eight parts of speech :

1. The **Noun** (or **SUBSTANTIVE**) is the name of a person or thing : as, Caesār, *Caesar* ; vīr, *a man* ; dŏmŭs, *a house* ; virtŭs, *valour*.

Obs. Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns* : all other Nouns are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives*.

2. The **Adjective** is joined to a Noun to express its quality or nature : as, bŏnus vir, *a good man*.

3. The **Pronoun** is used instead of a Noun : as, ěgŏ, *I* ; tŭ, *thou*.

4. The **Verb** makes an assertion about something : as, ěquus currit, *the horse runs* ; vir sĕdet, *the man sits*.

5. The **Adverb** is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning : as, cĕlĕrĭtĕr currit,

he runs quickly; *măgis piūs, more dutiful*; *sătis diū, long enough*.

6. The Preposition is placed before Nouns to mark their relation to other words: *as, in, in*; *hăbito in urbē, I dwell in the city*.

7. The Conjunction unites words and sentences: *as, et, and*; *ūt, in order that*: *vir et femină, the man and the woman*; *ēdimūs ūt vivămūs, we eat in order that we may live*.

8. The Interjection is a word of exclamation: *as, heu, alas*

NOTE.—There is no article in the Latin language: thus *dōmūs* may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house*.

Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension*: the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation*.

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

The Stem of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away: thus, in *trab-s, a plank*, *trăb-is, of a plank*, *trăb-i, to a plank*, the Stem is *trăb*: and in *lęg-o, I read*, *lęg-is, thou readest*, the Stem is *lęg*. In *ămo, I love* (stem *ama-*), there is a contraction; *ămo = âma-o*: Stud. Lat. Gr. § 121.

III. DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

[See page 3.]

1. Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

2. There are two Numbers: *Singular*, which designates *one*, and *Plural*, which designates more than *one*.

3. There are three Genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*

4. There are six CASES in Latin :—

The **Nominative** answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence : as, *māgistr̃s dōcēt*, *the master teaches* ; *dōmūs est amplā*, *the house is large*.

The **Genitive** answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, *māgistr̃i dōmus*, *the master's house* ; *fōliā arbōrum*, *the leaves of trees*.

The **Dative** answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or *for what?* as, *do librum māgistrō*, *I give the book to the master*.

The **Accusative** answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, *āmo māgistrum*, *I love the master*. It also signifies motion *towards* : as, *eo Rōmam*, *I go to Rome*.

The **Vocative** is used for addressing : as, *O māgistr̃s*, *O master!*

The **Ablative** answers the questions *By* or *with what?* *When?* &c. : as, *hastā interfectūs est*, *he was killed with a spear* ; *æstātē, in the summer*. It also signifies motion or separation *from* : as, *ādeo Rōmā*, *I depart from Rome*.

NOTE.—The *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.* are called the *Oblique* cases.

There was in Old Latin another case called the **Locative**, answering to the question *Where?* It is the same as the *Gen.* in Singular names of towns of the First and Second Declensions : as, *Rōmæ*, *at Rome* ; *Cōrinthī*, *at Corinth*. Other common Locatives are *dōmī*, *at home* ; *rūrī*, *in the country* ; *militiæ*, *bellī*, *in war*. In the Plural of all Declensions its place is taken by the *Abl.* : as, *Athēnis*, *at Athens*. In the Sing. of the Third Declension, the *Loc.* sometimes occurs, but the *Abl.* is more usual. (See p. 115.)

5. There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I	II	III	IV	V
<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	<i>ae</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ei</i>
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	<i>Ā-rum</i>	<i>Ō-rum</i>	{ <i>-um</i> <i>I-um</i> }	<i>Ū-rum</i>	<i>Ē-rum</i>

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I	II	III	IV	V
A	O	consonant or I	U	E

NOTES.

1. The *Nom.* and *Voc.* of all Nouns are alike, except the *Nom.* and *Voc.* of Nouns of the Second Declension in *us*.
2. The *Nom.*, *Voc.*, and *Acc.* of all Neuter Nouns are alike, and the Plural of these cases always ends in *ā*.

IV. FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on page 3.]

NOTES.

1. LOC. SING.—This case originally ended in *i*, which was contracted with the final *a* of the noun into *ae*: as, *Rōmae*, at *Rome*; *militiae*, in *warfare*.
2. GEN. PLUR.—A form in *um* instead of *arum* is used:—
 - (i) In compounds of *cōlo* and *gigno*: as, *caelicōlum*, from *caelicōla*, an *inhabitant of heaven*; *terrigēnum*, from *terrigēna*, *earthborn*.
 - (ii) In *drachmum*, *amphōrum*, from *drachma*, *amphōra*, when used with numerals.
 - (iii) With Greek patronymics: as, *Aeneādum*, from *Aeneādēs*, a *descendant of Aeneas*.
3. DAT. AND ABL. PLUR. IN *ābus*.—This form occurs only in a few words, especially *dēa*, *goddess*; *filia*, *daughter*. These forms are used when it is necessary to distinguish such words from the corresponding Masc. Nouns of the Second Declension: as, *filii et filiābus*, *to sons and daughters*; *deī et deābus*, *to gods and goddesses*.

Declension of Greek Nouns of First Declension.

They are chiefly proper names, and are thus declined:—

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Ossā	am, ān	ae	ae	ā	ā
Electrā	am, ān	ae	ae	ā	ā
hyperbōlē	ēn	ēs	ae	ē	ē
Circē	ēn	ēs	ae	ē	ē
Circā	am	ae	ae	ā	ā
Aenēās	ān, am	ae	ae	ā	ā
Pēlidēs	ēn	ae	ae	ē	ē (ā)
geōmetrēs	ēn	ae	ae	ā	ā

V. SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on pages 5 and 6.]

NOTES.

1. NOM. SING.—(i) The *o* of the Stem was originally found in Nom. and Acc. Sing., and Stems in *vo* and *quo* frequently retained the *o* in order to avoid the concurrence of the double *u* (*v*): as, Nom. servo-s, *slave*, Acc. servo-m; Nom. equo-s, *horse*; Acc. equo-m.
- (ii) Stems in *ero* originally ended in *erūs* in the Nom. Sing., as *pūterūs*, afterwards *pūter*. Most of these nouns drop the *e*, except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: as, māgist(er)-i.
2. GEN. SING.—Nouns in *tus* and *tum* often contract *tī* into *i*: as, filiūs, *a son*, Gen. filiī and fili; nēgōtium, *business*, nēgōtīi and nēgōtī. But in Adjectives the double *i* was used: as, patrīi from patrīūs, *paternal*.
3. VOC. SING.—Filius, *a son*, gēnius, *a guardian deity*, and Proper Names in *ius* have the Voc. in *i*: as, fili, gēni, Mercūrī, *Mercury*. Other Nouns in *ius* appear to have kept the *ie* uncontracted: as, flūvīē, *river*; glādiē, *sword*. So likewise Adjectives: as, impiē, *impious*.
4. GEN. PLUR.—A form in *um* instead of *orum* is used:—
 - (i) In words signifying money, weights, measures: as, nummum from nummus, *a piece of money*; sestertium from sestertius, *a sesterce, a silver coin*; mōdium from mōdius, *a Roman corn-measure*.
 - (ii) In numerals: as, binum from binī, *two a-piece*; dūcentum from dūcentī, *two hundred*.
 - (iii) In the names of peoples in poetry: as, Argīvum.
 - (iv) In some other words: as, vīrum from vīr, *a man*; dēum from dēus, *a god*; fabrum from fābēr, *a smith*; socium from sociūs, *an ally*.

Declension of Greek Nouns of Second Declension.

Nom.	Dēlōs	Andrōgēōs
Gen.	Dēli	Andrōgēi, Andrōgēō
Dat.	Dēlō	Andrōgēō
Acc.	Dēlōn or Dēlum	Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
Voc.	Dēlē	Andrōgēōs
Abl.	Dēlō.	Andrōgēō.
Nom.	Orphēus	
Gen.	Orphēi, Orphēi	
Dat.	Orphēō	
Acc.	Orphēum	
Voc.	Orphēu	
Abl.	Orphēō.	

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form the Accusative in *ōnā* (as if from stem in *ōn*): as, Andrōgēōnā.

VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

[The Declension of these Adjectives is given on pages 7 and 8.]

NOTES.

1. The Adjectives declined like *tănăr* are:—

asper, ăra, ărum,	rough.	liber, ăra, ărum,	free.
lăcer, ăra, ărum,	torn.	miser, ăra, ărum,	wretched.
prosper, ăra, ărum,	prosperous.		

Also all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger*: as, *lăniger, ăra, ărum, wool-bearing*; *öpifer, ăra, ărum, help-bringing*.

All other Adjectives in *ăr* drop the *ă*, and are declined like *niger*.

Dextēr is declined in both ways, *dextără* and *dextră, dextĕrum* and *dextrum*.

2. There is one Adjective in *ūr* of the first and second declensions, *sătūr, sătără, sătĕrum, full of food, sated*.

The Comparison of Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions is given on pages 24-26.

VII. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on pages 11-17.]

There are two stems in *u*—namely, *gru-, crane*; *su-, swine*—which belong to the Consonant Declension, and not to the *U* or Fourth Declension. They are monosyllabic, and the *u* is radical; whereas in the Fourth Declension the *u* is part of a suffix attached to the root. Akin to these two stems in *u* are two stems in *v*: namely, *bōv-, ox, cow*; and *Jov- (Nom. Jū-pitĕr = Jōv, pătĕr), the god Jupiter*. (See Declension, p. 22.)

NOTES.

1. Loc. SING. originally ended in *i*, but is generally the same as the *Abl.*: as, *Carthāgin-i* or *Carthāgin-ě, at Carthage*; *rūr-i* or *rūr-ě, in the country*; *vespĕr-i* or *vespĕr-ě, in the evening*.
2. Acc. SING. IN *im* AND *ABL. SING. IN i*.—These are the proper forms in *i* Stems. Some Nouns have only *im* in *Acc.* and *i* in *Abl.*; others have both *im* and *em* in *Acc.* and *i* or *ě* in *Abl.*; and others have only *em* in *Acc.* and *i* or *ě* in *Abl.*

118 THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

Examples.

tussi (f.), cough.	febri (f.), fever.	cīvi (c.), citizen.
N. V. tuss-is	febr-is	cīv-is
Acc. tuss-im	febr-im, em	cīv-em
Gen. tuss-is	febr-is	cīv-is
Dat. tuss-i	febr-i	cīv-i
Abl. tuss-i	febr-i, ē	cīv-i, ē

(i) Decline like tussis: sitis (f.), *thirst*; sēcūris (f.), *axe*; Tībēris, *the river Tiber*.

(ii) Decline like febris: puppis (f.), *stern of ship*; turris (f.), *tower*.

(iii) Decline like civis: amnis (m.), *river*; ignis (m.), *fire*.

Pars, gen. partis (f.), *a part*, has sometimes partim, because the Stem was originally parti.

Some neuter nouns—like ānimāl, *an animal*; calcār, *a spur*—have the Abl. in i, because the stem originally ended in i.

3. GEN. PLUR. in um and ium.

RULE I.—If the Stem ends in a **consonant**, the Genitive Plural ends in **um**: as,

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
rēg,	king	rex	rēg-is	rēg-um
lāpīd,	stone	lāpī-s	lāpīd-is	lāpīd-um

Exception 1. Monosyllabic words, the Stems of which end in two consonants, have the *Gen.* in **ium**, not **um**. But these are only apparent exceptions, as the original Stem ended in i.

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
urb,	city	urb-s	urb-is	urb-ium
arc,	citadel	arx	arc-is	arc-ium

Also in polysyllabic words, the *Nom. Sing.* of which ends in **ns**, the *Gen. Pl.* is usually in **ium**: as, ādōlescent-ium rather than ādōlescent-um, client-ium rather than client-um. (But pārens, *parent*, has usually pārent-um.) Some nouns in **as** have both forms: as, civitas, *state*, *Gen.* civitāt-um or ium. So also tempestas, *tempest*.

Exception 2. The following monosyllabic words, the Stems of which end in one consonant, also have the *Gen.* in **ium**, not **um**:—

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
lit,	lawsuit	lis	lit-is	lit-ium
glis,	dormouse	glis	glir-is	glir-ium
vis,	force	vis		vir-ium
mūs,	mouse	mūs	mūr-is	mūr-ium
mās,	male	mās	mār-is	mār-ium
nīv,	snow	nix	nīv-is	nīv-ium
fauc,	throat			fauc-ium
strīg,	screech-owl	strix	strīg-is	strīg-ium

Some of these are probably stems in -i.

THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION. 119

Exception 3. The following words, of which the Nom. Sing. ends in *ēr*, have also the *Gen.* in *ium*, not *um*. But these are only apparent exceptions, as the original Stem ended in *i*.

Nom. Sing.		Gen. Sing.	Gen. Plur.
imbēr,	rain	imbris	imbrīum.
ūtēr,	a bag made of leather	ūtīs	utrīum.
lītēr,	a wherry	litrīs	lintrīum.
Insūbēr,	name of a Gallic tribe	Insubrīs	Insubrīum.
ventēr,	the belly	ventrīs	ventrīum.

RULE II.—If the Stem ends in *i*, the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the *i* being part of the Stem: as,

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
hosti,	enemy	hostī-s	hostī-s	hostī-um
nūbi,	cloud	nūbē-s	nūbī-s	nūbī-um
māri,	sea	mārē	mārī-s	mārī-um
ānīmāli,	animal	ānīmāl	ānīmālī-s	ānīmālī-um
calcāri,	spur	calcār	calcārī-s	calcārī-um

Exception.—The following Stems in *i* form the *Gen.* in *um*, not *ium*: as,

Stem.		Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
jūvēni,	youth	jūvēnī-s	jūvēnī-s	jūvēn-um
vātī,	prophet	vātē-s	vātī-s	vāt-um
cāni,	dog	cānī-s	cānī-s	cān-um
vōlūcri,	bird	vōlūcrī-s	vōlūcrī-s	vōlūcr-um

The three words *āpis*, a bee; *mensis*, a month; *sēdēs*, a seat, have sometimes the *Gen.* in *um* as well as *ium*.

RULE III.—Acc. Pl. in *īs*, *ēs* AND *ās*.—Stems in *i* have properly the ending *īs*, but many have *ēs* also: as, *ignīs*, fire, *Acc. Pl.* *ignīs* and *ignēs*; *mons*, mountain, *Acc. Pl.* *montīs* and *montēs* (see above, Rule I., Exception 1); *imbēr*, rain, *Acc. Pl.* *imbris* and *imbrēs* (see above, Rule I., Exception 3). Some proper names have the Gk. *Acc. Pl.* in *ās*: as, *Arābās*, *Sērās*.

Declension of Greek Nouns of Third Declension.

	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Periclēs	Isīs	Didō	Atreus	Trōādēs, ēs
Acc.	Periclem, ēa	{ Isīdem, ā Isīn	{ Didō, ōnem	Atrēa	Trōādēs, ās
Gen.	Periclis, ī	Isīdis, ōs	Didūs, ōnīs	Atrēūs, ī	Trōādum
Dat.	Periclī	Isīdī	Didō, ōnī	Atrēī, eo	Trōādībūs (Trōāsī(n))
Voc.	Periclēs, ēs, ē	Isī	Didō	Atrēu	Trōādēs, ēs
Abl.	Periclē	Isīdē	Didō, ōnē	Atrēō	Trōādībūs

VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

[*The Declension of these Adjectives is given on pages 18, 19.*]

Most Adjectives of the Third Declension have Stems ending in *ĭ*, and form *Abl. Sing.* in *ĭ*, *Nom. Plur. Neut.* in *ĭa*, *Gen. Plur.* in *ĭum*, *Acc. Plur. Masc. and Fem.* *ēs* or *īs*. Even Adjectives of one termination, having Stems ending in a Consonant, usually have the same case-endings.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Comparatives have *Abl. Sing.* in *ē*, very rarely *ī*; *Nom. Plur. Neut.* in *ā*; *Gen. Pl.* in *um*.

2. A few Adjectives, with Stems ending in a Consonant, have *Abl. Sing.* in *ē*, *Gen. Plur.* in *um*: as, *princeps*, *chief*, *princip-ē*, *princip-um*; *dives*, *rich*, *divit-ē*, *divit-um*; *paupēr*, *poor*, *paupēr-ē*, *paupēr-um*. *Vētūs*, *old*, has *Nom. Plur. Neut.* *vētēr-ā*, *Gen. Plur.* *vētēr-um*.

3. When an Adjective is used as a Noun, it usually prefers *ē*: as, *sinē pārē*, *without an equal*.

4. Present Participles in *ns*, as *āmans*, *loving*, when used strictly as such, have usually *ē*, especially in the Absolute construction: e.g. *Tarquiniō regnantē*, *when Tarquin was reigning*. When used as Adjectives, they follow the general rule, and take oftener *ī* than *ē*: e.g. *insēquentī noctē*, *in the following night*.

Obs. The Comparison of Adjectives of the Third Declension is given on pages 24 and 25.

IX. THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

[*The Declension is given on page 20.*]

GENDER.—Nouns in *us* of the Fourth Declension are regularly masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and of women, and a few other words.

NOTES.

1. The GEN. SING. *ūs* is a contraction of *uīs*: as, *grādūs* from *grādūīs*.
2. The DAT. SING. *uī* is often contracted into *ū*: as, *grādūī*, *grādū*.
3. The DAT. and ABL. PLUR. of, the following words end in *ūbūs*, but *portus*, *spēcus*, and *vēru* have also *ūbus*:—

<i>ācus</i> (f.)	<i>needle.</i>	<i>portus</i> (m.)	<i>harbour.</i>
<i>arcus</i> (m.)	<i>bow.</i>	<i>spēcus</i> (m., f., & n.)	<i>cave.</i>
<i>artūs</i> (m.), only pl.	<i>joints.</i>	<i>tribus</i> (f.)	<i>tribe.</i>
<i>lācus</i> (m.)	<i>lake, tank.</i>	<i>vēru</i> (n.)	<i>spit.</i>

4. *Dōmus*, *a house*, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension. It is declined on p. 22.

X. THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

[The Declension is given on page 21.]

NOTES.

1. Rēs and diēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The following words occur in the Plural in *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* No others have any Plural.

aciēs	edge.	effigies	likeness.	spēciēs	form.
faciēs	face.	sēries	row.	spēs	hope.

2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in *eī* is usually long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, *dī-eī*, *fāci-eī*; but *rēi*, *fīdēi*.
3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, *dīē*, *fīdē*.

XI. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

[The Declension of some Irregular Nouns is given on page 22.]

NOTES.

1. Some Nouns are not declined: as, *fās*, *that which is permitted by divine law*; *nēfās*, *that which is opposed to divine law*; *nihil*, *nothing*; *instār*, *standard, scale*. They have only *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*
2. Some Nouns are written as one word, but declined as two: as, *respublica*, *commonwealth*, which is declined on page 22. In *pāter-fāmiiliās*, *the father of a family*, only the former part is declined: *Gen.* *patris-fāmiiliās*; *Dat.* *patri-fāmiiliās*, &c. *Fāmiiliās* is the old form of *Gen.* of the First Declension.
3. Some Nouns have no Plural: as, *aurum*, *gold*; *argentum*, *silver*; and, as a general rule, Abstract Nouns: as, *pax*, *peace*; *justitia*, *justice*. But these latter are occasionally found in the Plural, where the sense requires it.
4. Many Nouns have no Singular: as, *dīvītiāe*, *riches*; *nuptiāe*, *wedding*; *tēnebrae*, *darkness*; *libēri*, *children*; *arma*, *arms*; *mānes*, *shades of the dead*; also many names of towns, as, *Athēnae*, *Athens*.

5. Some Nouns have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as—

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
aedēs,	<i>a temple;</i>	aedēs,	<i>a house.</i>
āqua,	<i>water;</i>	āquae,	<i>medicinal springs.</i>
auxilium,	<i>help;</i>	auxilia,	<i>auxiliary forces.</i>
castrum,	<i>a fort;</i>	castrā,	<i>a camp.</i>
cōpia,	<i>plenty;</i>	cōpiae,	<i>forces.</i>
impēdimentum,	<i>a hindrance;</i>	impēdimenta,	<i>baggage.</i>
littēra,	<i>a letter of the al-</i>	littērae,	<i>an epistle.</i>
	<i>phabet;</i>		
lūdus,	<i>play, school;</i>	lūdi,	<i>public games.</i>
ōpera,	<i>exertion;</i>	ōpērae,	<i>workmen.</i>
ōpis (Gen.),	<i>help;</i>	ōpēs,	<i>power, wealth.</i>

6. Some Nouns are defective in Case: as, *vīs*, *strength*, declined on p. 22. *Gen.* *vicīs*, *change*, has only *Acc. em*, *Abl. ē*, *Plur. Nom. Acc. vicēs*, *Dat. Abl. vicībūs*.

7. Some Nouns are *Hētērōclītā*; that is, have a two-fold Declension:—

- (i) Some Nouns fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions: as, *dōmus*, *a house* (see p. 22), and many names of trees: as, *laurus*, *a bay-tree*; *cūpressus*, *a cypress*; *ficus*, *a fig-tree*; *pīnus*, *a pine-tree*: also *cōlus*, *a distaff*.

- (ii) Some Nouns fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions: as, *plebs*, *plēbis*, and *plēbēs*, *plēbēi*, *the commonalty*.

- (iii) *Jūgērūm*, *an acre*, is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Third in the *Plur.*: as, *jūgērā*, *jūgērūm*, *jūgērībūs*. *Vās*, *vāsīs*, *a vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Second in the *Plural*: as, *vāsā*, *vāsōrum*, *vāsīs*.

8. Some Nouns are *Hētērōgēnēā*; that is, have a different gender in the Singular and Plural:—

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
jocus (m.),	<i>a joke;</i>	jocī (m.), jocā (n.).	
lōcus (m.),	<i>a place;</i>	lōcā (n.), locī (m.).	
carbāsus (f.),	<i>fine linen;</i>	carbāsā (n.), sails.	
frēnum (n.),	<i>a bit, bridle;</i>	frēnī (m.), frēnā (n.).	
Tartārus (m.),	<i>the infernal regions;</i>	Tartārā (n.).	
rastrum (n.),	<i>a rake;</i>	rastrī (m.), rastrā (n.).	

XII. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine*.

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine*.

3. Indeclinable Nouns, as, *fās*, that which is permitted by heaven, *nēfās*, that which is not permitted by heaven, *nihil*, nothing, are *Neuter*.

4. Nouns denoting both the male and the female, as, *conjux*, husband or wife, are *Common*.

SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. FIRST DECLENSION.—All Nouns of the First Declension are *Feminine*, unless they designate males : as, *nauta*, a sailor. Also some names of rivers : as, *Sēquāna*, the *Seine*; with *Hādria*, the *Adriatic Sea*.

II. SECOND DECLENSION.—Nouns in *us* and *er* are *Masculine*; those in *um* are *Neuter*.

A few Nouns in *us* are *Feminine* : names of trees, as *mālus*, an *apple-tree* ; also, *alvus*, the *bowels* ; *hūmus*, the *ground* ; *vannus*, a *winnowing fan* ; *arctus*, the *constellation Bear* ; *carbāsus*, *fine linen*.

Three Nouns in *us* are *Neuter* : as, *vīrus*, *poison* ; *vulgus*, the *multitude* (also *Masc.*) ; *pēlāgus*, the *(open) sea*.

III. THIRD DECLENSION.—Nouns of the Third Declension are *Masculine*, *Feminine*, or *Neuter*. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders :—

1. *Masculine*.—(a) Abstract Nouns in *ōr* derived from verbs : as, *ām-or*, *love*, from *āmo*, *I love*.

(b) Nouns in *tōr* derived from verbs denoting an agent : as, *āmā-tor*, a *lover*, from *āmo*, *I love* ; *vic-tor*, a *conqueror*, from *vinco*, *I conquer*.

2. *Feminine*.—(a) Abstract Nouns in *io* and *tio* derived from verbs: as, *audi-tio*, *hearing*, from *audio*, *I hear*.
- (b) Abstract Nouns in *tūs* derived from Nouns: as, *vir-tus*, *manliness*, from *vir*, *a man*.
- (c) Abstract Nouns in *tās* derived from Nouns and Adjectives: as, *civī-tas*, *citizenship*, from *civis*, *a citizen*; *crūdēlī-tas*, *cruelty*, from *crūdēlis*, *cruel*.
- (d) Abstract Nouns in *tūdo* derived from Adjectives: as, *longī-tūdo*, *length*, from *longus*, *long*.
- (e) Nouns in *trix* derived from Nouns in *tor* and denoting a female agent: as, *vic-trix*, *a female conqueror*, from *vic-tor*.
3. *Neuter*.—(a) Nouns in *ē*: as, *mārē*, *the sea*.
- (b) Nouns in *mēn* derived from Verbs: as, *flū-men*, *a river*, from *flu-ēre*, *to flow*.
- (c) Nouns in *ūs* and *ūr*: as, *opus*, *a work*; *fulgur*, *lightning*. (But *lēpus*, *lēpōris*, *a hare*, is Masculine; and *Vēnus*, *Vēnēris*, *Venus*, is Feminine.)

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.—Nouns in *ūs* are mostly Masculine: those in *u* are all Neuter.

A few in *us* are Feminine: namely, *mānus*, *a hand*; *ācus*, *a needle*; *cōlus* (4 and 2), *a distaff*; *dōmus* (4 and 2), *a house*; *porticus*, *a portico*; *nūrus*, *a daughter-in-law*; *socrus*, *a mother-in-law*; *ānus*, *an old woman*; *tribus*, *a tribe*; *idūs* (*pl.*), *the Ides* (13th or 15th of a month):—

‘In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day’—

and consequently the *Ides* on the 15th. In all the other months the *Nones* (*Nōnae*, *arum*) fall on the 5th and the *Ides* on the 13th.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except *dīēs*, *day*, which is Common in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is Masculine.

XIII. THE NUMERALS.

1. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES are of three kinds :—

(i) CARDINAL, denoting number simply or absolutely : as, *unūs, one* ; *dūō, two* ; *trēs, three*.

(ii) ORDINAL, denoting numbers regarded as forming part of a series : as, *primūs, first* ; *secundūs, or altēr, second*.

(iii) DISTRIBUTIVE, denoting numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit ; which may be translated in various ways : as, *bini, ae, a, two each, two a-piece, two by two*.

2. NUMERAL ADVERBS denote the *number of times* that anything occurs : as, *sēmēl, once* ; *bis, twice* ; *tēr, three times* ; *quōtīēs* or *quōtīens, how many times*.

For a complete table of Numerals, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, with their corresponding Adverbs, see next page.

3. DECLENSION OF THE NUMERALS.—The Declension of the Cardinals *unūs, dūō, trēs*, is given on pages 24, 27.

Unūs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a different meaning from that of the Singular : as, *unā littēra, one letter of the alphabet* ; *unae littērae, one letter or epistle*.

The Cardinals from *quattuōr, four*, to *centum, a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dūcenti, ae, ā, two hundred, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Millē, a thousand, is usually an indeclinable adjective ; but *milliā* (usu. *milliā*), *thousands*, plural, is a Noun : as, *millē hōmīnēs, a thousand men* (less frequently, *mille hōmīnum*) ; but *dūō milliā hōmīnum, two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*. Its declension is given on p. 27.

The *Ordinals* are declined regularly as adjectives.

NOTES.

1. From 13 to 19 inclusive the smaller Ordinal number is placed first without *et* : as, *tertius dēcīmus, the thirteenth*. From 21 to 99 inclusive, both in Cardinals and Ordinals, the larger numeral is placed first without *et*, or the smaller numeral first with *et* : as, *vīgintī unūs, or unūs et vīgintī, twenty-one or one and twenty* ; *vicēsīmus primus* or *primus*

(Continued on p. 128.)

2. *Feminine*.—(a) Abstract Nouns in *io* and *tio* derived from verbs :
as, *audi-tio*, *hearing*, from *audio*, *I hear*.
- (b) Abstract Nouns in *tis* derived from Nouns : as,
vir-tus, *manliness*, from *vir*, *a man*.
- (c) Abstract Nouns in *tas* derived from Nouns and
Adjectives : as, *civī-tas*, *citizenship*, from *civis*,
a citizen ; *crūdēlī-tas*, *cruelty*, from *crūdēlis*,
cruel.
- (d) Abstract Nouns in *tudo* derived from Adjectives :
as, *longī-tudo*, *length*, from *longus*, *long*.
- (e) Nouns in *trix* derived from Nouns in *tor* and
denoting a female agent : as, *vic-trix*, *a female
conqueror*, from *vic-tor*.
3. *Neuter*. — (a) Nouns in *ē* : as, *mārē*, *the sea*.
- (b) Nouns in *mēn* derived from Verbs : as, *flū-men*,
a river, from *flu-ēre*, *to flow*.
- (c) Nouns in *ūs* and *ūr* : as, *opus*, *a work* ; *fulgur*,
lightning. (But *lēpus*, *lēpōris*, *a hare*, is
Masculine ; and *Vēnus*, *Vēnōris*, *Venus*, is
Feminine.)

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION. — Nouns in *ūs* are mostly
Masculine : those in *u* are all Neuter.

A few in *us* are Feminine : namely, *mānus*, *a hand* ;
ācus, *a needle* ; *cōlus* (4 and 2), *a distaff* ; *dōmus* (4 and 2),
a house ; *porticus*, *a portico* ; *nūrus*, *a daughter-in-law* ;
socrus, *a mother-in-law* ; *ānus*, *an old woman* ; *tribus*, *a
tribe* ; *idūs* (*pl.*), *the Ides* (13th or 15th of a month) :—

‘In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day’—

and consequently the *Ides* on the 15th. In all the other
months the *Nones* (*Nōnae*, *arum*) fall on the 5th and the
Ides on the 13th.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except *dīes*,
day, which is Common in the Singular, and always Mas-
culine in the Plural ; and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is
Masculine.

XIII. THE NUMERALS.

1. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES are of three kinds :—

(i) CARDINAL, denoting number simply or absolutely :
as, ūnūs, *one* ; dūō, *two* ; trēs, *three*.

(ii) ORDINAL, denoting numbers regarded as forming part of a series : as, prīmūs, *first* ; sēcundūs, or altēr, *second*.

(iii) DISTRIBUTIVE, denoting numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit ; which may be translated in various ways : as, binī, *ae, a, two each, two a-piece, two by two*.

2. NUMERAL ADVERBS denote the *number of times* that anything occurs : as, sēmēl, *once* ; bis, *twice* ; tēr, *three times* ; quōtiēs or quōtiens, *how many times*.

For a complete table of Numerals, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, with their corresponding Adverbs, see next page.

3. DECLENSION OF THE NUMERALS.—The Declension of the Cardinals ūnūs, dūō, trēs, is given on pages 24, 27.

Ūnūs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a different meaning from that of the Singular : as, ūnā littēra, *one letter of the alphabet* ; ūnae littērae, *one letter or epistle*.

The Cardinals from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dūcentī, *ae, ā, two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Millē, *a thousand*, is usually an indeclinable adjective ; but milliā (usu. miliā), *thousands*, plural, is a Noun : as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men* (less frequently, mille hōmīnum) ; but dūō milliā hōmīnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*. Its declension is given on p. 27.

The *Ordinals* are declined regularly as adjectives.

NOTES.

1. From 13 to 19 inclusive the smaller Ordinal number is placed first without *et* : as, tertius dēcīmus, *the thirteenth*. From 21 to 99 inclusive, both in Cardinals and Ordinals, the larger numeral is placed first without *et*, or the smaller numeral first with *et* : as, vīgintī ūnus, or ūnus et vīgintī, *twenty-one* or *one and twenty* ; vicēsīmus prīmus or prīmus

(Continued on p. 128.)

NUMERALS.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus, a, um	singlī	sēmēl
2	II	duō	scōundus (or alter)	binī	bis
3	III	trēs	tertius, a, um	terni or trinī	tēr
4	IV	quattuor, quattuor	quartus, a, um	quāterni	quātēr
5	V	quinqūē	quintus, a, um	quinī	quinquies (-ens)
6	VI	sex	sextus, a, um	senī	sexies
7	VII	septem	septimus (-imus), a, um	septēni	septies
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octōni	octies
9	IX	nōvem	nonus	novēni	novies
10	X	dēcem	decimus (-imus)	dēni	dēcies
11	XI	undēcem	undecimus	undēni	undecies
12	XII	duōdēcem	duodécimus	duōdēni	duōdecies
13	XIII	trēdēcem (dec. et tres)	tertius decimus	terni dēni	terdecies
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quāterni dēni	quattordecies (-ens)
15	XV	quindēcem	quintus decimus	quinī dēni	quindēcies
16	XVI	sēdēcem	sextus decimus	senī dēni	sedecies
17	XVII	septamdēcem	septimus decimus	septēni dēni	septiesdecies
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdecimus	duōdēvicieni	duodevicies
19	XIX	undēviginti	undevicimus	undēvicieni	undevicies
20	XX	vīginti	vicesimus (-esimus)	vicieni	vicies
21	XXI	ūnus et vīginti or vīginti [et] ūnus	primus et vicesimus or vicesimus primus	vicieni singlī	sēmēl et viciēs
22	XXII	duo et vīginti or vīginti duo	alter et vicesimus or vicesimus alter	vicieni binī	bis et viciēs

		{trēs et viginti or vīginti trēs or vīginti octo or vīginti novem}	{terthūs et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus tertius or undētrīgēsīmus or trīgēsīmus (-ensīmus) (trīco-)	vicēni termī, ae, a	tēr et vicēs (-ens)
23	XXIII	vīginti trēs	vicēsīmus tertius	vicēni termī	tēr et vicēs (-ens)
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīgēsīmus	duodētrīcēni	duodētrīcēs
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsīmus	undētrīcēni	undētrīcēs
30	XXX	vīginti novem	trīgēsīmus (-ensīmus)	trīcēni	trīcēs
40	XL	trīgintā	trīgēsīmus (-ensīmus)	trīcēni	trīcēs
50	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēni	quadrāgēs
60	LX	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēni	quīnquāgēs
70	LXX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēni	sexāgēs
80	LXXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēni	septuāgēs
90	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēni	octōgēs
100	XC	nonāgintā	nonāgēsīmus	nonāgēni	nonāgēs
100	C	centum	centēsīmus	centēni	centēs
200	CC	ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsīmus	ducentēni	ducentēs
300	CCC	trecentī, ae, a	trecentēsīmus	trecentēni	trecentēs
400	CCCC	quingenti	quingentēsīmus	quingēni	quingentēs
500	D or Iq	quingenti	quingentēsīmus	quingēni	quingentēs
600	DC	sexcentī (sescentī)	sexcentēsīmus (seco-)	sexcentēni	sexcentēs
700	DCC	septingenti	septingentēsīmus	septingēni	septingentēs
800	DCCC	octingenti	octingentēsīmus	octingēni	octingentēs
900	DCCC	noncentī	nongentēsīmus	nongēni	nongentēs
1000	M or Clq	millē	millēsīmus	singulā milia	millēs
1000	MM	duo (bina) milia	bis millēsīmus	binā milia	bis millēs
5000	100	quīnquē (quīna) milia	quīnquēs millēsīmus	quīnā milia	quīnquēs millēs
10,000	CC100	dēcēm (dēna) milia	dēcēs millēsīmus	dēnā milia	dēcēs millēs
50,000	1000	quīnquāgintā milia	quīnquāgēs millēsīmus	quīnquāgēs milia	quīnquāgēs millēs
100,000	CC1000	centum (-ēna) milia	centēs millēsīmus	centēnā milia	centēs millēs
500,000	10000	quīngentā milia	quīngentēs millēsīmus	quīngēnā milia	quīngentēs millēs
1,000,000	CCCC10000	dēcēs centum (-ēna) milia	dēcēs centēs millēsīmus	dēcēs centēnā milia	dēcēs centēs millēs

ORTHOGRAPHY.—1. In the Ordinal Numerals, the old orthography of the termination *ēsīmus* was *ensīmus* or *ensūmus*.

2. In the Adverbs the old orthography of the termination *-ēs* was *-ens*.

- et vicēsimus, *the twenty-first*. The numbers above 100 usually have the larger number first, without or with *et*: as, centum (ēt) sexāgintā sex, *one hundred and sixty-six*.
2. Dates of years are expressed by Ordinal Numerals: as, anno millēsimo octingentēsimo nōnāgēsimo quinto, *in the eighteen-hundred-and-ninety-fifth year*, i.e. *in the year 1895*.
 3. Distributives are used instead of Cardinals with words which have no singular or one with a different sense: as, bina castra, *two camps*; binae aedes, *two houses*. Duo castra would be *two forts*; duae aedes, *two temples*.
 4. The Genitive Plural of Distributive Numerals is usually contracted: -ūm instead of ōrum; as, denūm annōrum.

XIV. THE PRONOUNS.

[*The Declension of the Pronouns is given on pages 33-36.*]

1. **PERSONAL PRONOUNS.**—Nostrum and vestrum are only used as Partitive Genitives or in connexion with omnium: as, ūnus nostrum (not nostri), *one of us*; omnium vestrum (not vestri) vōluntas, *the wish of you all*.

2. **REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.**—Suus is a reflexive adjective, and can therefore only refer back to the Subject, like the reflexive pronoun. In other senses, *his, her, its, their*, are expressed by the Gen. Sing. or Plur. of is, ea, id or ille, illa, illud.

3. **DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.**—The three Demonstrative Pronouns are strengthened by the particle cē, shortened c, which serves to point out anything more exactly: *this here, that there*. This particle (in the form of final c) is seen in several of the cases of hī-c, and may be added to others also: as, hūjuscē, hoscē, etc.

Istic is thus declined:—

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	istic	istaec	istūc	istīcē	istaec	istaec
<i>Acc.</i>	istunc	istanc	istūc	istoscē	istascē	istaec
<i>Gen.</i>	istiuscē (of all genders)					
<i>Dat.</i>	istic (of all genders)					
<i>Abl.</i>	istōc	istāc	istōc	istiscē (of all genders)		
	So also,			illāc	illūc, etc.	

The adverbs hī-c, *here*, istī-c, illī-c, *there, yonder*, denoting place where, are properly Locatives Singular.

Also ī-hī, *there*, is a Locative of is, ea, id.

4. INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—*Quis* or *Qui* is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions *sī*, *if*, *nē*, *lest*, *nisi*, *unless*, *num*, *whether*. Thus, *sī quis* is "*if any one*"; *nē quis*, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When *quis* is so used, it usually changes *quae* to *quā* in *Nom. Sing. fem.*, and *Nom. and Acc. Pl. neut.*; but *quae* is also used.

So also *āliquis* or *āliqūi*, *some one*.

Indefinite Pronouns.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>SING.</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i> or <i>quī</i>	<i>quā</i> or <i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i> or <i>quod</i>
"	<i>āliquis</i> or <i>āliqūi</i>	<i>āliquā</i> or <i>āliquae</i>	<i>āliquid</i> or <i>āliquod</i> .
<i>PLUR.</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i> (<i>quā</i>)
"	<i>āliqūi</i>	<i>āliquae</i>	<i>āliquā</i>

In the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and their compounds (see below), *quis* and *quid* are generally used as *Nouns*, and *quī* and *quod* as *Adjectives*: as,

quis es, *who art thou?*

quī hōmo es, *what (kind of a) man art thou?*

quid commisit, *what has he done?*

quod facinus commisit, *what deed has he done?*

NOTE.—*Quis* is sometimes, but rarely, used as an *Adjective*; *qui* is sometimes, but rarely, used as a *Noun*. *Quid* is always used as a *Noun*; *quod* always as an *Adjective*.

5. COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>quidam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	{ <i>quiddam</i> or <i>quoddam</i> }	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>quicumquē</i>	<i>quaecunquē</i>	<i>quodcumquē</i>	<i>whosoever.</i>
<i>quilibet</i>	<i>quaelibet</i>	{ <i>quodlibet</i> or <i>quidlibet</i> }	<i>who or which you please;</i> <i>anyone (without ex-</i> <i>ception).</i>
<i>quivis</i>	<i>quaevis</i>	{ <i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> }	
<i>quisquis</i>	(no <i>Fem.</i>)	{ <i>quicquid</i> or <i>quidquid</i> }	<i>whoever, whatever.</i>
<i>quisquam</i> ¹	(no <i>Fem.</i>)	{ <i>quicquam</i> or <i>quidquam</i> }	<i>anyone at all.</i>

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
quisquē	quaeque	{ quidquē (quodquē)	} <i>each.</i>
quispiam	quaequam	{ quidpiam or quippiam (quodpiam)	
ecquis (ecqui)	{ ecquā (ecquae)	{ ecquid (ecquid)	} <i>is there anyone who ?</i>
utēr	utrā	utrum	
neutēr	neutrā	neutrum	<i>which of two.</i>
uterquē	utrāquē	utrumque	<i>neither of two.</i>
			<i>each of two, both.</i>

¹ Quisquam = *any single one*; in negative or hypothetical sentences: it is usually a Noun. The Adjectival meaning is supplied by ullus.

XV.—THE VERB.

[*The Conjugation of sum is given on pages 29-31; of the Active Voice on pages 38-45; of the Passive Voice on pages 54-61; of Deponent Verbs on pages 70, 71.*]

1. Verbs have two Voices: ACTIVE and PASSIVE. •

(1.) The Active Voice, before which the Nominative represents the *agent*: as, pater amat, *the father loves*.

(2.) The Passive Voice, before which the Nominative represents the *object* of the action: as, pater amatur, *the father is loved*.

2. Active Verbs are TRANSITIVE or INTRANSITIVE.

(1.) Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative Case, representing the direct object of the action: as, amo puerum, *I love the boy*.

(2.) Intransitive Verbs express a state or condition, or an action confined to the doer, and do not govern an Accusative Case: as, sedeo, *I sit*; curro, *I run*.

NOTES.

1. Transitive Verbs have a Passive Voice.
2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal: as, curritur a nostris, *it is being run by our men*: or speaking generally, pugnatur, *there is fighting; fighting goes on*. This form is not used to denote the action of a single person.

3. Deponent Verbs have a Passive form with an active meaning : as, *hortor militēs, I exhort the soldiers.*

4. Verbs have two parts : FINITE (limited by Mood and Tense) and INFINITE.

A. The VERB FINITE has three Moods :—

1. The Indicative Mood states a thing positively or asks a question about facts : as, *āmāt, he loves; āmātnē? does he love?*

2. The Subjunctive Mood states a thing conditionally : as, *si itā dicam, mentiār, if I were to say so, I should lie; vēlim, I could fain wish. •*

NOTE.—The translation of the Subjunctive Mood given in the paradigms must be regarded as approximate only. Sometimes the Indicative must be used in English where the Latin requires the Subjunctive : as, *rōgāvi quīs esset, I asked who he WAS.*

3. The Imperative Mood commands or entreats : as, *āmā, love; nē occīdīto, thou shalt not kill.*

B. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.

1. The Infinitive Mood, the Tenses of which are indeclinable Verbal Nouns, denotes an action or state without immediate reference to a person : as, *āmāre, to love.*

2. Participles, which are Verbal Adjectives.

There are four Participles in Latin, two Active and two Passive.

Active	{	<i>Present</i>	<i>āmans</i>	<i>loving</i>
		<i>Future</i>	<i>āmātūrus</i>	<i>about to love.</i>
Passive	{	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>āmātus</i>	<i>loved</i>
		<i>Gerundive</i>	<i>āmandus</i>	<i>fit to be loved.</i>

NOTE.—The Latin language is deficient in Participles, the Active Voice having no Past Participle corresponding to our ‘*having loved*,’ and the Passive no Present or Future Participle. Deponent Verbs only have regularly a Past Part. in Active sense : *ūsus, having used; sēcūtus, having followed.*

3. The Supine, which is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, having two Cases only, the Acc. and the Abl. (or Dat.) : as, *āmātum, to love; āmātū, in loving, to be loved.*

4. The Gerund, which is also a Verbal Noun, having four Cases: as, *Acc.* *amandum* (only after a preposition), *loving*; *Gen.* *amandi*, *of loving*; *Dat.* *amandō*, *for loving*; *Abl.* *amandō*, *by loving*.

NOTE.—The want of a Nominative case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

5. Verbs have six TENSES, which show the time of the action of the Verb. There are three natural divisions of time: Present, Past, Future; and each of these has two natural divisions, incomplete or IMPERFECT, and complete or PERFECT. The full set of six tenses is found only in the Indicative Mood: as,

Incomplete	1. Present: <i>amo</i> , <i>I love or am loving</i> .
or	2. Imperfect: <i>amābam</i> , <i>I was loving or I used to love</i> .
Imperfect.	3. Future: <i>amābo</i> , <i>I shall love</i> .
Complete	4. Perfect: <i>amāvi</i> , <i>I have loved</i> (Perfect proper), or <i>I loved</i> (Past Indefinite).
or	5. Pluperfect: <i>amāveram</i> , <i>I had loved</i> .
Perfect.	6. Future-Perfect: <i>amāverō</i> , <i>I shall have loved</i> .

In the Passive Voice the Perfect Participle is used with the different tenses of the Verb *sum* to form the complete or Perfect Tenses: as,

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātus sum</i>	<i>amātus sim.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amātus eram</i>	<i>amātus essem.</i>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	<i>amātus ero.</i>	
	INFINITIVE.	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amātus esse.</i>	

NOTES.

1. Instead of *sum*, *eram*, *ero*; *sim*, *essem*; *essē*, these tenses are sometimes formed by *fui*, *fuēram*, *fuēro*; *fuērim*, *fuissem*; *fuisse*: as, *amātus fui*, &c. See *Stud. Lat. Gr.* § 404.
2. The Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses agrees in gender and number with the subject [see p. 63], but for the sake of convenience the masculine alone is given in the Conjugation.
3. The sign of the Passive Voice in the Imperfect Tenses is the letter *r*, which is added to the corresponding Tenses of the Active Voice; the final *m* of the Active Voice is dropped: as, *amō*, *amō-r*; *amāba-m*, *amāba-r*, *amābō*, *amābō-r*; *amem*, *ame-r*; *amāre-m*, *amārē-r*. In like manner in the 3rd Pers. Sing. and Plur., *amant*, *amant-u-r*; *amābant*, *amābant-u-r*; *amābunt*, *amābunt-u-r*.

The Future Infinitive Passive (as, *āmātum irī*) consists of the Active Supine in *um* together with *irī*, Present Infinitive Passive of *eo*, *I go*, used impersonally. Thus *audio tē caesum irī*, literally translated, is—*I hear that-there-is-a-going (on the part of some one) to beat you*; i.e. *that you are about to be beaten*. The Supine *caesum* here follows the verb of motion *irī*, according to Rule 28.

XVI.—FORMATION OF TENSES.

A. The Perfect Stem is formed :

1. By adding *v* to the Verbal Stem : as, *āma*, *āmā-v-i* ; *audi*, *audi-v-i*. This is the regular formation in the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding *u* to the Verbal Stem : as, *mōnē*, *mōn-u-i*. The final vowel of the Verbal Stem is dropped. This is the regular formation of the Second Conjugation.

Obs. The formative elements *v* and *u* are the same, and are identical with the root *fu-*, seen in the Perfect of the verb *sum*.

3. By adding *s* to the Verbal Stem : as, *rēg* (*rēgō*), *rexī* = *reg-s-i*.

Obs. The euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

- (i) *cs*, *gs*, *qus*, *hs* are contracted into *x* : as, *dūco*, *duxi*, *lead* ; *cōquo*, *coxi*, *cook* ; *trāho*, *traxi*, *drag*.
- (ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s* : as, *scribo*, *scripsi*, *write* ; *nūbo*, *nupsi*, *marry* (of the wife).
- (iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s* : as, *mitto*, *misi*, *send* ; *laedo*, *laesi*, *injure*.

4. By reduplication ; that is, by prefixing the first consonant of the Stem followed by a short vowel : as,

tend-	(tendo)	tē-tendi	stretch
cād-	(cādo)	cē-cidi	fall
morde-	(mordeo)	mō-mordi	bite

Obs. In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted : as, *tundo*, *tūtūdi*, *beat*, but *contundo*, *con-tūdi*, *beat small*, *bruise* ; *pello*, *pēpūli*, *drive*, but *compello*, *compūli*, *drive together*.

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem : as,

jāc- or jāci-	(jācio)	jēci	throw
vēni-	(vēnio)	vēni	come
mōve-	(mōveo)	mōvi	move

6. In some Verbs the sign of the Perfect is lost ; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u*, *v*, or *t* : as, mīnu-o, mīnu-ī, *lessen* ; volv-o, volv-ī, *roll* ; vert-o, vert-ī, *turn*.

B. The Supine Stem is formed by adding *tu* to the Verbal Stem : as, āmā-tu-m, āmā-tū ; mōnī-tu-m, mōnī-tū.

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

Obs. 2. The euphonic changes of letters must be noted :

(i) *g*, *qu*, *h*, become *c* before *t* : as, rēg-o, rec-tum ; cōqu-o, coc-tum ; trāh-o, trac-tum.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t* : as, scrib-o, scrip-tum ; nūb-o, nup-tum.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s* : as, laed-o, laesum, *injure* ; claud-o, clausum, *shut*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s* : as, cēdo, ces-sum, *yield* ; mitto, mis-sum, *send*.

For a list of the Perfects and Supines, see pages 136–146.

C. The other Tenses may be formed from the Principal Parts of the Verb :—

1. From the Pres. Inf. Stem, the Pres., Imperf. (both Ind. and Subj.), the Fut., the Imperative, the Pres. Part., the Gerund and Gerundive : as, mōnē-rē, mōnē-o, mōnē-bam, mōnē-am, mōnē-rem, mōnē-bo, mōnē-ns, mōnē-ndum, mōnē-ndus. In the 1st Conj., *ac* is contracted into *o* : as, āma-o = āmo.

2. From the Perf. Stem, all the Perfect tenses : as, mōnū-ī, mōnū-eram, mōnū-ero, mōnū-erim, mōnū-issem, mōnū-isse.

3. From the Supine Stem, the Supine Active and Passive, the Perf. Part., and the Fut. Part. : as, mōnī-tum, mōnī-tū, mōnī-tūs, mōnī-tūrūs.

Obs. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles are formed direct from the Verbal Stem : as,

	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Verbal Stem.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>	
jūvo	jūtum	jūva-	jūvā-tūrūs	<i>help</i>
sēco	sectum	sēca-	sēcā-tūrūs	<i>cut</i>
sōno	sōnītum	sōna-	sōnā-tūrūs	<i>sound</i>
mōriōr	mortuūs (<i>part.</i>)	mōri-	mōri-tūrūs	<i>die</i>
ōrior	ortus	ōri-	ōri-tūrūs	<i>rise</i>

XVII. DEPONENT, SEMI-DEPONENT, AND NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

1. The Perfect Participle of Deponent Verbs has usually an Active meaning (see above, p. 131), but some Deponent Verbs use their Perf. Part. both in an Active and Passive sense : as,

confiteor,	confessus,	<i>having confessed and having been confessed.</i>
mēreor,	mēritus,	<i>having deserved and having been deserved.</i>
ādipiscor,	ādeptus,	<i>having obtained and having been obtained.</i>
mētior,	mensus,	<i>having measured and having been measured.</i>

with various others.

2. SEMI-DEPONENTS.—(i) Some Intransitive Verbs have Passive Perfect forms, and hence are called Semi-Deponents (see also p. 86) : as,

audio	<i>dare</i>	ausus sum	<i>I have dared.</i>
gaudeo	<i>rejoice</i>	gāvisus sum	<i>I have rejoiced.</i>
fido	<i>trust</i>	fisus sum	<i>I have trusted.</i>
sōleo	<i>be accustomed</i>	sōlitus sum	<i>I have been accustomed.</i>

(ii) Some Intransitive Verbs have Deponent Perfect Participles : as,

cēno (cae-),	<i>sup or dine</i>	cēnātus,	<i>having supped.</i>
prandeo,	<i>lunch</i>	pransus,	<i>having lunched.</i>
jūro,	<i>swear</i>	jūrātus,	<i>having sworn.</i>

3. NEUTER-PASSIVES have an Active form with a Passive meaning :

fio,	<i>am made.</i>	extilo,	<i>am banished.</i>
vēneo (vēnum eo),	<i>am sold.</i>	liceo,	<i>am put for sale.</i>
vāpūlo,	<i>am beaten.</i>		

XVIII. PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

I. THE FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *āvī*, *ātum* : *as*, *āmo*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions :—

<i>crēpo</i> ,	<i>crēpui</i> ,	<i>crēpītum</i> ,	<i>crēpāre</i> ,	<i>to creak.</i>
<i>cūbo</i> ,	<i>cūbui</i> ,	<i>cūbītum</i> ,	<i>cūbāre</i> ,	<i>to lie down.</i>
<i>dōmo</i> ,	<i>dōmūi</i> ,	<i>dōmītum</i> ,	<i>dōmāre</i> ,	<i>to tame.</i>
<i>sōno</i> , ¹	<i>sōnui</i> ,	<i>sōnītum</i> ,	<i>sōnāre</i> ,	<i>to sound.</i>
<i>vēto</i> ,	<i>vētui</i> ,	<i>vētītum</i> ,	<i>vētāre</i> ,	<i>to forbid.</i>
<i>tōno</i> ,	<i>tōnui</i> ,	—	<i>tōnāre</i> ,	<i>to thunder.</i>
<i>mīco</i> ,	<i>mīcui</i> ,	—	<i>mīcāre</i> ,	<i>to glitter.</i>
<i>plīco</i> ,	{ <i>plīcui</i> , <i>plīcāvi</i> , }	{ <i>plīcītum</i> , <i>plīcātum</i> , }	<i>plīcāre</i> ,	<i>to fold.</i>
<i>frīco</i> ,	<i>frīcui</i> ,	<i>frīctum</i> ,	<i>frīcāre</i> ,	<i>to rub.</i>
<i>sēco</i> , ²	<i>sēcui</i> ,	<i>sectum</i> ,	<i>sēcāre</i> ,	<i>to cut.</i>
<i>jūvo</i> , ³	<i>jūvi</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> ,	<i>jūvāre</i> ,	<i>to assist.</i>
<i>lāvo</i> (also 3 conj.) }	<i>lāvi</i> ,	{ <i>lāvātum</i> , <i>lautum</i> , <i>lōtum</i> , }	<i>lāvāre</i> ,	<i>to wash.</i>
<i>do</i> ,	<i>dēdi</i> ,	<i>dātum</i> ,	<i>dāre</i> ,	<i>to give.</i>
<i>sto</i> ,	<i>stēti</i> ,	<i>stātum</i> ,	<i>stāre</i> ,	<i>to stand.</i>

NOTE.—*Future Participles*, as a general rule, are formed from the *Supines*; but

1. *sōno* has *sōnātūrus*.

2. *sēco* „ *sēcātūrus*.

3. *jūvo* has *jūvātūrus*.

II. THE SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *uī* and *itum* : *as*, *mōneo*, *mōnuī*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions :—

		1. Perfect— <i>ui</i> .	Supine— <i>tum</i> .	
<i>dōceo</i> ,	<i>dōcui</i> ,	<i>doctum</i> ,	<i>dōcēre</i> ,	<i>to teach.</i>
<i>tēneo</i> ,	<i>tēnuī</i> ,	<i>tentum</i> ,	<i>tēnēre</i> ,	<i>to hold.</i>
<i>misceo</i> ,	<i>miscui</i> ,	{ <i>mixtum</i> , <i>mistum</i> , }	<i>miscēre</i> ,	<i>to mix.</i>
<i>torreo</i> ,	<i>torrui</i> ,	<i>tostum</i> ,	<i>torrēre</i> ,	<i>to roast.</i>
<i>sorbeo</i> ,	{ <i>sorbui</i> , <i>sorpsi</i> , }	—	<i>sorbēre</i> ,	<i>to suck up.</i>
<i>censeo</i> ,	<i>censui</i> ,	<i>censum</i> ,	<i>censēre</i> ,	<i>to assess, think.</i>
		2. Perfect— <i>ēvi</i> .	Supine— <i>ētum</i> .	
<i>dēleo</i> ,	<i>dēlēvi</i> ,	<i>dēlētum</i> ,	<i>dēlēre</i> ,	<i>to blot out, destroy.</i>
<i>flēo</i> ,	<i>flēvi</i> ,	<i>flētum</i> ,	<i>flēre</i> ,	<i>to weep.</i>
<i>neō</i> ,	<i>nēvi</i> ,	<i>nētum</i> ,	<i>nēre</i> ,	<i>to spin.</i>
{ <i>pleo</i> , only in composition.				
<i>compleo</i> ,	<i>complēvi</i> ,	<i>complētum</i> ,	<i>complēre</i> ,	<i>to fill up.</i>
<i>abōleo</i> ,	<i>abōlēvi</i> ,	<i>abōlītum</i> ,	<i>abōlēre</i> ,	<i>to abolish.</i>

3. Perfect—i (di). *Supine—sum.*

prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	to breakfast.
sēdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sēdēre,	to sit.
videō,	vidi,	visum,	vidēre,	to see.
strideo,	stridi,	—	stridēre,	to creak.

(also 3 conj.)

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

mordeo,	mōmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	to bite.
pendeo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	to hang.
spondeo,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	to promise.
tondeo,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	to shear.

4. Perfect—i (vi). *Supine—tum.*

cāveo,	cāvi,	cantum,	cāvēre,	to guard oneself.
fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	fāvēre,	to favour.
fōveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fōvēre,	to cherish.
mōveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mōvēre,	to move.
vōveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vōvēre,	to vow.

Without Supine.

pāveo,	pāvi,	—	pāvēre,	to fear.
ferveo,	{ fervi,	—	fervēre,	to boil.
	{ ferbui,			
connīveo,	{ connīvi,	—	connīvēre,	to wink.
	{ connixi,			

5. Perfect—si. *Supine—tum and sum.*

augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	to increase.
indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	to indulge.
torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	to twist.
ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	ardēre,	to blaze.
haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	to stick.
jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jūbēre,	to order.
māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānēre,	to remain.
mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	to stroke.
mulgeo,	mulsi,	multum,	mulgēre,	to milk.
rideo,	risi,	risum,	ridēre,	to laugh.
suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	to advise.
tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
lūgeo,	luxi,	(luctum,)	lūgēre,	to grieve.
algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	{ to be cold.
frigeo,	frixi,	—	frigēre,	
fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	to shine.
lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	to be light.
turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	to swell.
urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	to press.

6. Semi-Deponents.

audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	to dare.
gaudeo,	gāvisus sum,	—	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
sōleo,	sōlītus sum,	—	sōlēre,	to be accustomed.

III. THE THIRD (Consonant OR U) CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.

(a). Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—B becomes p before s and t.

carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpère,	to pluck.
glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbère,	to peel.
nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbère,	to marry.
rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpère,	to creep.
scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpère,	to scratch.
scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribère,	to write.
serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpère,	to crawl.

(b). Perfect—ui. Supine—tum or itum.

{cumbo,	incūbui,	incūbitum,	incumbère,	to lie upon.
incumbo,	strēpui,	strēpitum,	strēpère,	to make a noise.

(c). Perfect—i. Supine—tum or wantum.

rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpère,	to burst.
bībo,	bībi,	—	bībère,	to drink.
lambo,	lambi,	—	lambère,	to lick.
scābo,	scābi,	—	scābère,	to scratch.

2. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.

(a). Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—Cs and gs become x. G and qu become c before t.

dico,	dixi,	dietum,	dicère,	to say.
dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	ducère,	to lead.
cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquère,	to cook.
cingo,	cinxī,	cinctum,	cingère,	to surround.
{(ffligo, not used,	—	—	—	to strike.)
affligo,	afflixī,	afflictum,	affligère,	to strike to the ground.
frigo,	frixī,	{frictum,	frigère,	to parch, to fry.
junco,	juxī,	{frixum,	—	—
lingo,	linxī,	junctum,	jungère,	to join.
{(mungo, not used.)	—	linctum,	lingère,	to lick.
ēmungo,	ēmunxī,	ēmunctum,	ēmungère,	to wipe the nose.
plango,	planxī,	planctum,	plangère,	to beat.

rēgo,	rexī,	rectum,	rēgēre,	<i>to direct, rule.</i>
sūgo,	suxī,	suctum,	sūgēre,	<i>to suck.</i>
tēgo,	texī,	tectum,	tēgēre,	<i>to cover.</i>
{tingo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{tingēre,	<i>to dip.</i>
{tinguo,			{tinguēre,	
{ungo,	unxi,	unctum,	{ungēre,	<i>to anoint.</i>
{unguo,			{unguēre,	
(stinguo, not used.)				
exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguēre,	<i>to extinguish.</i>
trāho,	traxī,	tractum,	trāhēre,	<i>to drag.</i>
vēho,	vexī,	vectum,	vēhēre,	<i>to carry, to draw.</i>
ango,	anxi,	—	angēre,	<i>to vex.</i>
ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningēre,	<i>to snow.</i>
finġo,	finxi,	fictum,	finġēre,	<i>to mould, to invent.</i>
pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingēre,	<i>to paint.</i>
stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringēre,	<i>to grasp.</i>

(b). Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.

mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	merġēre,	<i>to sink.</i>
spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargēre,	<i>to scatter.</i>
tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	terġēre,	<i>to wipe.</i>
figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figēre,	<i>to fix.</i>
flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectēre,	<i>to bend.</i>
necto,	nexui (xi),	nexum,	nectēre,	<i>to bind.</i>
pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectēre,	<i>to comb.</i>
plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectēre,	<i>to plait.</i>

(c). Perfect—i (with Reduplication). Supine—sum and tum.

pango,	pēpġi,	pactum,	pangēre,	<i>to fix.</i>
parco,	pēperci,	parsum,	parcēre,	<i>to spare.</i>
pungo,	pūpūġi,	punctum,	pungēre,	<i>to prick.</i>
tango,	tētġi,	tactum,	tangēre,	<i>to touch.</i>
disco,	dīdīci,	—	discēre,	<i>to learn.</i>
posco,	pōposci,	—	poscēre,	<i>to demand.</i>

(d). Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

ago,	ēġi,	actum,	āġēre,	<i>to do.</i>
frango,	frēġi,	fractum,	frangēre,	<i>to break.</i>
ico,	ici,	ictum,	icēre,	<i>to strike.</i>
lēgo,	lēġi,	lectum,	lēġēre,	<i>to pick, read.</i>
linquo,	linqui,	(lictum),	linquēre,	<i>to leave.</i>
vinco,	vici,	victum,	vincēre,	<i>to conquer.</i>

(e). Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

texo,	texui,	textum,	texēre,	<i>to weave.</i>
-------	--------	---------	---------	------------------

(f). Guttural Stem disguised.

fluo,	fluxi,	fluxum,	fluēre,	<i>to flow.</i>
struo,	struxi,	structum,	struēre,	<i>to pile up.</i>
vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivēre,	<i>to live.</i>

3. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.

(a). Perfect—si. Supine—tum (sum).

NOTE.—D and t are generally dropped before s, but are sometimes changed into s.

claudio,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere,	to shut.
divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividere,	to divide.
laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedere,	to strike, to injure.
ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	ludere,	to play.
plaudio,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudere,	to clap the hands.
rado,	rasi,	rasum,	radere,	to scrape.
rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	rodere,	to gnaw.
trudo,	trusi,	trusum,	trudere,	to thrust.
{vado,	[compounds, -si, -sum]		vadere,	to go.
invado,	invasi,	invasum,	invadere,	to go against.
cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere,	to yield.
mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere,	to send.

(b). Perfect with Reduplication.

cado,	cecidī,	cāsum,	cadere,	to fall.
caedo,	cecidī,	caesum,	caedere,	to strike, to cut.
pendo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh.
tendo,	tētendi,	{ tensum, tentum,	tendere,	to stretch.
tundo,	tūtūdi,	{ tunsum, tūsum,	tundere,	to beat.
do in compos.,				to put.
abdo,	abdīdi,	abdītum,	abdere,	to put away, to hide.
addo,	addīdi,	addītum,	addere,	to put to, to add.
condo,	condīdi,	condītum,	condere,	to put together, to build, conceal.
dēdo,	dēdīdi,	dēdītum,	dēdere,	to put down, to surrender.
ēdo,	ēdīdi,	ēdītum,	ēdere,	to put forth, to publish.
indo,	indīdi,	indītum,	indere,	to put on.
perdo,	perdīdi,	perdītum,	perdere,	to ruin, to lose.
prōdo,	prōdīdi,	prōdītum,	prōdere,	to betray.
reddo,	reddīdi,	reddītum,	reddere,	to put back, to restore.
subdo,	subdīdi,	subdītum,	subdere,	to put under, to substitute.
trādo,	trādīdi,	trādītum,	trādere,	to put across, to deliver.
crēdo,	crēdīdi,	crēdītum,	crēdere,	to believe.
vendo [for vendum do],	vendīdi,	vendītum,	vendere,	to sell.
sisto,	sistī,	stātum,	sistere,	to cause to stand.

(c). Perfect—i. Supine—sum.

accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendere,	to set on fire.
cūdo,			cūdere,	to hammer.

ēdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ēdere (esse),	to eat.
(fendo, not used,				to strike.)
dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensum,	dēfendere,	to ward off, to de-
				fend.
offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendere,	to strike against, to
				offend.
fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundere,	to pour.
incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendere,	to burn.
mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandere,	to chew.
pando,	pandi,	{ pansum or	pandere,	to spread out.
		passum, }		
prēhendo,	prēhendi,	prēhensum,	prēhendere,	to grasp.
scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandere,	to climb.
{ strido,	strīdi,	—	strīdere,	to creak.
{ (also 2 conj.)				
verto,	verti,	versum,	vertere,	to turn.
findo,	fidi,	flissum,	findere,	to cleave.
scindo,	scidi,	scissum,	scindere,	to tear.
{ frendo,	—	fressum, }	frendere,	to gnash the teeth.
{ (also 2 conj.)		frēsum, }		

(d). Other Forms.

mēto,	messui,	messum,	mētēre,	to mow.
pēto,	{ pētīvi or	pētītum,	pētēre,	to seek, go for ; beg.
	pētī,			
sīdo,	{ sēdi (rarely)	—	sīdēre,	to sit down.
	sīdi,			
sterto,	stertui,	—	stertēre,	to snore.
fido,	fisus sum,	—	fidēre,	to trust.

4. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquids L, M, N.

(a). Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*itum* or *tum*.

ālō,	ālui,	{ ālītum or	ālēre,	to nourish.
		altum, }		
cōlō,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlēre,	to till.
consūlō,	consūlui,	consultum,	consulēre,	to consult.
mōlō,	mōlui,	mōlītum,	mōlēre,	to grind.
occūlō,	occūlui,	occultum,	occulēre,	to conceal.
vōlō (irr.),	vōlui,	—	{ velle [for	to wish.
			vēlēre], }	
frēmō,	frēmui,	frēmītum,	frēmēre,	to roar.
gēmō,	gēmui,	gēmītum,	gēmēre,	to groan.
trēmō,	trēmui,	—	trēmēre,	to tremble.
vōmō,	vōmui,	vōmītum,	vōmēre,	to vomit.
gignō,	gēnui,	gēnītum,	gignēre,	to produce.

(b). Perfect with Reduplication.

fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallēre,	to deceive.
pello,	pēpīli,	pulsum,	pellēre,	to drive.
cānō,	cēcīni,	cantum,	cānēre,	to sing.

(c). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmēre,	to adorn.
dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmēre,	to take away.
prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmēre,	to take forth.
sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmēre,	to take up.
tenūo,	tempsti,	temptum,	tennēre,	to despise.

(d). *Other Forms.*

percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	percellēre,	to strike down.
psallo,	psalli,	—	psallēre,	to play on a stringed instrument.
vello,	velli, vulsi,	vulsum,	vellēre,	to pluck.
tollo,	austūli,	sublātum,	tollēre,	to raise up, take away.
ēmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ēmēre,	to take or buy.
prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēmēre,	to press.
līno,	lēvi,	litum,	līnēre,	to smear.
sīno,	sīvi,	situm,	sīnēre,	to permit.

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquid R.*

cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernēre,	to sift, distinguish; to discern.
sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernēre,	to despise.
sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternēre,	to strew.
gēro,	gessi,	gestum,	gērēre,	to carry.
ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrēre,	to burn.
curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	currēre,	to run.
fēro (irr.),	tūli,	lātum,	{ferre (for) fērēre}	to bear, carry.
quaero,	quaesīvi (ii),	quaesitum,	quaerēre,	to search for, inquire.
sēro,	sēruī,	sertum,	sērēre,	to put in rows, to plant.
sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sērēre,	to sow.
tēro,	trīvi,	tritum,	tērēre,	to rub.
verro,	verri,	versum,	verrēre,	to sweep.

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in S.*

depso,	depsi,	depsum,	dopsēre,	to knead.
pinso,	pinsi,	pinsitum,	} pinsēre,	to pound.
pisso,	—	pinsum,		
piso,	—	pistum,	pisēre,	to pound.
vīso,	vīsi,	vīsum,	vīsēre,	to visit.
pōno,	pōsi,	pōsitum,	pōnēre,	to place.
arcesso,	arcessi,	arcessitum,	arcessēre,	to send for.
cāpresso,	cāpressi,	cāpressitum,	cāpressēre,	to take in hand.
facesso,	facessi,	facessitum,	facessēre,	to make, to cause.
lācesso,	lācessi,	lācessitum,	lācessēre,	to provoke.

7. Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.

Perfect—i. Supine—tum.

accuo,	accui,	accūtum,	accuere,	to sharpen.
arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguere,	to prove.
imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuere,	to soak.
induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induere,	to put on.
exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuere,	to put off.
minuo,	minui,	minūtum,	minuere,	to break up, lessen.
rŭo,*	rui,	rūtum,	ruere,	to rush.
spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuere,	to spit.
stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuere,	to set up.
suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suere,	to sew.
tribuo,	tribui,*	tribūtum,	tribuere,	to assign, give.
	lāvo,	lāvum,	lāvere,	to wash.
(also 1 Conj.)		lōtum,		
solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvēre,	to loosen.
volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvēre,	to roll.
congruo,	congrui,	—	congruere,	to agree.
luo,†	lui,	—	luere,	to atone.
(nuo,				to nod.)
abnuo,	abnui,	{ abnuītum, abnūtum, }	abnuere,	to refuse.
annuo,	annui,	—	annuere,	to assent.
mētno,	mētui,	—	mētnuere,	to fear.
pluit,	{ pluit or plūvit, }	—	pluere,	to rain.
sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuere,	to sneeze.

* rŭo, Fut. Participle ruiturus.

† lŭo, Fut. Participle luiturus.

8. Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in sco.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*; that is, denote the *beginning* of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco*, *incālui*, *incālescere*, to grow warm, from *cāleo*, *cālui*, *cālere*, to be warm. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

abŭlesco,*	abŭlēvi,	abŭlītum,	abŭlescere,	to grow out of use.
adŭlesco,*	adŭlēvi,	adŭlītum,	adŭlescere,	to grow up.
exŭlesco,*	exŭlēvi,	exŭlītum,	exŭlescere,	to grow old.
concupisco,	concupiui,	concupītum,	concupiscere,	to desire.
(cūpio)				
exardesco,	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescere,	to take fire.
(ardeo)				
revivisco,	revixi,	revictum,	reviviscere,	to come to life again.
(vivo)				
scisco,	scivi,	scītum,	sciscere,	to seek to know, to enact.
(scio)				

* abŭlesco, adŭlesco, exŭlesco are formed from an obsolete verb *ŭleo*, to grow.

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines : as,

consēnesco, (sēnex)	consēnui,	—	consēnescēre,	<i>to grow old.</i>
ingrāvesco, (grāvis)	—	—	ingrāvescēre,	<i>to grow heavy.</i>
jūvenesco, (jūvēnis)	—	—	jūvēcēre,	<i>to grow young.</i>
mātūresco, mātūrus)	mātūrui,	—	mātūrescēre,	<i>to grow ripe.</i>
obmūtesco, (mūtus)	obmūtui,	—	obmūtescēre,	<i>to grow dumb.</i>

The following Verbs in *scō* are also inceptives, though commonly treated as independent Verbs :—

cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescēre,	<i>to grow.</i>
glisco,	—	—	gliscēre,	<i>to swell.</i>
hisco,	—	—	hiscēre,	<i>to gape.</i>
nosco,*	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscēre,	<i>to learn, to know.</i>
pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascēre,	<i>to feed.</i>
quiesco,	quievi,	quietum,	quiescēre,	<i>to become quiet.</i>
suesco	suēvi,	suētum,	suescēre,	<i>to grow accustomed.</i>

* The Present signifies *I learn*; the Perfect, *I know*;
the Pluperfect, *I knew*.

THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES.

cāpio,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpēre,	<i>to take.</i>
fācio,	fēci,	factum,	fācēre,	<i>to make.</i>
jācio,	jēci,	jactum,	jācēre,	<i>to throw.</i>
fugio,	fūgi,	fūgitum,	fūgēre,	<i>to flee.</i>
fodio,	fodi,	fossum,	fodēre,	<i>to dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpēre,	<i>to seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpēri,	partum,	pārēre,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
quātio,	—	quassum,	quātēre,	<i>to shake.</i>
[comps.				
-cūtio,	-cussi,	-cussum,	-cūtēre]	
cūpio,	cūpivi (ii)	cūpitum,	cūpēre,	<i>to desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpivi (ii)	—	sāpēre,	<i>to taste; to be wise.</i>
lācio,	—	—	—	<i>to entice } in com-</i>
spēcio,	—	—	—	<i>to look } pounds.</i>

Comps. of (lācio), allīcio, illīcio, etc., exi, ectum.

” (spēcio), aspīcio, conspīcio, etc., exi, ectum.

” quātio, concūtio, incūtio, etc.

* pārio, *Future Participle* pāritūrus.

IV. THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum* : as, audio, audivi, auditum, audire, *to hear*. The following are exceptions :—

farcio,	farsi,	{fartum, (fartum)}	farcire,	to cram.
fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcire,	to prop.
haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire,	to draw (water).
sancio,	sanxi,	{sancitum or sanctum,}	sancire,	to ratify.
sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire,	to patch.
sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire,	to feel, to think.
saepio,	saepsi,	saepum,	saepire,	to fence in.
vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	to bind.
eo,	ivi (ii),	itum,	ire,	to go (p. 88).
sālio,	{sālui or sālīi,	saltum,	sālire,	to leap.
sépelio,	sépélīvi (ii)	sépultum,	sépélire,	to bury.
vénio,	vēni,	ventum,	vénire,	to come.
āmicio,	{āmicui or amixi,}	āmicum,	āmicire,	{to wrap round, clothe.
āpério,	āpérui,	āpertum,	āpérire,	to open.
ōpério,	ōpérui,	ōpertum,	ōpérire,	to cover.

V. DEPONENTS.

1. In the First Conjugation of Deponent Verbs the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

2. Second Conjugation :

fāteor,	fassus sum,	fātēri,	to confess.
liceor,	licitus sum,	licēri,	to bid at a sale.
mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	to heal.
mēreor,	mērītus sum,	mērēri,	to earn, to deserve.
mīsereor,	mīsērītus sum,	mīsērēri,	to take pity on
polliceor,	pollicītus sum,	pollicēri,	to promise.
reor,	rātus sum,	rēri,	to think.
tueor,	tuītus sum,	tuēri,	to protect.
vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērēri,	to fear.

3. Third Conjugation :

fruo,*	{frūitus sum or fructus sum,}	frui,	to enjoy.
fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	to perform.
grādior,	gressus sum,	grādi,	to step.
lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	to slip.
liq̄uor,	—	liqui,	to melt, trickle.
lōquor,	lōcūtus sum,	lōqui,	to speak.
mōrior,†	mortuus sum,	mōri,	to die.
nātor,	{nixus sum or nisus sum,}	nīti,	to strain, strive.

* fruor, Future Participle frūitūrus.
† mōrior, " " mōritūrus.

pātor,	passus sum,	pāti,	to suffer.
{(plecto)			
amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	to embrace.
complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	to embrace.
plector,	—	plecti,	to smart, be punished.
quēror,	questus sum,	quēri,	to complain.
ringor,	—	ringi,	to show the teeth,
			to snarl.
sēquor,	sēcūtus sum,	sēqui,	to follow.
ūtor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	to use.
{(verto)			
rēvertor,	rēversus sum,	rēverti,	to return.
vescor,	—	vesci,	to eat.

The following have the inceptive ending :—

{āpiscor,	aptus sum,	āpisci,	to obtain.
{ādipiscor,	ādeptus sum,	ādipisci,	to obtain.
commīniscor,	commentus sum,	commīnisci,	to devise.
rēmīniscor,	—	rēmīnisci,	to remember.
dēfētiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfētisci,	to grow weary.
expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	to wake up.
irascor,	irātus,	irasci,	to be angry.
nanciscor,	{nactus or nactus sum,	nancisci,	to fall in with.
nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	to be born.
obliscor,	oblītus sum,	oblivisci,	to forget.
pāciscor,	pactus sum,	pācisci,	to make an agreement.
prōficiācor,	prōfectus sum,	prōficiāci,	to set out.
uliscor,	ultus sum,	ulisci,	to avenge.

4. Fourth Conjugation :

assentior,	assensus sum,	assentiri,	to agree to.
blandior,	blanditus sum,	blandiri,	to flatter.
expērior,	expertus sum,	expēiri,	to try.
largior,	largitus sum,	largiri,	to give bountifully
mentior,	mentitus sum,	mentiri,	to lie.
mētior,	mensus sum,	mētiri,	to measure.
mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōliri,	to labour.
oppērior,	{oppertus sum, {oppēritus sum,	oppēiri,	to wait for.
ordior,	orsus sum,	ordiri,	to begin.
ōrior,*	ortus sum,	ōiri,	to rise (of the sun, &c.)
partior,	partītus sum,	partiri,	to divide.
pōtior,†	pōītus sum,	pōtiri,	to obtain possession of.
sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortiri,	to take by lot.

* ōrior, *Future Participle* ōrītūrus. In some tenses forms are borrowed from the 3rd Conjugation: *Pres. Indic.* ōrēris or ōriris, ōrītūrus, ōrīmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ōrērer and ōrīrer are found.

† In the *Imperf. Subj.* both pōtīrer and pōtērer are found.

XIX. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

- I. *coepī*, *I begin*.
 II. *mēmīnī*, *I remember*.
 III. *ōdi*, *I hate*.

	INDICATIVE.		
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>coepī</i>	<i>mēmīnī</i>	<i>ōdi</i> .
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>coepēram</i>	<i>mēmīnēram</i>	<i>ōdēram</i> .
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	<i>coepēro</i>	<i>mēmīnēro</i>	<i>ōdēro</i> .

	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>coepērim</i>	<i>mēmīnērim</i>	<i>ōdērim</i> .
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>coepissem</i>	<i>mēmīnissem</i>	<i>ōdissem</i> .

	IMPERATIVE.	
(wanting.)	<i>memento</i>	(wanting.)
	<i>mementōtē</i>	

	INFINITIVE.		
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>coepissē</i>	<i>mēmīnissē</i>	<i>ōdissē</i> .

	PARTICIPLE.		
<i>Future.</i>	<i>coeptūrtis</i>	(wanting.)	<i>ōsūrtis</i> .

PASSIVE VOICE (*coepi* only).

	INDICATIVE.		
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>coeptus sum.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>coeptus eram.</i>
	<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	<i>coeptus ēro.</i>	

	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>coeptus sim.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>coeptus essem.</i>

	INFINITIVE.
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>coeptus essē.</i>

N.B.—The Passive forms are used when the Infinitive which follows is in the Passive voice : as, *Sāguntum coeptum est oppugnāri*, *Saguntum was begun to be besieged*.

IV. *āio*, *I say* :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>
<i>S. āio</i>	—	<i>S. āiēbam</i>	—
<i>āis</i>	—	<i>āiēbās</i>	—
<i>ait</i>	<i>āiāt</i>	<i>āiēbāt</i>	—
<i>P. —</i>	—	<i>P. āiēbāmūs</i>	—
—	—	<i>āiēbātīs</i>	—
<i>aiunt</i>	<i>āiant</i>	<i>āiēbant.</i>	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—*āiens* (rare).

V. *inquam*, say I:—

INDICATIVE.		<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>		
<i>inquam</i>		<i>inquāēs</i>	<i>inquistī</i>
<i>inquīs</i>		<i>inquēt</i>	<i>inquīt</i>
<i>inquīt</i>	<i>inquēbāt</i>		
<i>inquimūs</i>		IMPERATIVE.	
<i>inquītis</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>inquunt</i>	<i>inquēbant</i>	<i>inquē</i>	<i>inquito.</i>

Obs. *Inquam*, like the English *say I*, *says he*, is always used parenthetically, after other words in a sentence.

VI. *fāri*, to *speak*, a Deponent:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present S. fārē</i>	<i>fārī</i>
<i>fātur</i>	—	—	—
<i>fantur</i>		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	<i>fantis</i> , &c. (without <i>Nom.</i>)
<i>fābūr, fābūtūr</i>	—	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>fātus</i> (ā, um)
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Gerundive.</i>	<i>fandūs</i> (ā, um)
<i>fātus sum</i> , &c.	<i>fātus sim</i> , &c.	—	—
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		SUPINE— <i>fātū.</i>	
<i>fātūs eram</i> , &c.	<i>fātūs essem</i> , &c.	GERUND— <i>fandī</i> , &c.	

VII. IMPERATIVES AND INFINITIVES.

1. *āvē* (or *hāvē*), *āvētē*, *hail*. INFIN. *āvērē*.
2. *salvē*, *salvētē*, *hail*, *welcome*. INFIN. *salvērē*.
3. *cēdō*, *cēdītē* (or *cettē*), *give me*, *tell me*.
4. *āpāgē*, *āpāgītē*, *begone*.

XX. VERBS DERIVED FROM OTHER VERBS.

1. FREQUENTATIVE VERBS (1st Conjug.) express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding *ito* to the Present-Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine-Stem of the other Conjugations, omitting the final vowel: as,

<i>clām-ito</i> ,	<i>I cry out often</i> ,	from <i>clāmo</i> .
<i>lect-ito</i> ,	<i>I read often</i> ,	„ <i>lēgo</i> , <i>lectum</i> .
<i>scrip-ito</i> ,	<i>I write often</i> ,	„ <i>scribo</i> , <i>scriptum</i> .
<i>ven-ito</i> ,	<i>I come often</i> ,	„ <i>vēnio</i> , <i>ventum</i> .

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially those derived from Verbs of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the First Conjugation: as,

curso,	<i>I run hither and thither,</i>	from curro, cursum.
pulso,	<i>I beat,</i>	„ pello, pulsum.

2. INCEPTIVE VERBS (3rd Conjug.) express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding *sco* (*asco, esco, isco*) to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs, dropping the final vowel of the Stem: as,

lāb-asco,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābo.
cāl-esco,	<i>I grow warm,</i>	„ cāleo.
sēn-esco,	<i>I grow old,</i>	„ sēnex.

Obs. See list of Inceptive Verbs, pp. 143, 144.

3. DESIDERATIVE VERBS (4th Conjug.) express a desire to do something, and are formed from the Supine by adding *ūrio*, dropping the *um* of the termination: as,

ēs-ūrio,	<i>I long to eat,</i>	from ēdo, ēsum.
script-ūrio,	<i>I long to write,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum.

XXI. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives which are compared irregularly follow their formation in the Comparative and Superlative; as, *fācilis, easy*, Superlative *fācilissimus*, with corresponding adverb *fācilimē, very easily*; *magnificus, magnificent*, Sup. *magnificentissimus*, with corresponding adverb *magnificentissimē, most magnificently*. The following are the principal Adverbs which have irregularities of formation:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bēnē, <i>well</i>	mēlius	optimē
mālē, <i>badly, ill</i>	pējus	pessimē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
[magnōpēre, <i>greatly</i>]	māgis	maximē
pārum, <i>little, too little</i>	mīnus	mīnimē
paulum, -o, <i>a little</i>		
prōpē, <i>near</i>	prōpius	proximē
[prae, <i>before</i>]	prius	primum

XXII. CONJUNCTIONS.

I. CONNECTIVE.

ēt	} <i>and.</i>	nēquē, nēc	} <i>neither, nor.</i>
atquē, āc		nēvē, neu	
-quē	} <i>either, or.</i>	sivē, seu	
aut		ētiam	} <i>also.</i>
vēl, -vē		quōquē	

II. ADVERSATIVE.

sēd	} <i>but.</i>	tāmēn	} <i>yet, nevertheless.</i>
autem		vērūm, vērō	
ast, āt	} <i>and yet.</i>	ēnimvērō	
atquī		attāmēn	

III. CONDITIONAL.

sī	<i>if.</i>	č am	} <i>provided that.</i>
nīsī, nī	<i>if not.</i>	mōdō	
sīn	<i>if not; but if.</i>	dummōdō	

IV. CONCESSIVE.

etsī	} <i>although.</i>	quamvis	} <i>however much, al-</i>
ētiamsī		cūm (quūm)	
tāmetsī		quīdem	
licēt		ūt	
quanquam			<i>although.</i>

V. CAUSAL.

cūm (quūm)	<i>whereas, since.</i>	quandōquīdem	} <i>seeing that.</i>
quā, quōd	<i>because.</i>	nam	
quōniam	<i>since.</i>	ēnim	

VI. CONCLUSIVE.

ergō	} <i>therefore.</i>	itāquē	} <i>and so, accordingly</i>
ideircō		quōcircā	
idēō		quārē	
īgītūr		quāproptēr	} <i>wherefore.</i>

VII. FINAL.

ūt	} <i>that, in order that.</i>	nē	} <i>that not, lest.</i>
quō		nēvē, neu	
quīn	} <i>that not.</i>		} <i>and that . . . not.</i>
quōmīnūs			

VIII. TEMPORAL.

*antēquam	} <i>before that.</i>	dōnēc	} <i>so long as, until.</i>
*priusquam		quoad	
*postquam	<i>after that.</i>	dūm	

sīmūlatque (āc), or as two words, sīmūl atque (āc), as soon as.

* Also written as two words, which may be separated from each other: see Ex. xxxii A, 10.

VOCABULARIES.

m. = masculine.

f. = feminine.

n. = neuter.

c. = common gender, that is, masculine and feminine.

Vocabulary 1.

āla, f.	a wing.
āquila, f.	an eagle.
cōlōnia, f.	a colony.
cōlumba, f.	a dove.
cūrōna, f.	a crown.
fēmīna, f.	a woman.
filīa, f.	a daughter.
insūla, f.	an island.
mensa, f.	a table.
ōra, f.	a coast.
pēcūnia, f.	money.
porta, f.	a gate.
pūella, f.	a girl.
rēgina, f.	a queen.
Rōma, f.	Rome (the city).
rōsa, f.	a rose.

Vocabulary 2.

agricōla, m.	a husbandman.
amicitiā, f.	friendship.
Britannia, f.	Britain.
causa, f.	a cause.
Eurōpa, f.	Europe.
Gallia, f.	Gaul (now France).
glōria, f.	glory.
Græciā, f.	Greece.
inōcūla, c.	an inhabitant.
inimicitia, f.	enmity.
Italia, f.	Italy.
nauta, m.	a sailor.
patriā, f.	a native land, country.
pōeta, m.	a poet.
pugna, f.	a battle.
Sicilia, f.	Sicily.
vita, f.	life.

Vocabulary 3.

amicus, m.	a friend.
avus, m.	a grandfather.
dōminus, m.	a lord, master.
ēquus, m.	a horse.
filius, m.	a son.
fluvius, m.	a river.
gladius, m.	a sword.
hortus, m.	a garden.
inimicus, m.	an enemy (unfriendly person).
Rhēnus, m.	the Rhine.
Rhōdānus, m.	the Rhone.
ripa, f.	a bank.
servus, m.	a slave.
taurus, m.	a bull.

Vocabulary 4.

ager, m.	a field, land.
gēner, m.	a son-in-law.
liber, m.	a book.
māgister, m.	a master, teacher.
mīnister, m.	a servant.
puer, m.	a boy.
socer, m.	a father-in-law.

Note. Mīnister, liber, āger are declined like māgister. Socer, gēner are declined like puer.

Vocabulary 5.

argentum, n.	silver.
aurum, n.	gold.
bellum, n.	war.
caelum, n.	heaven.
diligentiā, f.	diligence.
dōnum, n.	a gift.

gandŭm, n.	joy.
metallum, n.	a metal.
oppidum, n.	a town.
praemium, n.	a reward.
regnum, n.	a kingdom.
scutum, n.	a shield.
templum, n.	a temple.
*Dĕus, m.	a god.
discipulus, m.	a pupil, scholar.
morbus, m.	a disease.
mŭrus, m.	a wall.
Rōmānus, m.	a Roman.
terra, f.	the earth, land.

* Votive Singular same as
Nom.: Dĕus: see p. 22.

Vocabulary 6.

acutus, a, um,	sharp, pointed.
albus, a, um,	white.
altus, a, um,	high, deep.
bellicosus, a, um,	warlike.
bŏnus, a, um,	good.
grātus, a, um,	pleasing.
lātus, a, um,	wide, broad.
longus, a, um,	long.
magnus, a, um,	great.
mālus, a, um,	bad, wicked.
molestus, a, um,	troublesome.
multus, a, um,	much, many.
noxius, a, um,	hurtful, inju- rious.
parvus, a, um,	small, little.
rāpidus, a, um,	rapid.
splendidus, a, um,	splendid, bright.
timidus, a, um,	timid.
aeger, gra, grum	sick.
miser, ĕra, ĕrum,	wretched.
niger, gra, grum,	black.
pulcher, chra, chrum,	beautiful.
sacer, ora, crum,	sacred.
tener, ĕra, ĕrum,	tender.
exemplum, n.	an example.
hasta, f.	a spear.
nŭmerus, m.	a number.
pĕricŭlum, n.	danger.

Note. Grātus, molestus, noxius
are followed by the Dative case.

Vocabulary 7.

hiems, hiemis, f.	winter.
trabs, trābis, f.	a beam.

urbs, urbis, f.	a city.
arx, arcis, f.	a citadel.
dux, dūcis, c.	a leader, general.
pax, pācis, f.	peace.
jūdex, jūdĭcis, c.	a judge.
lex, lĕgis, f.	a law.
rex, rĕgis, m.	a king.
bĕnignus, a, um,	kind.
firmus, a, um,	strong.
jūcundus, a, um,	pleasant.
justus, a, um,	just.
Rōmŭlus, i, m.	Romulus.
sĕvĕrus, a, um,	severe.

Vocabulary 8.

cŏmes, cŏmĭtis, c.	a companion.
custos, custōdis, c.	a guardian.
ĕques, ĕquĭtis, m.	a horse-soldier.
lāpis, lāpĭdis, m.	a stone.
mĭles, mĭlĭtis, c.	a soldier.
mors, mortis, f.	death.
obses, obsĭdis, c.	a hostage.
pĕdes, pĕdĭtis, m.	a foot-soldier.
aestas, tātis, f.	a summer.
civitas, tātis, f.	a state, country.
tempestas, tātis, f.	a tempest.
vŏluntas, tātis, f.	a wish, will.
nox, noctis, f.	night.
au(c)tumnus, i, m.	autumn.
nātŭra, ae, f.	nature.
clārus, a, um,	clear, renowned.

Vocabulary 9.

frāter, tris, m.	a brother.
māter, tris, f.	a mother.
pāter, tris, m.	a father.
agger, ĕris, m.	a mound.
cālor, ōris, m.	heat.
clāmor, ōris, m.	a shout.
cŏlor, ōris, m.	colour.
lābor, ōris, m.	labour, hardship.
ōdor, ōris, m.	a smell, scent.
sŏror, ōris, f.	a sister.
victor, ōris, m.	a conqueror.
flŏs, ōris, m.	a flower.
sŏl, sŏlis, m.	the sun.
castra, ōrum, n.pl.	a camp.
tŏtus, a, um,	whole (see p. 23).
fossa, ae, f.	a ditch.
mŭnimentum, i, n.	a fortification.
praeda, ae, f.	booty.
vārius, a, um,	different, va- rious.

Vocabulary 10.

lĕo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a lion.</i>
Jūno, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Juno.</i>
pāvo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a peacock.</i>
sermo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a discourse.</i>
consuetūdo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>custom, habit.</i>
hōmo, īnis, <i>c.</i>	<i>a man, a human being.</i>
multitūdo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>a multitude.</i>
virgo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>a maiden.</i>
orātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>an orator.</i>
*alter, ēra, ērum, <i>second (another).</i>	
certus, a, um,	<i>certain.</i>
dĕa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>a goddess.</i>
doctus, a, um,	<i>learned.</i>
infinītus, a, um,	<i>unbounded, infinite.</i>
Mīnerva, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Minerva.</i>
validus, a, um,	<i>strong.</i>
* The Genitive Singular of alter is altĕrius, Dat. altĕri: see pp. 23, 24.	

Vocabulary 11.

cīvis, is, <i>c.</i>	<i>a citizen.</i>
classis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a fleet.</i>
hostis, is, <i>c.</i>	<i>an enemy (public enemy).</i>
turris, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a tower.</i>
vallis (-es), is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a valley.</i>
vestis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a garment.</i>
caedes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>slaughter.</i>
nubes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a cloud.</i>
rūpes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a rock.</i>
angustus, a, um,	<i>narrow.</i>
āter, ātra, ātrum,	<i>black.</i>
dūrus, a, um,	<i>hard.</i>
nix, nivis, <i>f.</i>	<i>snow.</i>
nōtus, a, um,	<i>known.</i>
pĕritus, a, um,	<i>skilful.</i>
Rōmānus, a, um,	<i>Roman.</i>

Vocabulary 12.

grāmen, īnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>grass.</i>
nōmen, īnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a name.</i>
gĕnus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a race, a class.</i>
opus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a work.</i>
sidus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a star, constellation.</i>
scālus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a crime.</i>
dĕcus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>an ornament.</i>
corpus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a body.</i>

frigus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>cold.</i>
litus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a shore.</i>
tempus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>time.</i>
cāput, itis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a head.</i>
crūs, crūris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a leg.</i>
fulgur, ūris, <i>n.</i>	<i>lightning.</i>
os, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a mouth.</i>
rĕte, is, <i>n.</i>	<i>a net.</i>
māre, is, <i>n.</i>	<i>the sea.</i>
ānimāl, ālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>an animal.</i>
calcār, āris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a spur.</i>
vectigāl, ālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a tax.</i>
annus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a year.</i>
antīquus, a, um,	<i>ancient.</i>
aureus, a, um,	<i>golden.</i>
balaena, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>a whale.</i>
Carthāgo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Carthage (a city in the north of Africa).</i>

Cicĕro, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero (a celebrated Roman orator).</i>
-------------------------	--

dōmīcīlium, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>abode.</i>
ēlēphantus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>an elephant.</i>
ira, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>anger.</i>
nōvus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
ocūlus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>an eye.</i>
piscis, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>a fish.</i>
profundus, a, um,	<i>deep.</i>

Vocabulary 13.

ācer, ācris, ācre,	<i>keen, sharp.</i>
cĕler, ēris, ēre,	<i>swift.</i>
brĕvis, e,	<i>short.</i>
dulcis, e,	<i>sweet.</i>
difficilis, e,	<i>difficult.</i>
facilis, e,	<i>easy.</i>
fīdĕlis, e,	<i>faithful.</i>
lĕvis, e,	<i>light.</i>
omnis, e,	<i>all, every.</i>
ūtilis, e,	<i>useful.</i>
audax, ācis,	<i>bold.</i>
rāpax, ācis,	<i>rapacious.</i>
fĕlix, īcis,	<i>fortunate, successful.</i>
vĕlox, ōcis,	<i>swift.</i>
ingens, entis,	<i>huge, immense.</i>
praesens, entis,	<i>present.</i>
praestans, antis,	<i>excellent.</i>
pōtens, entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
prūdens, entis,	<i>prudent.</i>
arma, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	<i>arms.</i>
carmen, īnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a song.</i>

consilium, i, n.	plan, counsel.
furor, ōris, m.	madness.
humānus, a, um,	human.
initium, i, n.	a beginning.
nāvis, is, f.	a ship.
Persa, ae, m.	a Persian.
sagitta, ae, f.	an arrow.
via, ae, f.	a way, a road.
vetus, vētēris,	old.
vinum, i, n.	wine.
vulnus, ēris, n.	a wound.

Vocabulary 14.

acus, ūs, f.	a needle.
arcus, ūs, m.	a bow.
auditus, ūs, m.	hearing.
cursus, ūs, m.	running.
equitatus, ūs, m.	cavalry.
exercitus, ūs, m.	an army.
figus, ūs and i, f.	a fig, fig-tree.
fructus, ūs, m.	fruit.
magistratus, ūs, m.	a magistrate.
manus, ūs, f.	a hand.
peditatus, ūs, m.	infantry.
portus, ūs, m.	a harbour.
quercus, ūs, f.	an oak, oak-tree.
sensus, ūs, m.	a sense.
visus, ūs, m.	seeing.
cornu, ūs, n.	a horn.
genu, ūs, n.	a knee.
auris, is, f.	an ear.
cervus, i, m.	a stag.
caelestis, e,	belonging to the heavens: hence

arcus caelestis,	the rainbow.
instrumentum, i, n.	an instrument.
magnificus, a, um,	magnificent.
tutus, a, um,	safe.
Scythae, arum,	the Scythians.

m. pl.	
sēdes, is, f.	a seat.
vōluptas, tātis, f.	pleasure.
-quē (always at-	and.
tached to the	
word which it	
connects with	
another).	

Vocabulary 15.

acies, ēi, f.	a line of battle.
dies, ēi, m. & f. in	a day.
sing., only m.	
in plur.	

facies, ēi, f.	figure, counten-
	ance.
fides, ēi, f.	faith, fidelity.
plānitēs, ēi, f.	a plain.
rēs, ēi, f.	a thing.
segnitēs, ēi, f.	slowness, in-
	dolence.
spes, ēi, f.	hope.
crēator, ōris, m.	creator.
dōmīna, ae, f.	mistress.
fortūna, ae, f.	fortune.
rārus, a, um,	rare.
sērēnus, a, um,	clear.
victōria, ae, f.	a victory.

Vocabulary 16.

arbor, ōris, f.	a tree.
bestia, ae, f.	a beast.
cānis, is, c.	a dog.
conscientia, ae, f.	conscience.
dēbilis, e,	feeble.
divitiae, arum, f.	riches.
(only pl.)	
flūmen, inis, n.	a current, river.
fortis, e,	strong, brave.
fulmen, inis, n.	lightning, a thunderbolt.
fūnus, ēris, n.	a funeral.
immortalis, e,	immortal.
jūvenis, is, c.	a young man or woman.
mōnumentum, i, n.	a monument.
mortalis, e,	mortal.
Neptūnus, i, m.	Neptune.
pauci, ae, a (pl.)	few.
plēnus, a, um	full.
(with gen.)	
silva, ae, f.	a wood.

Vocabulary 17.

culpa, ae, f.	blame, fault.
Graecus, a, um.	Grecian, Greek;
	pl. m., Graeci,
	orum, the
	Greeks.
hōnor, ōris, m.	an honour.
indoctus, a, um,	unlearned.
inimicus, a, um,	unfriendly.
laus, laudis, f.	praise.
mēmōrābilis, e,	memorable.
vērū, a, um,	true.
virtūs, ūtis, f.	valour, virtue.

Vocabulary 18.

adulatio, ōnis, f.	flattery.
amābilis, e,	lovely.
amor, ōris, m.	love.
asper, ēra, ērum,	rough, rugged.
Cato, ōnis, m.	Cato, a noble Roman.
ferrum, i, n.	iron.
Helvētia, ae, f.	the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).
hibernus, a, um,	winter, of winter.
imāgo, inis, f.	a likeness, portrait, image.
improbus, a, um,	dishonest, wicked.
iter, itinēris, n.	a journey. [ed.
lēpus, ōris, m.	a hare.
lūna, ae, f.	the moon.
lux, lūcis, f.	light.
*mēus, a, um,	my, mine.
mons, montis, m.	a mountain.
nihil, indec. n	nothing.
nōn, adv.	not.
odium, i, n.	hatred.
perniciosus, a, um,	destructive, baneful.
quā, adv. & conj.	than, as.
rādix, icis, f.	a root.
sāpientia, ae, f.	wisdom.
semper, adv.	always, ever.
simulatio, ōnis, f.	a pretence.
sonitus, ūs, m.	a sound.
spēratus, a, um,	hoped for.
suāvis, e,	sweet, delightful.
sūus, a, um,	his own, her own, its own, their own.
tēnis, e,	thin, slender.
tranquillus, a, um,	calm.
tūus, a, um,	thy, thine; your, yours.
unquam, adv.	at any time, ever.
vēr, vēris, n.	the spring.
vultur, ūris, m.	a vulture.

* See p. 33.

Vocabulary 19.

Alexander, dri, m. Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.

*Augustus, i, m.	August, the 8th month of the year.
centuria, ae, f.	a century.
cērasus, i, f.	a cherry-tree.
cērasum, i, n.	a cherry.
cōhors, rtis, f.	a cohort.
consul, ūlis, m.	a consul.
injustus, a, um,	unjust.
lēgio, ōnis, f.	a legion.
Mācedo, ōnis, m.	a Macedonian.
mālus, i, f.	an apple-tree.
mālum, i, n.	an apple.
mānipulus, i, m.	a manipule.
mensis, is, m.	a month.
mītis, e,	mild.
os, ossis, n.	a bone.
pars, partis, f.	a part.
pīrus, i, f.	a pear-tree.
pīrum, i, n.	a pear.
prunus, i, f.	a plum-tree.
prunum, i, n.	a plum.
sāpiens, ntis, adj.	wise, a wise man.
Xerxes, is, m.	Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.

* The month of August, previously called Sextilis, was named after the emperor Augustus.

Vocabulary 20.

attentus, a, um,	attentive.
bēātus, a, um,	happy.
cārus, a, um,	dear.
contentus, a, um,	contented.
diligens, ntis,	diligent, careful.
dives, itis,	rich.
ignāvia, ae, f.	cowardice, indolence.
jūs, jūris, n.	right, law.
laetus, a, um,	joyful.
liber, ēra, ērum,	free.
mēmor, ōris,	mindful.
noster, tra, trum,	our, ours.
nunc, adv.	now.
pauper, ēris,	poor.
praeceptor, ōris, m.	a teacher.
prōbus, a, um,	good, upright.
saepē, adv.	often.
sālūs, ūtis, f.	safety.
sors, rtis, f.	a lot.

Tītus, i (T.), m.	Titus, a common Roman fore-sad. [name.
tristis, e,	sad.
vester, tra, trum,	your, yours.
sī, conj.	if.

Vocabulary to Ex. 21, 22, 23.

ānīmus, i, m.	mind; spirit; soul; the feelings.
auctōritas, ātis, f.	authority.
*autem, conj.	but.
auxīlium, i, n.	help, aid.
cūpīditas, ātis, f.	desire, passion.
Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m.	Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.
industrialis, a, um,	industrious, busy.
īners, rtis,	helpless, sluggish, idle.
lībēri, ōrum, m. pl.	children.
mēmōria, ae, f.	memory.
pārens, entis, c.	a parent.
planta, ae, f.	a sprout, plant.
proelium, i, n.	a battle.

* The proper position of *autem* is after the first word of the clause to which it belongs.

Vocabulary 24.

aeternus, a, um,	eternal.
bēlua, bellūa, ae, f.	a great beast.
Cimbri, ōrum, m.	the Cimbrians, a Celtic tribe.
cōr, cordis, n.	a heart.
ēlégans, ntis,	elegant, exquisite.
fīdēlis, e,	faithful.
fīdus, a, um,	
fons, ntis, m.	a fountain.
Livius, i, m.	Livy, a Roman historian.
mūlier, ēris, f.	a woman, wife.
nūquam, adv.	never.
Sallustius, i, m.	Sallust, a Roman historian.
salvus, a, um,	safe.
sanguis, īnis, m.	blood.
scriptor, ōris, m.	a writer, author.

Vocabulary 25.

(A, B, C.)

N.B.—Infinitive of 1st Conjugation formed from Pres. Indic. by changing o into āre; as, aedificō, aedificāre; crēo, crēāre.

aedificō, āvi, ātum, I build.

1.

ambūlo, āvi, ātum, I walk.

castigo, āvi, ātum, I chastise.

crēo, āvi, ātum, I create, make.

cūro, āvi, ātum, I take care.

do, dēdi, dātum, I give.

dāre,

ēmendo, āvi, ātum, I improve.

ēmigro, āvi, ātum, I depart.

expugno, āvi, ātum, I take by storm.

fīrmo, āvi, ātum, I strengthen.

flo, flāvi, flātum, I blow.

flāre,

habito, āvi, ātum, I dwell.

intro, āvi, ātum, I enter.

iūdicō, āvi, ātum, I judge.

laudo, āvi, ātum, I praise.

mūto, āvi, ātum, I change.

oppugno, āvi, ātum, I attack, assault.

adorn.

orno, āvi, ātum, I adorn.

pāro, āvi, ātum, I prepare, get,

gain.

pugno, āvi, ātum, I fight.

rēcresco, āvi, ātum, I refresh.

vasto, āvi, ātum, I lay waste.

vigilo, āvi, ātum, I watch, I am

awake.

vītūpēro, āvi, ātum, I blame, find

fault with.

aedificiūm, i, n.

Cōrinthus, i, f.

cum (quum), conj.

diligenter, adv.

dum, conj.

fraus, fraudis, f.

jam, adv.

libertas, tātis, f.

littēra, a letter of the

littēra, ae, f.

littērae, letters, learn-

littērae, arum, f.

pl.

ing; also, an

epistle, letter.

mōs, mōris, m.	a manner, cus-
nēmo, inem	nobody. [tom.
(no Gen. or Abl.), c.	
ōpulentus, a, um,	wealthy.
placidus, a, um,	quiet.
prōbitas, ātis, f.	honesty, integ-
	rity.
somnus, i, m.	sleep.
tīmor, ōris, m.	fear.
valētudo, īnis, f.	health.
ventus, i, m.	wind.

(D, E, F.)

advento, āvi,	I am on 'the
ātum, l.	point of ar-
	riving.
canto, āvi, ātum,	I sing.
dēlecto, āvi, ātum,	I delight, amuse.
dīmīco, āvi, ātum,	I fight (a battle).
dūbito, āvi, ātum,	I doubt.
erro, āvi, ātum,	I err, make a
	mistake.
exhīlāro, āvi, ātum,	I cheer.
impēro, āvi, ātum,	I command.
(with dat.)	
libēro, āvi, ātum,	I free, deliver.
occūpo, āvi, ātum,	I seize upon.
opto, āvi, ātum,	I wish, desire.
porto, āvi, ātum,	I carry.
rēdāmo, āvi, ātum,	I love in return.
rēnovo, āvi, ātum,	I make new
	again, restore.
servo, āvi, ātum,	I preserve, save.
sūpēro, āvi, ātum,	I overcome.
tracto, āvi, ātum,	I handle, deal
	with.

āb (ā, abs), prep. from, by.
(with abl.)

dūbīus, a, um,	doubtful.
fortīter, adv.	bravely.
fortīssimē, adv.	very bravely.
Hannībal, ālis, m.	Hannibal, the
	great Cartha-
	ginian general.
hērī, adv.	yesterday.
intēritus, ūs, m.	destruction.
itā, adv. (from is,	in that way, so,
id)	thus.
luscīnīa, ae, f.	a nightingale.

mājores, um, m. pl.	ancestors.
rectus, a, um,	straight, right.
statio, ōnis, f.	a post, station.
terror, ōris, m.	terror, alarm.

Vocabulary 26.

N.B.—Infinitive of 2nd Conjugation formed from Pres. Indic. by changing ēo into ēre; as, dēb-ēo, dēb-ēre; dūc-ēo, dūc-ēre; fl-ēo, fl-ēre.

cūercēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I restrain, curb.
dēbeo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I owe, I ought.
dīlēo, ēvi, ētum, 2.	I destroy.
displicēo, ūi, ītum,	I displease.

2. (with dat.)

dōcēo, docūi, doc-	I teach. (Takes
tum, 2.	two accusa-
	tives.)

exercēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I exercise.
flēo, flēvi, flētum, 2.	I weep.
flōrēo, ūi, 2.	I bloom, flourish.
*gaudēo, gāvīsus	I rejoice.

sum, gaudēre, 2.

hābēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I have.
mēreō, ūi, ītum, 2.	I deserve.
mōuēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I advise, warn.
nōcēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I hurt, harm.

(with dat.)

pārēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I obey.
---------------------	---------

(with dat.)

placēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I please, am
(with dat.)	pleasing to.
præbēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I furnish, af-
	ford, exhibit.
terrēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I terrify, fright-
	en, alarm.
vālēo, ūi, ītum, 2.	I am strong, in
	good health.

* The Verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Semi-deponents. (See p. 86.)

ars, artis, f.	art, handicraft.
avis, is, f.	a bird.
Athēnīensis, e,	Athenian; usu.
	m. pl., the
	Athenians.
bēnē, adv.	well.
Caesar, āris, m.	Caesar, a fu-
	mous Roman.
cantus, ūs, m.	a song.
dīū, adv.	for a long time.

divinus, a, um,	belonging to the gods, divine.
Lātinus, a, um,	Latin.
lingua, ae, f.	tongue, language.
praeceptum, i, n.	precept, instruction, lesson.
Pompēius, i, m.	Pompey, the rival of Caesar.
quā, } quod, }	conj. because.
saepeissimē, adv.	very often.
sēnectūs, ūtis, f.	old age.
Sōlōn, ōnis, m.	Solon, an Athenian lawgiver.
tēmēritas, ātis, f.	rashness.

Vocabulary 27.

N.B.—Infinitive of 3rd Conjugation formed from Pres. Indic., by changing o into ēre: as, absūm-o, absūm-ēre; cing-o, cing-ēre; contrāh-o, contrāh-ēre.

absūmo, sumpsi,	I consume, cut off, destroy.
cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3.	I surround.
contemno, tempsi,	I despise.
temptum, 3.	
contrāho, traxi,	I draw or bring together.
tractum, 3.	
convolo, āvi, ātum,	I fly or rush
āre, 1.	together.
corrigo, rexi, rectum, 3.	I correct.
dēfendo, di, sum, 3.	I defend.
dēsēro, rui, rtum, 3.	I abandon.
dētēgo, xi, ctum, 3.	I discover.
dico, xi, ctum, 3.	I say, speak.
disco, didici, —, 3.	I learn.
dūco, xi, ctum, 3.	I lead.
ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.	I buy.
excūlo, cūlui, cultum, 3.	I cultivate carefully, educate.
institūto, ti, ūtum, 3.	I appoint, institute.
instrūto, xi, ctum, 3.	I arrange, draw up in order.
jungo, junxi, junctum, 3.	I join.
lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.	I gather, read.

narro, āvi, ātum,	I relate.
āre, 1.	
pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3.	I paint, embroider.
rēgo, rexi, rectum, 3.	I rule.
scribo, psi, ptum, 3.	I write.
solvō, vi, ūtum, 3.	I loosen, pay.
specto, āvi, ātum,	I look at, look on.
āre, 1.	
tēgo, texi, tectum, 3.	I cover.
trāho, traxi, tractum, 3.	I draw, drag.
triumpho, āvi, ātum, āre, 1.	I triumph.
volo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I fly.
Cāmillus, i, m.	Camillus, a Roman general.
Cātīlina, ae, m.	Catiline.
conjūrātio, ōnis, f.	a conspiracy.
cōpia, ae, f.	plenty.
cōpiae, ārum, f. pl.	forces.
currus, ūs, m.	a chariot.
fērē, adv.	almost, commonly.
Hellespontus, i, m.	the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).
impērator, ōris, m.	a commander, a general.
in, prep. (with acc.)	into.
incendium, i, n.	a fire, conflagration.
innūmērus, a, um,	innumerable.
lōcus, i, m., pl. loci, n. (rarely -i, m.)	a place.
mens, mentis, f.	the mind.
mundus, i, m.	the world.
obsidiō, ōnis, f.	a siege, blockade.
orātio, ōnis, f.	oration, speech.
pallium, i, n.	a cloak.
*pons, ntis, m.	a bridge.
sīmūl ac (atque), or as one word,	as soon as.
sīmūlac, conj.	
vix, adv.	scarcely.
* Phrase: jungere flūmen ponte,	to throw a bridge over a river.

Vocabulary 28.

N.B.—Infinitive of 4th Conjugation formed by changing *io* of Pres. Indic. into *ire*; as, dorm-*io*, dorm-*ire*; sc-*io*, sc-*ire*; vñ-*io*, vñ-*ire*.

custōdīo, īvi, itum, *I guard, keep*
ire, 4. guard.

dormīo, īvi, itum, *4. I sleep.*

ērūdīo, īvi, itum, *4. I train (up),*
educate.

fīnīo, īvi, itum, *4. I limit, put an*
end to.

mollīo, īvi, itum, *4. I soften, assuage.*

mūnīo, īvi, itum, *4. I fortify.*

nescīo, īvi & īi, *I am ignorant of,*
itum, 4. know not.

nūtrīo, īvi, itum, *4. I nourish, nur-*
ture.

ōbēdīo, īvi, itum, *4. I obey.*
(with dat.)

pūnīo, īvi, itum, *4. I punish.*

repērio, repperi, *I find.*
repertum, 4.

scīo, īvi, itum, *4. I know.*

sēpeliō, īvi and
īi, pultum, *4. } I bury.*

vēnīo, vēni, ven-
tum, *4. I come.*

vestīo, īvi, itum, *4. I clothe.*

vincīo, vinxi, vinc-
tum, *4. I bind.*

Alpēs, ūm, *f pl. the Alps.*

Cornēlia, ae, *f. Cornelia, a Ro-*
man matron.

crūdēlis, e, *cruel.*

diligētissimē, *most carefully.*
adv.

dōlor, ōris, *m. pain, grief.*

ētiam, *conj. also, even.*

fācile, *adv. easily.*

fīnis, is, *m. end, limit, in pl.*
territories.

gnāvītēr, *adv. actively, earnest-*
Libya, ae, f. Africa. [ly.]

liCTOR, ōris, *m. a licitor (attend-*
ant on a ma-
gistrate).

longinquus, a, um, *long, distant.*

longinquitas, ātis, *length, distance.*
f.

membrāna, ae, *f. thin skin, mem-*
brane.

mollis, e, *soft, mellow.*

mortuus, a, um, *dead.*

olim, *adv. formerly, ' once*
upon a time.

quōquē, *conj. also, even.*

turpis, e, *base, disgraceful.*

vestimentum, i, *n. clothing.*

vinculum, i, *n. a chain, bond.*

vox, vōcis, *f. a voice.*

Vocabulary 29.

ēdūco, āvi, ātum, *I educate.*

āre, 1.

ēdūco, xi, ctum, *I lead out.*

cēre, 3.

fūgo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I put to flight.*

vulnēro, āvi, ātum, *I wound.*
1.

Antīochus, i, *m. Antiochus, the*
name of se-
veral kings of
Syria.

ēgrēgius, a, um, *excellent, dis-*
tinguished.

grāvītēr, *adv. heavily, severely,*
grievously.

Lycurgus, i, *m. Lycurgus, a*
Spartan legis-
lator.

Trōja, ae, *f. Troy, the city.*

Vesta, ae, *f. Vesta, goddess*
of fire and
hearth.

Vocabulary 30.

[See Vocab. 26, N.B.]

mānēo, mansi, *I remain.*

mansum, 2.

mōvėo, mōvi, *I move, disturb.*

mōtum, 2.

tīmeo, ūi, —, 2. *I fear.*

adventus, ūs, *m. arrival.*

Nėro, ōnis, *m. Nero, a Roman*
emperor.

strėnūus, a, um, *vigorous.*

strėnūē, *adv. vigorously.*

stīdīum, i, *n. zeal, pursuit,*

stūdīum, i, *n. study.*

sūbītus, a, um, *sudden.*

Vocabulary 31.

[See Vocab. 27, N.B.]

affigo, xi, ctum, I	cast down,
3.	ruin.
collo, colli, cultum, I	cultivate, che-
3.	rish.
diligō, lexi, lectum, I	esteem, love.
3.	
fringo, finxi, fletum, I	frame, feign,
3.	invent.
studēō, ūi, —, ēre, I	am eager,
2.	zealous.
vēho, veki, vectum, I	carry, in Pass.
3.	I ride, sail.
vinco, vici, victum, I	conquer.
3.	
vivo, vixi, victum, I	live.
3.	

clādes, is, f.	disaster, defeat.
fabūla, ae, f.	a fable, story.
nōbilis, e,	distinguished.
perversus, a, um,	wilful, perverse.
Phaëthōn, ontis, acc. -ontā, m.	Phaëthōn, a son of Apollo.
prōbē, adv.	rightly, properly.
quidē, adv. and conj. (never first in a sentence).	indeed.
ratiō, ōnis, f.	reason.
Scipio, ōnis, f.	Scipio, a noble Roman.
vēhementēr, adv.	vehemently, warmly.

Vocabulary 32.

cado, cecidi, casum, 3.	I fall.
āēr, āēris, acc. āēra, m.	the air.
Africānus, i, m.	Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.
Britānnus, i, m.	a Briton.
cognitio, ōnis, f.	inquiry, knowledge.
erūdītus, a, um,	trained, educated.
Gracchus, i, m.	Gracchus.
injustē, adv.	unjustly.
justē, adv.	justly.

lāpīdēus, a, um,	of stone.
nēgōtium, i, n.	business.
pellis, is, f.	skin (of animals).
prīus, adv.	sooner, before.
Pūnicus, a, um,	Punic, Carthaginian.
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	Socrates.
solum, adv.	only.
summus, a, um,	highest, utmost, greatest.
Tibērius, i, m. (Ti.)	Tiberius, a common Roman forename.

Vocabulary 33.

absurdus, a, um,	absurd.
bōna, ōrum, n. pl.	goods.
celsus, a, um,	lofty, tall.
margārita, ae, f.	a pearl.
nēcessārius, a, um,	necessary, needful.
nīdus, i, m.	a nest.
versus, ūs, m.	a line, a verse.

Vocabulary 34.

N.B.—Infinitive of Deponents of 1st Conjugation formed by changing or of Pres. Indic. into āri; as, admir-or, admir-āri.

admiror, ātus, 1.	I wonder at, I admire.
asperor, ātus, 1.	I reject, despise.
cōnor, ātus, 1.	I attempt.
contemplor, ātus, 1.	I observe carefully, contemplate.
hortor, ātus, 1.	I urge, exhort, encourage.
īmītor, ātus, 1.	I imitate.
mēdītor, ātus, 1.	I meditate on, study.
mīror, ātus, 1.	I wonder at, admire.
vēnērōr, ātus, 1.	I reverence, worship.
dēmum, adv.	indeed.*
pōtēstas, ātis, f.	power (see Latin Index).
pōtēntia, ae, f.	

quidam, quaedam, } a certain, cer-
quoddam or quid- } tain one.
dam, }
tum, adv. } then.

* As, tum dēnum, then indeed;
then and not till then; then at
length.

Vocabulary 35.

*accipio, cēpi, cep- I receive.
tum, cipere, 3.
*confiteor, fessus, I confess.
fiteri, 2.
*decipio, cēpi, cep- I deceive.
tum, cipere, 3.
*ejicio, jēci, jec- I cast forth.
tum, jicere, 3.
fateor, fassus, fā- I confess.
teri, 2.
intueor, itus, 2. I look upon,
into.
misereor, itus, 2 I pity, have pity
(with gen.) on.
polliceor, itus, 2. I promise.
recoreor, ātus, 1. I call to mind.
tueor, itus, 2. I gaze, guard,
protect.
vereor, itus, 2. I fear, reverence.

* Observe the change of ā to i
when a preposition is prefixed in
composition: as, accipio = ad +
cipio; confiteor = con + fateor.

† recorder takes acc. or gen.:
more often the former.

Asia, ae, f. Asia.
Darius, i, m. Darius, king of
Persia.
ex, ē, prep. (with out of.
abl.)
facinus, ōris, n. a bold or daring
deed, crime.
Plinius, i, m. Pliny, the name
of two Roman
authors.
praetertus, a, um, past.
reus, i, m. an accused man,
defendant.

Vocabulary 36.

abutor, ūsus, ūti, I abuse.
3 (with abl.)
adhortor, ātus, 1. I urge, exhort.
adipiscor, adeptus, I acquire, attain
adipisci, 3. to, obtain.
alloquor, locutus, I speak to (with
loqui, 3. acc.).
committo, misi, { I send together,
missum, 3. join (fight)
battle.
deflagro, āvi, ātum, to be burnt down.
1, neut.
fruo, frui, 3 I enjoy.
fructus, frui, 3
(with abl.)
fungor, functus, 3 I discharge.
(with abl.)
gero, gessi, gestum, I carry on, wage
3. (war).
jubeo, jussi, jus- I order, bid.
sum, jubere, 2.
loquor, locutus, I speak.
loqui, 3.
morio, mortuus }
(fut. part. mori- } I die.
turus, about to }
die, mori, 3. }
nascor, natus, I am born.
nasci, 3.
obliscor, litus, I forget.
3 (with gen.)
patior, passus, I endure, suffer.
pati, 3.
proficiscor, fectus, I set out
proficisci, 3.
reminiscor, —, isci, I remember.
3 (with gen.)
sequor, cūtus, sē- I follow.
qui, 3.
utor, ūsus, ūti, 3 I use, enjoy.
(with abl.)
vescor, —, vesci, I feed, live on.
3 (with abl.)

ad, apud, prepp. to, at, near.
(with acc.)
aliquando, adv. sometimes.
benignē, adv. kindly.
cāro, carnis, f. flesh.
cāseus, i, m. cheese.

consulātus, ūs, *m.* office of consul,
consulate.

cruciātus, ūs, *m.* torture.

Dīana, ae, *f.*

Dianna.

Euripides, is, *m.* Euripides, an
Athenian tra-
gic poet.

immortālitas, ātis, *immortality.*

f.

Lābiēnus, i, *m.* Labienus, one of
Caesar's lieutenants.

lac, lactis, *n.* milk.

lācus, ūs, *m.* a lake.

laetitia, ae, *f.* joy.

Mēnapii, ōrum, *pl. m.* the Menapii, a
Gaulic tribe.

mox, *adv.* soon, shortly.

mūnus, ēris, *n.* gift, duty, func-
tion.

nēvē, *conj.* (with
subj.) nor, and lest.

nīmīs, *adv.* too, too much.

pēr, *prep.* (with
acc.) through, during.

poena, ae, *f.* punishment.

Poeni, ōrum, *pl. m.* the Carthagi-
nians.

pristinus, a, um, *former, olden.*

rārō, *adv.* seldom.

Rēgulus, i, *m.* Regulus, a fa-
mous Roman.

Sālāmis, īnis, *acc. f.* Salamis, an is-
land near
Athens.

tantum, *adv.* only.

Trāsimēnus, i, *m.* Lake Trasime-
nus, in Italy.

Vocabulary 37.

blandior, itus, 4 *I flatter, win*
(with dat.) upon.

expērior, ritus, riri, 4 *I try, experi-*
ence.

mētor, mensus, *I measure.*

mētiri, 4.

mentior, itus, men- *I lie, tell a lie.*
tiri, 4.

ordior, orsus, 4. *I begin.*

partior, itus, 4. *I share, divide.*

pōtor, itus, iri, 4 *I obtain pos-*
(with abl., also session of.
gen.). See p. 146.

civilis, e, *adj.* belonging to a
citizen, civil.

Ēpāminondas, ae, *Epaminondas, a*
m. Theban.

frons, frontis, *f.* the forehead.

nunquam, *adv.* never.

vultus, ūs, *m.* countenance,
looks.

Vocabulary 38.

flūo, fluxi, fluxum, *I flow.*

flūere, 3.

migro, āvi, ātump, *I migrate, de-*
part.

1.

mētus, ūs, *m.* fear.

occidens, ntis, *m.* the west (the set-
(part. of oc- ting sun).
cīdo, to set)

permulti, ae, a *very many.*
(pl. only)

primō, *adv.* at first.

primum, *adv.* in the first place.

Vocabulary 39.

dīvido, visi, visum, *I divide, sepa-*
videre, 3. rate.

mitto, mīsi, mis- *I send.*

sum, 3.

cēteri (caet.), cē- *the rest.*

tērae, cētēra, *pl.*

(sing. rare)

Germāni, ōrum, *the Germans.*

pl. m.

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian: usu.*
pl. m., Hel-
vēti, ōrum, *the*
Helvetii
(in Switzer-
land).

lēgātus, i, *m.* ambassador,
lieutenant.

ōcēānus, i, *m.* the ocean.

Vocabulary 40.

fulgēo, lsi, —, *I shine.*

lgēre, 2.

prōfēro, tūli, lā- *I extend.* (See
tum, ferre, 3, p. 81.)

v. irr.

Aegyptus, i, f. *Egypt.*
 impĕrium, i, n. *empire.*
 Indi, ōrum, m. pl. *the Indians.*
 marmor, ōris, n. *marble.*
 servitūs, ūtis, f. *slavery.*
 tĕbernāculum, i, n. *a tent.*
 uxor, ōris, f. *a wife.*

Vocabulary 41.

accēdo, cessi, ces- *I approach.*
 sum, cēdere, 3.
 facio, feci, factum, *I act, do.*
 facere, 3.
 excēdo, cessi, ces- *I depart from.*
 sum, 3.
 incipio, cēpi, cep- *I begin.*
 tum, cipere, 3.
 perdo, didi, ditum, *I destroy, ruin.*
 perdere, 3.
 rēsisto, restīti, re-
 sistere, 3 (with *I resist.*
 dat.)

atquē, āc, conj. *and.*
 attentē, adv. *attentively.*
 audactēr, adv. *boldly, daringly.*
 facilē, adv. *easily.*
 iuventūs, ūtis, f. *youth.*
 latē, adv. *widely, wide.*
 longē, adv. *far.*
 magis, adv. *more, rather.*
 multum, adv. *much.*
 prius . . . quam, *before.*
 or as one word,
 priusquam, conj. *near.*
 propē, adv. *Roscius.*
 Roscius, i, m. *enough.*
 sātis, adv. *a tiger.*
 tigris, is or Idis, c. *a tiger.*

Phrase :—

longē latēque, *far and wide.*

Vocabulary 42.

infringo, frēgi, *I break, impair.*
 fractum, 3.
 obsecuro, āvi, ātum, *I darken, ob-*
 1. *scure.*
 relinquo, liqui, *I leave, quit.*
 lictum, 3.

aequus, a, um, *level, even, just.*
 cūr, adv *why?*

impētus, ūs, m. *an onset, attack.*
 invidiā, ae, f. *envy, ill-will.*
 splendor, ōris, m. *brightness.*
 tyrannus, i, m. *a despot, tyrant.*

Phrase :—

aequo ānimo ferre, *to bear with*
resignation.

Vocabulary 43.

cōmītor, ātus, 1. *I accompany.*
 immōlo, āvi, ātum, *I sacrifice.*
 1.
 indulgēo, dulsei, *I indulge.*
 dultum, 2. (with
 dat.)
 lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, *I play.*
 3.
 mētūo, ūi, —, ēre, *I fear.*
 3.
 ōro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I entreat, pray.*
 salto, āvi, ātum, 1. *I dance.*
 sēdeo, sēdi, ses- *I sit.*
 sum, sēdere, 2.
 vidēor, visus, vi- *I seem, appear.*
 dēri, 2.

Āpollo, īnis, m. *Apollo.*
 hostia, ae, f. *a victim.*
 nōbilis, e, *distinguished,*
noble.
 Pŷthagōras, ae, m. *Pythagoras, a*
famous Greek
philosopher.

Vocabulary 44.

sēro, sēvi, sātum, *I plant, sow.*
 sērere, 3.

aerumna, ae, f. *trouble, afflic-*
tion.
 frūges, um, f. pl. *fruits, a crop.*
 inops, ōpis, *destitute.*
 ōnus, ōris, n. *a load, burden.*
 pātientēr, adv. *patiently.*
 paupertas, ātis, f. *poverty.*
 prūdentiā, ae, f. *knowledge, pru-*
dence.

Phrase :—

auxilium ferre, *to render assist-*
ance.

Vocabulary 45.

occido, cidi, cīsum, *I kill, slay.*
 cīdere, 3.
 statuo, ūi, ūtum, *I fix, determine.*
 ūere, 3.

atrox, ōcis, *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*
 fāmēs, is, *f. hunger.*
 hīlāris, e, *cheerful.*
 ignāvē, adv. *indolently.*
 ōrāculum, i, *n. an oracle.*
 silentium, i, *n. silence.*
 suprēmus, a, um, *highest, last.*
 unquam, adv. *at any time, ever.*

Vocabulary 46.

adjūvo, jūvi, jū- *I assist.*
 tum, jūvāre, 1.
 nēquē, quīvi & *I am unable,*
 ūi, ūtum, nēquīre, *cannot.*
 (like eo,) 4.

cāsus, ūs, *m. chance, accident.*
 infectus, a, um, *undone.*
 grāvis, e, *heavy, severe.*
 noxius, a, um, *guilty.*
 patientia, ae, *f. patience.*
 socius, i, *m. a partner, ally, companion.*
 Thēmistocles, is, *Thēmistocles, a*
 m. *famous Athenian.*

Vocabulary 47.

addisco, addīdici, *I learn in ad-*
 —, discere, 3. *dition.*
 bibo, bibi, —, bī- *I drink.*
 bere, 3.
 conservo, āvi, *I preserve,*
 ātum, 1. *maintain.*
 curro, cūcurri, cur- *I run.*
 sum, 3.
 interficio, fēci, *I put to death,*
 fectum, 3. *kill.*

āliquis (quī), quā, *some one, some-*
 quid (quod), *pron. thing.*
 multum, adv. *much, greatly.*

nāvālis, e, *naval.*
 Nilus, i, *m. the river Nile.*
 nonnullus, a, um *some.*
 (usu. pl.)
 quōtidie, adv. *every day.*
 tam, adv. *so, to such a de-*
 [gree.

Phrase:—

in lēgem jūrāre, *to swear to a law.*

Vocabulary 48.

dēplōro, āvi, ātum, *I lament over,*
 1. *deplore.*
 iraseor, irātus, 3. *I am angry.*
 v. dep. (with dat.)
 tācēo, ūi, ūtum, 2. *I am silent.*
 tribūo, ūi, ūtum, 3. *I give, ascribe.*

Arīovistus, i, *m. Arionistus, a*
German king.
 fortē, adv. *by chance.*
 infāmia, ae, *f. infamy.*
 mīnimē, adv. *in the least de-*
gree, not at all.
 nēc, nēquē, conj. *neither, nor.*
 stultitia, ae, *f. folly.*

Vocabulary 49.

cunctus, a, um, *all, all together.*
 dissimilis, e, *unlike.*
 fērox, ōcis, *warlike, spirited.*
 ignōrātio, ōnis, *f. ignorance.*
 infērior, ius, comp. *lower, inferior.*
 adj. (see p. 25).
 mālum, i, *n. an evil.*
 perfectus, a, um, *finished, perfect.*
 Phīdias, ae, *m. Phīdias, a fa-*
mous Athe-
nian sculptor.
 praestābilis, e, *excellent.*
 proximus, a, um, *next, preceding.*
 scientia, ae, *f. knowledge.*
 sēd, conj. *but.*
 similis, e, *like.*
 simūlācrum, i, *n. an image, statue.*
 vīlis, e, *cheap, common.*

Vocabulary 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nī- *I learn, ascer-*
 tum, noscere, 3. *tain.*
 comprehendō, di, *I seize.*
 sum, 3.

conficio, fēci, fec- *I finish, accom-*
tum, ficēre, 3. *plish.*
conscendo, di, *I mount, go on*
sum, 3. *board (ship).*
contendo, di, tum, *I strain, hasten.*
3.
convoco, āvi, *I call together.*
atum, 1.
effloresco, flōrti, *to blossom forth,*
flōrescere, 3. *flourish.*
expōno, pōsui, pō- *I put forth,*
situm, 3. *disembark*
(troops).
intumesco, tūmti, *I swell.*
tūmesce, 3.
lābor, lapsus, lābi, *I glide, pass*
3, v. dep. *away, fall.*
orior, ortus, oriri, *I rise.*
4, v. dep.: see p. 146.
perlēgo, lēgi, lec- *I read through.*
tum, 3.
perrumpo, rūpi, *I burst through.*
ruptum, 3.
praemitto, mīsi, *I send on before.*
missum, 3.
rēcito, āvi, ātum, 1. *I read aloud.*
rēcipero, āvi, *I recover, get*
atum, 1. *back.*
regnō, āvi, ātum, 1. *I reign, am king.*
sentio, si, sum, 4. *I feel, perceive.*
subsēquor, sēcū- *I follow up.*
tus, 3, v. dep.
suscipio, cēpi, cep- *I undertake.*
tum, cipere, 3.
vexo, āvi, atum, 1. *I vex, harass.*

aetas, ātis, f. *age, time of*
life.
Arbēla, ōrum, n. pl. *Arbēla, a town*
in Assyria.
Cassivellaunus, i, *Cassivellaunus,*
m. *a British chief.*
dēlectus, ūs, m. *a levy.*
hiberna, ōrum, n. *winter-quarters.*
pl.
infirmus, a, um, *infirm, feeble.*
Pisistrātus, i, m. *Pisistratus,*
despot of
Athens.
sēnātus-ūs, m. *the senate.*
statim, adv. *immediately.*

Phrases:—

dēlectum hābere, to hold a levy.
maxima itinēra, forced marches.
nāvem (nāves) conscendere, to
embark.

Vocabulary 51.

extruō, struxi, *I heap up, build,*
structum, 3. *raise.*
obsidēo, sēdi, ses- *I blockade, lay*
sum, 2. *siege to.*
pōno, pōsui, pōsi- *I place.*
tum, 3.

Āthēnae, ārum, *Athens.*

pl. f.
bestiōla, ae, f. *a small animal,*
insect.

campus, i, m. *a plain.*
dōminātus, ūs, m. *rule, sovereignty.*
hōra, ae, f. *an hour.*
Hanno, ōnis, m. *Hanno, a Car-*

thaginian.
Mārāthōn, ōnis, *Marathon, a*
f. *town & plain*
in Attica.

nātus, a, um, part. *born, aged (so*
and adj. many years).
passus, ūs, m. *a pace (about*
five feet).

Plāto, ōnis, m. *Plato, a famous*
Greek philo-
sopher.

Sāguntini, ōrum, *Saguntines, the*
pl. m. *people of Sa-*
guntum.

Phrases:—

ē vita excēdere, to die.
castra pōnere, to pitch a camp.
mūrum, aggērem dūcere, to carry
a wall or mound along, i.e. con-
struct.
mille passūs or mille passūum, a
thousand paces; a (Roman) mile.

Vocabulary 52.

cēdo, cessi, ces- *I yield, retire.*
sum, 3.
confēro, tūli, col- *I bring together,*
lātum, conferre, *betake.*
3, v. irr.
oppōno, pōsui, *I set against,*
pōsitum, 3. *oppose.*

pervēnio, vēni, *I arrive at.*
 ventum, 4.
 pēto, ivi & īi, *I seek; make for.*
 itum, pētēre, 3.
 rēvorto, ti, sum, } *I turn back, re-*
 rēvorto, versus, } *turn.*
 v. dep.

Alcibiādes, is, m. *Alcibiades, an Athenian.*
 Aeschīnes, is, m. *Aeschines, an Athenian orator.*
 Cūrius, i, m. *Curius, a Roman general.*
 Cānūsium, i, n. *Canusium, a town in Apulia.*
 Cāpua, ae, f. *Capua, chief city of Campania.*
 Crēta, ae, f. *Crete, an island of Greece.*
 exīlium (exsil-), *banishment,*
 i, n. *exile.*
 ibi, adv. *there.*
 Lācōdaemōn, ōnis, *Lacedaemon or*
 f. *Sparta.*
 Leōnidas, ae, m. *Leonidas, a king of Sparta.*
 Lūcēria, ae, f. *Luceria, a town in Apulia.*
 Lūcius, i (L.), m. *Lucius, a Roman forename.*
 mandātum, i, n. *a charge, commis-*
 sion.
 perpētūus, a, um, *continual.*
 Rhōdos (-us), i, f. *Rhodes.*
 rūris, n. *the country.*
 Sparta, ae, f. *Sparta.*
 Vēnūsia, ae, f. *Venusia, a town in Italy.*

Phrase:—

exīlium āgēre, *to live in exile.*

Vocabulary 53.

constitūto, ti, *I settle, de-*
 ūtum, 3. *termine.*
 consūmo, sumpsī, *I consume,*
 sumptum, 3. *waste away.*
 expello, pūli, pul- *I drive out.*
 sum, 3.

hiēmo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I winter.*
 jācō, ti, itum, *I lie.*
 jācēre, 2.

Āpollōniā, ae, f. *Apollonia, a town in Illyria.*
 Āristīdes, is, m. *Aristides, a noble Athenian.*
 Arpīnum, i, n. *Arpinum, a town in Latium.*
 Bābylōn, ōnis, f. *Babylon, a city of Assyria.*
 Cannae, ārum, f. *Cannae, a vil-*
 pl. *lage in Apulia.*
 Cōnōn, ōnis, m. *Conon, an Athenian general.*
 Cūmae, ārum, f. pl. *Cumae, a city in Campania.*
 Cyprus (-os), i, f. *Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.*
 Delphi, ōrum, m. *Delphi, a city in*
 pl. *Greece.*
 Diōnysīus, i, m. *Dionysius, ty-*
 rant of Syra-
 cuse.
 Dyrrāchium, i, n. *Dyrrachium, a town in Illyria.*
 Fabrīcius, i, m. *Fabricius, a noble Roman.*
 Hōrātius, i, m. *Horace, a Roman poet.*
 Lesbos (-us), i, f. *Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.*
 Mārius, i, m. *Marius, a Roman general.*
 quālis, e, pron. *of what sort,*
 adj. *(such) as.*
 Syracūsae, ārum, *Syracuse.*
 f. pl.
 tālis, e, pron. adj. *of that sort,*
 such.
 Timōthēus, i, m. *Timotheus, a famous Athenian.*

Phrase:—

morbo consūmi, *to be carried off by illness, to die a natural death.*

Vocabulary 54.

- advēnio, vēni, ven- *I arrive.*
tum, 4.
animadverto, ti, *I observe.*
sum, 3.
confugio, fugi, —, *I flee to.*
fugere, 3.
constat, stābat, *it is evident, it*
stare, 1, v. im- *is agreed, it is*
pers. *certain.*
continēo, ūi, ten- *I hold together.*
tum, tinere, 2.
nego, avi, atum, • *I deny.*
1.
pario, pēperi, par- *I bring forth.*
tum, parere, 3.
prodo, didi, ditum, *I hand down,*
3. *betray.*
puto, avi, atum, 1. *I think.*
trado, didi, ditum, *I hand down,*
3. *deliver.*
video, vidi, visum, *I see.*
videre, 2.

Phrase:—

trādītur, trādītum (prōdītum)
est, *it is handed down, there is a*
tradition.

- caecus, a, um, *blind.*
causā (abl.), *for the sake of.*
credibilis, e, *credible.*
Dēlōs (-us), i, f. *Delos, an island*
of Greece.
Dīāna, ae, f. *Diana, a god-*
dess.
flōrens, entis, *flourishing.*
Hōmērus, i, m. *Homer.*
imprudentia, ae, *ignorance, im-*
f. *prudence.*
Lātōna, ae, f. *Latona, mother*
of Apollo and
Diana.
manifestus, a, um, *evident, mani-*
fest.
nisi, conj. *unless, except.*
quondam, adv. *sometime, for-*
merly, once.
stella, ae, f. *a star.*
Thāles, is and *Thales, a phi-*
ētis, m. *losopher.*
Trōjanus, a, um, *Trojan, of Troy.*
vēristimilis, e, *likely, probable.*

Vocabulary 55.

- consentio, sensi, *I agree.*
sensum, 4.
credo, didi, ditum, *I believe.*
3. (with dat.)
diripio, rīpi, rep- *I plunder, pil-*
tum, rīpere, 3. *lage.*
intelligo, lexi, lec- *I understand,*
tum, ligere, 3. *perceive.*
respondēo, di, sum, *I answer.*
dēre, 2.
bēnēvolus, a, um *kind, benevolent.*
(see p. 25).
bonum, i, n. *a good, a bless-*
ing.
divinus, a, um, *of the gods,*
divine.
ēloquens, tis, *eloquent.*
ignēus, a, um, *fiery, made of*
fire.
Lucretius, i, m. *Lucretius, a Ro-*
man poet.
mālēvolus, a, um *unkind, malevo-*
• (see p. 25). *lent.*
mendax, ācis, *lying, false: as*
subst., a liar.
primārius, a, um, *first-rate, emi-*
nent.
stultus, a, um, *foolish.*
supērus, a, um *upper.*
(see p. 25).
turpitudō, inis, f. *disgrace.*

Vocabulary 56.

- abjicio, jēci, jec- *I cast away.*
tum, jicere, 3.
antepōno, pōtui, *I prefer.*
pōsitum, 3.
conjicio, jēci, jec- *I fling or throw*
tum, 3. *(together).*
ēvenio, vēni, ven- *I happen.*
tum, 4.
nūmero, avi, atum, *I count.*
1.
quaero, quaesivi, *I seek, enquire.*
situm, quaerere, 3.
rūgo, avi, atum, 1. *I ask.*
spēctōlor, ātus, 1. *I spy out.*
viso, visi, visum, *I go to see, visit.*
visere, 3.

Blaesus, i, m.	<i>Blaesus, a Roman name.</i>
Chaerēphōn, ontis, m.	<i>Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.</i>
Croesus, i, m.	<i>Croesus, a king of Lydia.</i>
fēliciter, adv.	<i>luckily.</i>
incertus, a, um,	<i>uncertain.</i>
infāmis, e,	<i>infamous.</i>
Laeca, ae, m.	<i>Laeca, a Roman.</i>
philōsophus, i, m.	<i>a philosopher.</i>
plānē, adv.	<i>altogether.</i>
quaestio, ōnis, f.	<i>a question.</i>
quantus, a, um,	<i>how great.</i>
quārē, adv.	<i>why, on what account.</i>
quōt, indec. adj.	<i>how many.</i>
saepēnīmērō, adv.	<i>oftentimes.</i>
sub-difficilis, e,	<i>somewhat difficult.</i>
tēlum, i, n.	<i>a dart, weapon, missile.</i>
tibi, adv.	<i>where.</i>
Xenōphōn, ontis, m.	<i>Xenophon, an Athenian.</i>

Vocabulary 57.

accīdo, īdi, —, 3.	<i>to happen.</i>
cerno, [crēvi, crētum], 3.	<i>I see, discern.</i>
cōhortor, ātus, 1.	<i>I encourage.</i>
*confido, fīsus sum, fidēre, 3.	<i>I trust.</i>
dēterreo, ūi, ītum, 2.	<i>I frighten, deter.</i>
*diffido, fīsus sum, fidēre, 3.	<i>I distrust.</i>
dimitto, mīsi, mīssum, 3.	<i>I let go, dismiss.</i>
ēnarro, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I relate.</i>
ēnītor, nīsus and nīxus, nīti, 3.	<i>I strive hard.</i>
exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I cry out.</i>
intrōeo, īvi & īi, ītum, īre, 4, irr.	<i>I enter.</i>
nītor, nīsus & nīxus, nīti, 3.	<i>I strive.</i>

*obsto, stīti, stātum, stāre, 1.	<i>I oppose, prevent.</i>
opprīmo, pressi, pressum, prīmēre, 3.	<i>I press upon, overwhelm, crush.</i>
*persuādēo, suāsi, suāsum, 2.	<i>I persuade.</i>
praevenio, vēni, ventum, 4.	<i>I anticipate.</i>
prēmo, pressi, pressum, 3.	<i>I press.</i>
prōhibeo, ūi, ītum, 2 (foll. by inf. or conj.)	<i>I keep off, prevent.</i>
reōuso, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I object, refuse.</i>
spero, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I hope.</i>
sto, stēti, stātum, stāre, 1.	<i>I stand.</i>
*suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, 2.	<i>I advise.</i>
tēno, ūi, tentum, 2.	<i>I hold, retain, remember.</i>
transducō (trāduco), duxi, ductum, 3.	<i>I lead across.</i>
ventito, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I come frequently.</i>

* With Dative.

Bībūlus, i, m.	<i>Bibulus, a Roman.</i>
fōrum, i, n.	<i>market-place, forum.</i>
impērītus, a, um (with gen.)	<i>unskilful.</i>
impransus, a, um,	<i>unbreakfasted.</i>
infirmitas, ātis, f.	<i>weakness.</i>
latro, ōnis, m.	<i>a robber.</i>
lūdus, i, m.	<i>play, game; school.</i>
magnōpērē, adv.	<i>greatly, earnestly.</i>
mīrus, a, um,	<i>wonderful.</i>
mōdus, i, m.	<i>a measure, manner, way.</i>
moenia, ūm, n. pl.	<i>fortifications.</i>
Nervī, ōrum, m. pl.	<i>the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.</i>
prae-altus, a, um,	<i>very high, very deep.</i>
Satīrius, i, m.	<i>Satrius, a Roman.</i>

signum, i, n. a sign, signal.
 Trēbōnius, i, m. Trebonius, one of
 Caesar's lieutenants.

Phrases:—

sēquitur (with acc. and inf. or
 ut and subj.), it follows.
 facere nōn possum quā, I
 cannot but: foll. by subj.

per me (te) stētit (quōmōdus),
 it was owing to me or you (that
 something did not happen): foll. by
 subj.

minimūm ābest quā sim, very
 little is wanting that I should be;
 I am very near being.

Vocabulary 58.

āquor, ātus, 1. to fetch water
 (milit. term).

bello, āvi, ātum, 1. I wage war.

consūlo, sūlti, sul- I consult.
 tum, 3.

convēnio, vēni, to assemble.

ventum, 4.
 gusto, āvi, ātum, 1. I taste.

pābulor, ātus, 1. to forage (milit.
 term).

postūlo, āvi, ātum, I demand.
 1.

progrēdior, gres- I advance.
 sus, grēdi, 3.

Aedti, ōrum, m. the Aedui, a Gal-
 lic pl.

Āgēsilaus, i, m. Agesilaus, a king
 of Sparta.

Divitiācus, i, m. Divitiacus, a
 Gaul.

Fābius, i, m. Fabius, a Ro-
 man.

Lācēdaemōnii,
 ōrum, m. pl. the Lacedaemo-
 nians or
 Spartans.

longius, adv. farther, too far.
 (comp.)

lūdi, ōrum, m. pl. games (public).

Maximū, i, m. Maximus
 (greatest),
 surname of
 Fabius.

nēfas, n. indec. wickedness, im-
 piety, an im-
 pious thing.

ōpūs, n. indec. need, necessity.

ōrātor, ōris, m. envoy, orator.

pābūlum, i, n. fodder for cattle.

publicus, a, um, public.

Vēientes, um, m. the people of
 pl. Vēti, near
 Rome.

quisnam, quae- who, what?

nam, etc. (like
 quis)

Phrase:—

ōpūs est, there is need of (with
 abl.).

Vocabulary 59.

ācūo, ūi, ūtum, 3. I sharpen.

ālo, ūi, ūtum & I nourish.

altum, 3.

ardēo, arsi, arsum, I am on fire.

ardēre, 2.

cōgito, āvi, ātum, I think, medi-
 tate.

collōquor, cūtus, 3. I converse.

compāro, āvi, ātum, I get together,
 1. procure.

ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, I eat.

ēdere & esse,

3, irr. (p. 85).

vēnor, ātus, 1. I hunt.

bēātē, adv. happily.

grātia, ae, f. favour.

grātia, abl. for the sake of
 (foll. by gen.).

haud, adv. not.

liberē, adv. freely.

marinus, a, um, of the sea.

ōpera, ae, f. pains, labour.

plūs, ūris, adj. n. }
 in sing.; in pl. } more.

plures, -a }
 stūdiōsus, a, um zealous, eager
 (with gen.) after.

Phrases:—

opēram dāre, to give one's whole
 energies to anything; to devote one-
 self to it.

intēr bibendum, &c., whilst
 drinking, &c.

Vocabulary 60.

adhībēo, ūi, itum, *I employ.*

2.

obseruo, āvi, ātum, *I observe, re-*
spect.

1.

prōvidēo, vīdi, *I foresee, pro-*
vīsum, 2. *vide.*ardūus, a, um, *lofty, steep,*
difficult.

Phrase:—

āgēre aetātem, *to spend one's life.*

Vocabulary 61.

ingrēdīor, gressus, *I enter.*

grēdi, 3.

interclūdo, si, sum, *I shut off, inter-*
cept.

3.

obtempēro, āvi, *I obey, comply*
ātum, 1 (with *with.*
dat.)commēātus, ūs, m. *provisions, sup-*
plies (milit.
*term).*commīlīto, ōnis, m. *a fellow-soldier,*
*comrade.*istūc, adv. *to-that-place*
*(where you are).*iūdicīum, i, n. *judgement.*pārātus, a, um, *prepared, ready.*quisque, quaeque, } *every one, each.*
quodque &
quidque, pron.
quō, adv. *whither.*

Phrase:—

fīrī de āliquo, *to become of one;*
as, quid factum est de illo? *what*
has become of that man?

Vocabulary 62.

concēdo, cessi, ces-, *I yield, retire.*

sum, 3.

incendo, di, sum, *I burn, set fire*
to.

3.

percīpio, cēpi, *I take in, per-*
ceptum, cīpere, *ceive.*

3.

affectus, a, um, *made, prepared.*Brūtus, i, m. *Brutus, a Ro-*
*man.*Cassīus, i, m. *Cassius, a Ro-*
*man.*Campānia, ae, f. *Campania, a*
*part of Italy.*occūpātus, a, um, *engaged, busy.*quāsi, adv. *as if.*

Phrases:—

consīlium īnīre, *to enter on, form,*
*a design.*in spem vēnīre, *to conceive a*
hope.

LATIN INDEX.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative.	<i>inter.</i>	= interrogative.
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative.	<i>irr.</i>	= irregular.
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.	<i>m.</i>	= masculine.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.	<i>n.</i>	= neuter.
<i>c. or com.</i>	= common gender.	<i>neg.</i>	= negative.
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative.	<i>p.</i>	= page.
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.	<i>part.</i>	= participle.
<i>dat.</i>	= dative.	<i>pl.</i>	= plural.
<i>dep.</i>	= deponent.	<i>prep.</i>	= preposition.
<i>f.</i>	= feminine.	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun, pronominal.
<i>freq.</i>	= frequentative.	<i>rel.</i>	= relative.
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive.	<i>sing.</i>	= singular.
<i>incep.</i>	= inceptive.	<i>sup.</i>	= superlative.
<i>indec.</i>	= indeclinable.	<i>v.</i>	= verb.
<i>indef.</i>	= indefinite.	<i>voc.</i>	= vocabulary.

N.B.—Final *a, e, er, al, ar, or, is, os, us*, are to be understood as short unless actually marked long. Final *i* is long unless otherwise marked. Final *o* is usually long.

AB

A

āb (*ā, abs*), *prep.* with *abl.*, *from*, *by*.

āb-ēo, īvi or *īi, itum, ire, 4, v. irr.*, *I go away*.

abjicio and *abicio* [*ab, jacio*], *jeci, jectum, icere, 3, I cast away*.

ab-sum, abfui (*āfui*), *abesse, v. irr.*, *I am absent, away, or distant from*.

ab-sūmo, mpsi, mptum, mēre, 3, I consume, cut off, destroy.

absurdus, a, um, adj., *absurd*.

āb-ūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3, v. dep., with *abl.*, *I abuse*.

ac, atque, conj., and.

accedo [*ad, cēdo*], *cessi, cessum, cedere, 3, I approach*.

accido [*ad, cādo*], *idi, no sup.*,

accidere, 3, v. n., *to happen*.

accipio [*ad, cāpio*], *cēpi, ceptum, accipere, 3, I receive*.

ADMIROR

acer, cris, cre, adj., *keen, sharp*.

aciēs, ēi, f., *line of battle*.

acūo, ūi, ūtum, dēre, 3, I sharpen.

acus, ūs, f., *a needle*. See p. 120.

acūtus, a, um, part. and adj., *pointed, sharp*.

ad, prep. with *acc.*, *to, near, against; for (a purpose)*.

ad-disco, addidici, no sup., *discere, 3, I learn in addition, learn (something) new*.

ād-ēo, īi (rarely *īvi*), *itum, ire, 4, v. irr.*, *I go to*.

adhibeo [*ad, hābeo*], *ui, itum, ere, 2, I employ*.

ad-hortor, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I urge, exhort*.

adipiscor [*ad, āpiscor*], *adeptus, adipisci, 3, v. dep.*, *I acquire, attain to, obtain*.

ad-jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1, I assist.

ad-mirror, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I wonder at, I admire*.

ADSUM

ad-sum, fui, esse, *v. irr.*, with *dat.*, *I am present, stand by, help.*
 adulatio, ōnis, *f.*, *flattery.*
 ad-venio, veni, ventum, venire, 4, *to arrive.*
 advento, avi, atum, 1, *v. freq.*, *I am on the point of arriving.*
 adventus, ūs, *m.*, *arrival.*
 adversus or adversum, *prep.* with *acc.*, *towards, against.*
 aedificium, i, *n.*, *a building.*
 aedifico, avi, atum, 1, *I build.*
 Aedui, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.*
 aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*, *sick.*
 Aegyptus, i, *f.*, *Egypt.*
 aequus, a, um, *adj.*, *level, even, just*: — animo, *with resignation.*
 aër, aëris, *acc.* aëri, *m.*, *the air.*
 aerumna, ae, *f.*, *trouble, affliction.*
 Aeschinēs, is, *m.*, *Aeschines, an Athenian orator.*
 aestās, ātis, *f.*, *summer.*
 aetās, ātis, *f.*, *age, time of life.*
 aeternus, a, um, *adj.*, *eternal.*
 affectus, a, um, *part.*, *adapted, disposed.*
 affero [ad, fero], attuli, allatum, afferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bring (to).*
 affligo, fligi, flictum, fligere, 3, *I cast down, ruin.*
 Africanus, i, *m.*, *Africanus, a surname of two Scipios.*
 āger, gri, *m.*, *land, territory.*
 Agēsilaus, i, *m.*, *Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.*
 agger, ēris, *m.*, *a mound.*
 āgo, āgi, actum, āgere, 3, *I lead, drive, carry on*: — aetatem, *to spend one's life*; — exilium, *to live in exile.*
 agriola, ae, *m.*, *a husbandman.*
 ala, ae, *f.*, *a wing.*
 albus, a, um, *adj.*, *white.*
 Alcibiādes, is, *m.*, *Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.*
 Alexander, āri, *m.*, *Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.*

ARCUS

ālīquandō, *adv.*, *once (upon a time), sometimes.*
 ālīquīs and -quī, ālīquā, -quid and -quōd, *pron.*, *some one, something.*
 ālius, a, ud, *irr. adj.*, *one (of any number), one, another.* See pp. 23, 24.
 allōquor [ad, loquor], locutus, loqui, 3, *v. dep.*, *I speak to.*
 ālo, āli, ālitum and altum, ālere, 3, *I nourish.*
 Alpēs, ūm, *f. pl.*, *the Alps.*
 alter, tēra, tērum, *adj.* (*gen. sing. ius, dat. i*), *one of two; the one, the other; second.* See p. 23.
 altus, a, um, *adj.*, *high, deep.*
 amābilis, e, *adj.*, *lovely.*
 ambulo, avi, atum, 1, *I walk.*
 amicitia, ae, *f.*, *friendship.*
 amicus, i, *m.*, *a friend.*
 amo, *I love*: p. 38.
 amor, ōris, *m.*, *love.*
 angustus, a, um, *adj.*, *narrow.*
 animadverto [animum adverto], ti, um, tēre, 3, *I observe: with in and acc., to punish.*
 animal, ālis, *n.*, *an animal.*
 animus, i, *m.*, *mind, the soul, courage, spirit, the feelings.*
 annus, i, *m.*, *a year.*
 ante, *prep.* with *acc.*, *before.*
 antē-pōno, pōdi, pōsitum, pōnere, 3, *to prefer.*
 Antiochus, i, *m.*, *Antiochus, the name of several kings of Syria.*
 antiquus, a, um, *adj.*, *ancient.*
 Apollo, ūis, *m.*, *Apollō.*
 Apollōnia, ae, *f.*, *Apollonia, a town in Illyria.*
 apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, *at, near, among, with.*
 aqua, ae, *f.*, *water.*
 aquila, ae, *f.*, *an eagle.*
 aquor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I fetch water (milit. term).*
 Arbēla, ōrum, *n. pl.*, *Arbēla, a town in Assyria.*
 arbor, ōris, *f.*, *a tree.*
 arcus, ūs, *m.*, *a bow*: *v. caelestis.*

ARDEO

ardēo, arsi, arsum, ardēre, 2, v. n., *I burn, am on fire; am eager.*

ardūus, a, um, adj., *lofty, steep, difficult.*

argentum, i, n., *silver.*

Arriovistus, i, m., *Arriovistus, a German king.*

Aristidēs, is, m., *Aristides, an Athenian.*

arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms.*

Arpinum, i, n., *Arpinum, a town in Latium; birthplace of Cicero.*

ars, artis, f., *art, handicraft.*

arx, arcis, f., *a citadel.*

Asia, ae, f., *Asia.*

asper, ēra, ērum, adj., *rough, rugged.*

aspernor, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I reject, scorn.*

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., *black, gloomy.*

Āthēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens.*

Āthēniensis, e, adj., *Athenian.*
Plur. m. as subs., *Athenienses, ium, the Athenians.*

atquē, ac, conj., *and.*

atrox, ōcis, adj., *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*

attentē, adv., *attentively.*

attentus, a, um, adj., *attentive.*

auctoritās, ātis, f., *authority.*

an(c)turnus, i, m., *autumn.*

audactēr, adv., *boldly, daringly.*

audax, ācis, adj., *bold.*

audēo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, v. semi-dep., *I dare, venture.*

audio, *I hear:* p. 44.

auditus, ūs, m., *hearing.*

au-fero [ab, fero], abstūli, ablātum, auferre, 3, v. irr., *I carry away.*

Augustus, i, m., *Augustus, emperor of Rome; the month August.*

aurūus, a, um, adj., *golden.*

auris, is, f., *an ear.*

aurum, i, n., *gold.*

autem, conj., *but* (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs).

CAEDES

auxilium, i, n., *help, aid, assistance; in pl., auxiliary forces.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

āvus, i, m., *a grandfather.*

B

Bābylōn, ōnis, f., *Babylon, chief city of Assyria.*

bālaena, ae, f., *a whale.*

bēātē, adv., *happily.*

bēātus, a, um, adj., *happy.*

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., *warlike.*

bello, āvi, ātum, 1, *I wage war.*

bellum, i, n., *war.*

bēlūa, bellūa, ae, f., *a large beast.*

bēnē, adv., *well.* See p. 76.

bēnēvolūs, a, um, adj., *well-wishing, kind, benevolent.* See p. 25.

bēnignē, adv., *kindly.*

bēnignus, a, um, adj., *kind.*

bestia, ae, f., *a beast.*

bestiola, ae, f., *a small animal, insect.*

bībo, bībi, no sup., bībēre, 3, *I drink.*

Bibulus, i, m., *Bibulus, a Roman.*

Blaesus, i, m., *Blaesus, a Roman.*

blandior, itus, iri, 4, v. dep., with dat., *I flatter, conciliate.*

bōna, ōrum, n. pl., *goods, property.*

bōnum, i, n., *a good, a boon.*

bōnus, a, um, adj., *good.*

bōs, bōvis, c., oz, cow. See p. 22.

brēvis, e, adj., *short.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannus, i, m., *a Briton.*

Brūtus, i, m., *Brutus.*

C

cādo, cecidi, cāsum, cādēre, 3, *I fall.*

caecus, a, um, adj., *blind.*

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*

CAELESTIS

caelestis, e, *adj.*, belonging to the heavens, celestial: — arcus, *m.*, a rainbow.

caelum, *i, n.*, heaven.

Caesar, āris, *m.*, Caesar.

Cāius (C.), *i, m.*, Caius, a Roman forename. (Also written Gaius.)

calcar, āris, *n.*, a spur.

calor, ōris, *m.*, heat.

Cāmillus, *i, m.*, Camillus, a Roman general.

Campania, ae, *f.*, Campania, a part of Italy.

campus, *i, m.*, a plain.

cānis, *is*, *gen. pl.* cānum, *c.*, a dog.

Cannae, ārum, *f. pl.*, Cannae, a village in Apulia.

cāno, cēcīni, cantum, cānere, *3, I sing.*

canto, āvi, ātum, *1, v. freq., I sing.*

cantus, ūs, *m.*, a song.

Cānūsum, *i, n.*, Canusium, a town in Apulia; now Canosa.

cāpio, *I take*: *p. 67.*

Cāpua, ae, *f.*, Capua, chief city of Campania.

cāpūt, itis, *n.*, a head.

carmen, inis, *n.*, a song.

cāro, carnis, *f.*, flesh.

Carthāginiensis, e, *adj.*, Carthaginian: mostly plur. *m.* as subst., the Carthaginians.

Carthāgo, inis, *f.*, Carthage, a city of Africa.

cārus, a, um, *adj.*, dear.

cāsēus, *i, m.*, cheese.

Cassius, *i, m.*, Cassius, a Roman.

Cassivellaunus, *i, m.*, Cassivellaunus, a British chief.

castigo, āvi, ātum, *1, I chastise.*

castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*, a camp.

cāsus, ūs, *m.*, chance, accident.

Cātilīna, ae, *m.*, Catiline, a notorious conspirator.

Cāto, ōnis, *m.*, Cato; the name of two famous Romans; Cato the elder and Cato the younger.

causa, ae, *f.*, a cause. In *abl.*,

COEO

for the sake of, on account of; foll. by *gen.*

cautus, a, um, *adj.*, cautious, wary.

cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, *3, I yield, retire.*

cēler, ēris, ēre, *adj.*, swift.

celsus, a, um, *adj.*, lofty.

cēno, āvi, ātum, āre, *1, I sup, dine.* See *p. 86.*

centūria, ae, *f.*, a century: see *Ex. XIX, 7.*

cērāsum, *i, n.*, a cherry.

cērāsus, *i, f.*, a cherry-tree.

cerno, [cēvi, cētum], cernere, *3, I see, discern.*

certus, a, um, *adj.*, certain.

cervus, *i, m.*, a stag.

cētēri (caet.), cētūrae, cētērā, *adj. pl. (sing. very rare), the rest.*

Chaerēphōn, ōntis, *m.*, Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.

Cicēro, ōnis, *m.*, Cicero, a celebrated Roman orator.

Gimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.

cingo, nxi, netum, ngere, *3, I surround.*

circā, circum, *prep.* with *acc.*, around.

circitēr, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, about.

cis, citrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, on this side of.

civilis, e, *adj.*, belonging to a citizen, civic.

civis, *is*, *com.*, a citizen, fellow-citizen.

civitas, tātis, *f.*, a state, country; citizenship.

clādēs, *is*, *f.*, defeat, disaster.

clam, *prep.* with *acc.*, rarely *abl.*, secretly, without the knowledge of.

clāmor, ōris, *m.*, a shout.

clārus, a, um, *adj.*, bright, clear, renowned.

classis, *is*, *f.*, a fleet.

coeno *v.* cēno.

cō-ō, ivi or ii, itum, ire, *4, v. irr.*, to join together.

COERCEO

oĉereo [con, arco, *I keep off*],
 ŭi, ĭtum, ěre, 2, *I restrain, curb*.
 oĉġito, avi, ġtum, 1, *I think, meditate*.
 cognġtio, onis, f., *inquiry, knowledge*.
 co-gnosco, nŏvi, nġtum, noscěre, 3, *I learn, ascertain*.
 cŏhors, tis, f., *a cohort (the tenth part of a legion)*.
 oĉ-hortor, ġtus, ġri, 1, v. dep., *I encourage*.
 collŏquor [con, lŏquor], cŭtus, lŏqui, 3, v. dep., *I converse (with)*.
 cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, cŏlěre, 3, *I cultivate, cherish*.
 cŏlŏnia, ae, f., *a colony*.
 cŏlor, ŏris, m., *colour*.
 cŏlumba, ae, f., *a dove*.
 coměs, ĭtis, com., *a companion (on a journey)*.
 cŏmġtor, ġtus, ġri, v. dep., *I accompany*.
 comġměatus, ŭs, m., *provisions, supplies*.
 commilito, onis, m., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.
 committo [con, mitto], mġsi, missum, mittěre, 3, *I send together, join (fight) battle*.
 compġro [con, pġro], avi, ġtum, 1, *I get together, procure*.
 comprěhendo [con, prěhendo], di, sum, děre, 3, *I seize*.
 con-cědo, cessi, cessum, cěděre, 3, *I yield, retire*.
 con-fěro, tŭli, collġtum, conferre, 3, v. irr., *I bring together, betake (myself)*.
 conficġo [con, fġcio], fěci, fectum, ficěre, 3, *I finish, accomplish*.
 con-fido, fġsus sup, fiděre, 3, usu. with *dat.* (esp. when the object is a person), *I trust*. See p. 86.
 confitěor [con, fġteor], fessus, fitěri, 2, v. dep., *I confess*.
 con-fugio, fŭgi, fŭgěre, 3, *I flee to (for refuge)*.
 con-ficġo and cŏnficġo [con, jġcio],

CONVOLO

jěci, jectum, jŏěre, 3, *I fling or throw (together)*.
 conjŭrġtio, onis, f., *a conspiracy*.
 Cŏnŏn, onis, m., *Conon, an Athenian general*.
 cŏnor, ġtus, ġri, 1, v. dep., *I attempt*.
 conscendo [con, scando], di, sum, děre, 3, *I mount, go on board (ship), embark*.
 conscientia, ae, f., *conscience*.
 con-sentġo, nsi, nsum, ntġre, 4, *I agree*.
 con-servo, avi, ġtum, 1, *I preserve, maintain*.
 consilium, i, n., *a plan, design, counsel*: — inire, *to form a design*.
 con-stġt, stġbġt, stġre, 1, *impers. v.*, *it is agreed, it is well-known*.
 constitŭo [con, stġtuo], ŭi, ŭtum, ŭěre, 3, *I settle, determine, resolve*.
 consuetŭdo, ġnis, f., *custom, habit*.
 consŭl, ŭlis, m., *a consul*.
 consŭlġtus, ŭs, m., *office of consul, consulate*.
 consŭlo, lŭi, ltum, stġlěre, 3, *I consult*: with *dat.*, *to consider the interests of*.
 con-sŭmo, mpsi, mptum, měre, 3, *I consume, destroy*.
 con-temno, tempsi, temptum, temněre, 3, *I despise*.
 contemplor, ġtus, ġri, 1, v. dep., *I observe carefully, contemplate*.
 con-tendo, di, tum, děre, 3, *I strain; hasten*.
 contentus, a, um, adj., *contented*.
 contġněo [con, těneo], ŭi, tentum, tġněre, 2, *I hold together*.
 contrġ, prep. with acc., *against, contrary to*.
 con-trġho, traxi, tractum, trġhěre, 3, *I draw together, collect*.
 con-věnio, věni, ventum, věnġre, 4, *to assemble, come together*.
 con-vŏco, avi, ġtum, 1, *I call together*.
 con-vŏlo, avi, ġtum, 1, *to fly or rush together*.

COPIA

cōpia, ae, f., *plenty*; in *pl.*,
cōpiāe, ārum, f., *forces*. See
p. 122.
cōr, cordis, n., *the heart*.
cōram, prep. with *abl.*, *in the
presence of*.
Cōrīnthus, i, f., *Corinth*.
Cornēlia, ae, f., *Cornelia, a Ro-
man matron*.
cornū, ūs, n., *a horn; wing of
an army*.
cōrōna, ae, f., *a wreath or crown*.
corpus, ōris, n., *a body*.
corrigō [con. rēgo], rexi, rec-
tum, rīgēre, 3, *I corr-ct*.
crēātor, ōris, m., *a creator*.
crēdibilis, e, adj., *credible*.
crēdo, didi, dītum, crēdēre, 3,
with *dat.*, *I believe, trust*.
crēo, crēāvī, crēātum, crēāre,
1, *I create, make*.
Crēta, ae, f., *Crete, an island of
Greece*; now *Candia*.
Croesus, i, m., *Croesus, a king of
Lydia*.
crūciātus, ūs, m., *torture*.
crūdēlis, e, adj., *cruel*.
crūs, crūris, n., *a leg*.
culpa, ae, f., *blame, fault*.
cum, prep. with *abl.*, *with*.
cum (less correctly *quum*), adv.
and *conj.*, *when, since*.
Cūmae, ārum, f. pl., *Cumae, an
ancient city in Campania*.
cunctus, a, um, adj., *all, all
together*.
cūpīdītās, ātis, f., *eager desire,
passion*.
cūpio, īvi or īi, ītum, cūpēre, 3,
I desire.
cūr, adv., *why?*
Cūrius, i, m., *a Roman general*.
cūro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take care,
pains*.
curro, cūcurri, cursum, currēre,
3, *I run*.
currus, ūs, m., *a chariot*.
cursus, ūs, m., *running; course*.
custōdio, īvi, ītum, īre, 4, *I
guard, keep guard*.

DESERO

custōs, custōdis, e, a *guardian,
keeper, warder*.
Cyprus (-os), i, f., *Cyprus, an
island off Cilicia*.
Cyrus, i, m., *Cyrus, king of
Persia*.

D

Dārius, i, m., *Darius, a king of
Persia*.
dē, prep. with *abl.*, *down from,
from, concerning*.
dēa, ae, f., *a goddess*. See p. 115.
dēbēo, ūi, ītum, ēre, 2, *I owe,
I ought*.
dēbilis, e, adj., *disabled, feeble*.
dēcem, indecl. num. adj., *ten*.
dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcēre, 2, v. *impers.*
with *acc.*, *it is seemly, becoming*.
dēcīpio [dē, cāpio], cēpi, ceptum,
cīpēre, 3, *I deceive*.
dēcus, ōris, n., *an ornament*.
dē-dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcēre, 2, v.
impers., with *acc.*, *it is unseemly,
unbecoming*.
dēcunt, fut. of dē-sum.
dē-fendo, di, sum, dēre, 3, *I
defend*.
dē-flagro, āvi, ātum, 1, v. n., *to
be burnt down*.
dējīcio and dējīco [dē, jacio],
jēcī, jectum, jēcēre, 3, *I cast down*.
dēlecto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I delight,
amuse*.
dēlectus, ūs, m., *a levy*. See
Voc. 50.
dēlēo, ēvi, ētum, ēre, 2, *I blot out,
destroy completely*.
Dēlos (-us), i, f., *Delos, an island
of Greece*.
Delphī, ōrum, m. pl., *Delphī, a
city of Greece*.
Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m., *Demosthenes,
a famous Athenian orator*.
dēmum, adv., *indeed*. See Voc. 34.
dē-plōro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I lament
over, deplore*.
dē-sēro, ūi, rtum, sēcēre, 3, *I
abandon*.

DESUM

dē-sum, fui, esse, with *dat.*, *I am wanting to*; *fail in duty to.*
 dē-tēgo, texi, tectum, tēgere, 3, *I discover.*

dē-terrēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2, *I frighten, deter.*

Dēus, i, m., *God.* See p. 22.

Dīana, ae, f., *Diana, a goddess.*

dīco, dixi, dictum, dicere, 3, *I say, speak.*

dīs, ai, m. and f. in *sing.*; plur. m. only, *day.* See p. 121.

difficilis, e, adj., *difficult.* See p. 25.

diffido [dis, fido], fīsus sum, fidere, 3, v. *semi-dep.*, usu. with *dat.* (see fido), *I distrust.*

diligens, ntis, adj., *diligent, careful.*

diligenter, adv., *carefully.*

diligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*

diligentissimē, sup. adv., *most carefully.*

dīngo, lexi, lectum, ligere, 3, *I esteem, love.*

dīmico, avi, atum, 1, *I fight (a battle).*

dimitto [dis, mitto], misi, missum, mittere, 3, *I let go, dismiss.*

Dionysius, i, m., *Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.*

dīripio [dis, rapio], rīpi, reatum, rīpere, 3, *I plunder, pillage.*

discipulus, i, m., *a pupil, scholar.*
 disco, didici, no sup., discere, 3, *I learn.*

displicēo [dis, placeo], ūi, itum, ēre, 2 (with *dat.*), *I displease.*

dis-similis, e, adj., *unlike.* See p. 25.

dīu, adv., *a long time.*

dīvēs, itis, adj., *rich.* See p. 25.

dīvido, visi, visum, videre, 3, *I divide, separate.*

divinus, a, um, adj., *belonging to the Gods, divine.*

Divitiacus, i, m., *Divitiacus, a Gaulish chief.*

divitiae, arum, f. pl., *riches.*

do, dedi, datum, dare, 1, *I give.*

• PR. L. I.

EJUS

dōcēo, ūi, ctum, dōcere, 2, *I teach.*

doctus, a, um, adj., *learned.*

dolor, ōris, m., *pain, grief.*

dōmicilium, i, n., *an abode.*

dōmina, ae, f., *a mistress.*

dōminatus, ūs, m., *rule, sovereignty.*

dōminus, i, m., *a lord, master.*

dōmus, ūs, f., *a house.* See p. 22.

dōnum, i, n., *a gift.*

dormio, i, vi, itum, ire, 4, *I sleep.*

dūbito, avi, atum, 1, *I doubt.*

dūbius, a, um, adj., *doubtful.*

dūcenti, ae, a, num. adj. pl., *two hundred.*

dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3, *I lead, make (with ref. to long objects).* See Voc. 51.

dulcis, e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.*

dum, adv., *while.*

dūō, dūae, dūō, num. adj. pl., *two.* See p. 27.

dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard.*

dux, dūcis, com., *a leader, general.*

Dyrrachium, i, n., *Dyrrachium (now Durazzo), a town in Illyria.*

E

ē, ex, prep. with *abl.*, *out of, from, of.*

ēdo, edi, esum, edere & esse, 3, v. *irr.*, *I eat.* See p. 85.

edūco, avi, atum, 1, *I educate.*

ē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3, *I lead out.*

effero [ex, fero], extuli, elatum, efferre, 3, v. *irr.*, *I carry out.*

effloresco [ex, floresco], florui, escere, 3, *I blossom forth, flourish.*

egō, I. See p. 33.

ēgrēgius, a, um, adj., *excellent, eminent, distinguished.*

ejicio and eicio [ex, jacio], jeci, jectum, icere, 3, *I cast forth.*

ejus, v. is, ea, id.

ELEGANS

ēlēgans, antis, adj., elegant, refined.
ēlēphantus, i, m., an elephant.
ēlōquens, entis, adj., eloquent.
ēmendo, āvi, ātum, 1, I improve.
ē-migro, āvi, ātum, 1, I depart from.
ēmo, ēmi, emptum, ēmere, 3, I buy.
ē-narro, āvi, ātum, 1, I relate.
ē-nitor, nisus or nixus, nīti, 3, v. dep., I strive hard.
Epāminondās, ae, m., Epaminondas, a famous Theban.
ēquēs, itis, m., a horse-soldier; pl., cavalry.
ēquitātus, ūs, m., cavalry.
ēquus, i, m., a horse.
ergā, prep. with acc., towards (only of the feelings).
erro, āvi, ātum, 1, I err, make a mistake.
ērudīo, īvi or īi, itum, īre, 4, I train up, educate.
ērudītus, a, um, part. and adj., trained, educated.
ēt, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and.
ētiam, conj., also, even.
Eurīpīdēs, is, m., Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.
Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe.
ē-vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4, to happen.
ex or ē, prep. with abl., out of, from, of.
ex-cēdo, cessi, cēssum, cēdere, 3, I go out, depart from.
ex-clāmo, āvi, ātum, 1, I cry out.
ex-cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, cōlere, 3, I cultivate carefully, educate.
exemplum, i, n., an example.
ex-ēo, īvi or īi, itum, īre, 4, v. irr., I go out.
exercēo, tūi, itum, ēre, 2, I exercise.
exercītus, ūs, m., an army.
ex-hīlāro, āvi, ātum, 1, I cheer.
exiliūm (exsil-), i, n., banishment, exile.

FILIA

ex-pello, pūli, pulsum, pellere, 3, I drive out.
expērior, pertus, pērii, 4, v. dep., I try, experience.
ex-pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, pōnere, 3, I put forth, disembark (troops).
ex-pugno, āvi, ātum, 1, I take by storm.
ex-strūo, struxi, structum, strūere, 3, I heap or build up.
extrā, prep. with acc., outside of.

F

Fābius, i, m., a Roman.
Fabriciūs, i, m., -Fabricius, a Roman.
fābūla, ae, f., a fable, story.
fāciēs, ēi, f., figure, countenance.
fācilē, adv., easily.
fācilis, e, adj., easy. See p. 25.
fācīnus, ōris, n., a bold act, daring deed, crime.
fācio, fēci, factum, fācere, 3, I make, act, do.
fāmēs, is, f., hunger.
fātēor, fassus, fātēri, 2, v. dep., I confess.
fēlicitēr, adv., luckily, successfully, happily.
fēlix, icis, adj., fortunate, successful, happy.
fēmina, ae, f., a woman.
fērē, adv., almost, commonly.
fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, v. irr., I bear, bring, endure. See p. 81.
fērox, ōcis, adj., warlike, spirited.
ferrum, i, n., iron, a sword.
ficus, i and ūs, f., a fig, fig-tree.
fidēlis, e, adj., faithful.
fidēs, ēi, f., faith, fidelity.
fido, fisis sum, fidere, 3, semi-dep. (usu. with dat.; esp. when the object is a person), I trust. See p. 86.
fidus, a, um, adj., faithful.
filia, ae, f., a daughter. See p. 115.

FILIUS

filius, i, m., a son. See p. 5.
finġo, finxi, fectum, fingere, 3, I mould, feign, invent.
finio, ivi, itum, ire, 4, I limit, put an end to.
finis, is, m. (rarely f.), end, limit; in pl., territories.
fio, factus sum, fieri, v. irr. (=erving as pass. to facio), I become, am made. See p. 85.
firġo, avi, atum, 1, I strengthen, make strong.
firmus, a, um, adj., strong.
flġo, flġvi, flġtum, flġre, 2, I weep.
flo, flavi, flatum, flare, 1, I blow.
flġrens, ntis, part. adj., flourish-ing, prosperous.
flġro, ūi, ġre, 2, I bloom, flourish.
flġs, ōris, m., a flower.
flūmen, inis, n., a current, river.
flūo, fluxi, xum, flūre, 3, I flow.
flūvius, i, m., a river.
fġdio, fġdi, ssum, fġdere, 3, I dig.
fons, ntis, m., a fountain.
fortġ, adv., by chance.
fortis, e, adj., brave, strong.
fortilġr, adv., bravely. Comp., fortius, more bravely; sup. fortis-simġ, most (or very) bravely.
fortūna, ae, f., fortune.
forūm, i, n., market-place, forum.
fossa, ae, f., a ditch.
frāter, tris (gen. pl. frātrum), m., a brother.
fraus, fraudis, f., dishonesty.
frigus, ōris, n., cold.
frons, ntis, f., the forehead, brow.
fructus, ūs, m., fruit.
frūġes, um, f. pl., fruits, a crop.
fruo, frūtus and fructus, frūi, 3, v. dep., with abl., I enjoy.
fūġio, fūġi, fūġitum, fūġere, 3, I flee, escape.
fūġo, avi, atum, 1, I put to flight.
fulġeo, fulsi, fulġere, 2, I shine.
fulġr, ūris, n., lightning.
fulmġn, inis, n., lightning, thunderbolt.
funġor, functus, funġi, 3, v. dep., with abl., I discharge, perform.

HABITO

fūnus, ūris, n., a funeral.
fūror, ōris, m., madness.
fūtūrus, a, um, fut. part. of sum, about to be, future.

G

Galli, ōrum, m. pl., the Gauls.
Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.
gaudġo, gāvius sum, gaudġre, 2, semi-dep., I rejoice. See p. 86.
gaudium, i, n., joy.
ġener, ġri, m., a son-in-law.
ġġnu, ūs, n., a knee.
ġġnus, ġris, n., a race, class.
ġermāni, ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.
ġġro, gġssi, gġstum, gġrġre, 3, I carry on; achieve; wage (war).
glādġus, i, m., a sword.
glġria, ae, f., glory.
ġnāvītġr, adv., actively, vigorously, earnestly, diligently.
Gracchus, i, m., Gracchus, a Roman.
ġrācilis, e, adj., thin. See p. 25.
Gracġa, ae, f., Greece.
Gracġus, a, um, adj., Grecian, Greek. As subs., Gracġi, ōrum, m. pl., the Greeks.
ġrāmen, inis, n., grass.
ġrandġnat, āvit, āre, 1, v. impers., it hails.
ġrātġa, ae, f., favour; gratitude.
ġrātġā, abl. sing. of preced., for the sake of; foll. by gen.
ġrātus, a, um, adj., pleasing, followed by dat.
ġrāvġs, e, adj., heavy, severe.
ġrāvītġr, adv., heavily, severely, grievously.
ġusto, avi, atum, 1, I taste.

H

hābġo, ūi, itum, ġre, 2, I have, hold.
hābġo, avi, atum, 1, I dwell.

HANNIBAL

Hannibal, ālis, m., *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*

Hanno, ōnis, m., *Hanno, a Carthaginian.*

Hasdrubal, ālis, m., *Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.*

hasta, ae, f., *a spear.*

haud, adv., *not.*

Hellespontus, i, m., *the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).*

Helvētia, ae, f., *the country of the Helvetii.*

Helvētius, a, um, adj., *Helvetian.*
As *subs.*, **Helvētīi**, pl. m., *the Helvetii (in Switzerland).*

hēri, adv., *yesterday.*

hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.* Strictly n. pl. of *hibernus*, with *castra* understood.

hibernus, a, um, adj., *of winter, wintry.*

hiemo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I winter, pass the winter.*

hiems (hēmps), hēmīs, f., *winter.*

hilaris, e, adj., *cheerful.*

Hōmērus, i, m., *Homer, a Greek poet.*

hōmo, inīs, com., *a man, a human being.*

hōnor, ōris, m., *an honour.*

hōra, ae, f., *an hour.*

Hōrātius, i, m., *Horace, a Roman poet.*

hortor, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I urge, exhort, encourage.*

hortus, i, m., *a garden.*

hostia, ae, f., *a victim.*

hostis, is, com., *an enemy, public enemy.*

hūmānus, a, um, adj., *human.*

hūmilis, e, adj., *low.* See p. 25.

hūmus, i, f., *the ground.* Loc.

hūmī, *on the ground.*

I

ibī, adv., *there.*

idem, eādem, idem, adj., *the same.* See p. 35.

ignāvē, adv., *indolently.*

INDUSTRIUS

ignāvia, ae, f., *cowardice, laziness, idleness, indolence.*

ignēus, a, um, adj., *made of fire.*

ignorātio, ōnis, f., *ignorance.*

ille, illa, illūd, demonstr. adj.

and pron., *that: he, she, it: p. 34.*

il-luxit [in, lūceo], illūcescere, 3,

v. impers., *it became light.*

imāgo, inīs, f., *a likeness, portrait, image.*

imitor, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I imitate.*

immōlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sacrifice.*

immortālis [in, neg., mortālis], e,

adj., *immortal.*

immortālitas, ātis, f., *immortality.*

impērātor, ōris, m., *a military commander (in chief), a general.*

impēritus [in, neg., pēritus], a,

um, adj., *unskilful; with gen.*

impērium, i, n., *command, empire.*

impēro, āvi, ātum, 1, with dat.,

I command.

impētus, ūs, m., *attack, onset.*

impransus [in, neg., pransus],

part. adj., *unbreakfasted.*

imprōbus [in, neg., prōbus], a,

um, adj., *dishonest, wicked.*

imprudentia, ae, f., *ignorance,*

imprudence.

in, prep. with acc., *into; with*

abl., in, among.

incendium, i, n., *a fire, conflagration.*

incendo, di, sum, dēre, 3, *I set fire to, burn.*

in-certus, a, um, adj., *uncertain.*

incipio [in, cāpio], cēpi, ceptum,

cēpere, 3, *I begin.*

incōla, ae, com., *an inhabitant.*

incūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I accuse,*

find fault with.

Indi, ōrum, m. pl., *the Indians,*

people of India.

in-doctus, a, um, adj., *unlearned.*

indulgēo, dūsi, dultum, dulgēre,

2, with dat., *I indulge.*

industrius, a, um, adj., *in-*

dustrious, busy.

INEO

in-ēo, īvi and īi, ītum, ire, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go into, enter.* Of seasons, to begin. — **consilium**, to form a plan.
iners, tis, *adj.*, *helpless, idle.*
infāmia, ae, *f.*, *infamy.*
infāmis, e, *adj.*, *infamous.*
infectus [in, *neg.*, factus], a, um, *adj.*, *undone.*
inferiōr, iūs, *comp.* of infērus, *adj.*, *lower, inferior.* See p. 25.
in-fēro, intūli, illātum, inferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I carry into*: — bellum (foll. by *dat.*), to make war on.
in-finitus, a, um, *adj.*, *unbounded, infinite.*
infirmitas, ātis, *f.*, *weakness.*
in-firmus, a, um, *adj.*, *weak, feeble.*
infrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *below.*
infringo [in, frango], frēgi, fractum, fringere, 3, *I break, impair.*
ingens, entis, *adj.*, *huge, immense.*
ingrēdiōr [in, grādior], gressus, grēdi, 3, *v. dep.*, *I enter.*
inimicitia, ae, *f.*, *enmity.*
inimicus [in, *neg.*, āmicus], a, um, *adj.*, *unfriendly.* As *subs.*, inimicus, i, m., a personal enemy.
initium, i, n., a beginning.
injustē, *adv.*, *unjustly.*
in-justus, a, um, *adj.*, *unjust.*
innūmērus, a, um, *adj.*, *innumerable.*
inops, ōpis, *adj.*, *destitute.*
insignis, e, *adj.*, *distinguished.*
institutio [in, stātuo], ūi, ūtum, ūere, 3, *I appoint, train.*
instrumentum, i, n., *stock in trade; an instrument.*
in-struō, xi, etum, strūere, 3, *I arrange, draw up in order.*
insūla, ae, *f.*, *an island.*
in-sum, fūi, esse, *v. irr.*, with *dat.*, *I am in.*
intelligo [inter, lēgo], lexi, lectum, ligere, 3, *I understand, perceive.*
intēr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *between, among.*

JUDEX

interclūdo [inter, claudō], clūsi, clūsum, clūdēre, 3, *I shut off, intercept.*
intēr-ēo, īi, ītum, ire, 4, *v. irr.*, *I perish.*
interficiō [inter, faciō], fēci, fec-tum, ficere, 3, *I put to death, kill.*
intērītus, ūs, m., *destruction.*
inter-sum, fūi, esse, *v. irr.* with *dat.*, *I am among, present at, take part in.*
intrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *inside of, within.*
intro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enter.*
intrō-ēo, īvi & īi, ītum, ire, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go into, enter.*
in-tūēor, ītus, ēri, 2, *v. dep.*, *I look upon or into.*
in-tūescō, tūmūi, tūescere, 3, *v. incept.*, *I swell.*
in-vēniō, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4, *I find, invent.*
invidiā, ae, *f.*, *envy, ill-will.*
ipse, a, um, *self, actual, very.* p. 35.
ira, ae, *f.*, *anger.*
irascor, irātus, irasci, 3, *v. dep.*, *I am angry.*
is, ēā, *id. that; he, she, it*: p. 35.
iste, a, ud, *adj. pron.*, *that (near you), that of yours*: p. 34.
istūc, *adv.*, *to-that-place, thither (where you are).*
itā, *adv.*, *in that way, thus, so.*
Itālia, ae, *f.*, *Italy.*
iter, itinēris, n., a journey.

J

jācēo, ūi, ītum, ēre, 2, *I lie (down).*
jācio, jēci, jactum, jācere, 3, *I throw.*
jam, *adv.*, *now, already.*
jūbēo, ssi, ssum, jūbere, 2, *I order; foll. by acc. and inf.*
jūcundē, *adv.*, *delightfully, pleasantly.*
jūcundus, a, um, *adj.*, *pleasant.*
jūdex, icis, *com.*, a judge.

JUDICIUM

jūdicium, *i, n.*, judgment.
 jūdice, āvi, ātum, *1, I* judge.
 jungo, nxi, nectum, ngēre, *3, I*
join. Flūmen ponte —, *to throw*
a bridge over a river.
 Jūno, ōnis, *f.*, Juno, a goddess.
 Jūpiter, Jōvis, *m.*, Jupiter, the
 chief god of the Romans. See p. 22.
 jūro, āvi, ātum, *1, I* swear. See
 p. 86, and Voc. 47.
 jūs, jūris, *n.*, right, law.
 jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n.*,
 an oath. See p. 22.
 justē, *adv.*, justly.
 justus, *a, um, adj.*, just.
 jūvenis, *is (gen. pl. jūvēnum),*
com., a young man or woman.
 jūventūs, ūtis, *f.*, youth; also
 collect., young people.
 juxtā, *prep. with acc.*, near, hard
 by, next to.

L

Lābiēnus, *i, m.*, Labienus, one of
 Caesar's lieutenants.
 lābor, ōris, *m.*, labour, hardship.
 lābor, lapsus, lābi, *3, v. dep.*, *I*
glide, pass away, fall.
 lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.
 Lācēdaemōn, ōnis, *f.*, Lacedae-
 mon or Sparta.
 Lācēdaemōnī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the
 Spartans.
 lācus, ūs, *m.*, a lake.
 Laeca, *ae, m.*, Laeca, a Roman.
 laetitia, *ae, f.*, joy, delight.
 laetus, *a, um, adj.*, joyful.
 lāpis, īdis, *m.*, a stone.
 lāpidēus, *a, um, adj.*, of stone.
 latē, *adv.*, widely, wide.
 lātius, *a, um, adj.*, Latin.
 Lātōna, *ae, f.*, Latona, mother of
 Apollo and Diana.
 latro, ōnis, *m.*, a robber.
 lātus, *a, um, adj.*, wide, broad.
 lātus, ōris, *n.*, side.
 laudo, āvi, ātum, *1, I* praise.
 laus, laudis, *f.*, praise.

LONGITUDO

lēgātus, *i, m.*, ambassador, lieu-
 tenant.
 lēgio, ōnis, *f.*, a legion. See
 Ex. xix, 7.
 lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgēre, *3, I*
gather, read.
 lēo, ōnis, *m.*, a lion.
 Lēonidās, *ae, m.*, Leonidas, a
 king of Sparta.
 lēpus, ōris, *m.*, a hare.
 Lesbos [-us], *i, f.*, Lesbos, an
 island off Asia Minor.
 lēvis, *e, adj.*, light.
 lēvis, *e, adj.*, smooth.
 lex, lēgis, *f.*, a law.
 liber, bri, *m.*, a book.
 liber, ēra, ērum, *adj.*, free.
 libērē, *adv.*, freely.
 libērī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
 libēro, āvi, ātum, *1, I* free, de-
 liver.
 libertās, ātis, *f.*, freedom, liberty.
 libet, libuit and libitum est,
 libēre, *2, v. impers.*, with *dat.*, it
 pleases.
 Libya, *ae, f.*, Africa.
 licet, licuit and licitum est,
 licēre, *2, v. impers.*, with *dat.*, it is
 lawful, allowed.
 licitor, ōris, *m.*, a licitor (attend-
 ant on a magistrate).
 lingua, *ae, f.*, tongue, language.
 liquet, licuit, liquere, *2, v. im-*
pers., with *dat.*, it is clear, evident.
 littēra [litēra], *ae, f.*, a letter of
 the alphabet.
 littērae [litērae], ārum, *f. pl.*,
 letters, learning; also an epistle,
 letter.
 litus, ōris, *n.*, a shore.
 Līvius, *i, m.*, Livy, a Roman his-
 torian.
 locus, *i, m.*; *pl. loci, n.*, and
 (rarely) loci, *m.*, a place.
 longē, *adv.*, far, far off.
 longinquitās, ātis, *f.*, length,
 distance.
 longinquus, *a, um, adj.*, long,
 distant.
 longitūdo, dīnis, *f.*, length.

LONGIUS

longius, adv., comp. of *longē*, farther, too far.

longus, a, um, adj., long.

lōquor, *lōcūtus*, *lōqui*, 3, v. dep., I speak.

Lūcēria, ae, f., *Luceria*, a town in *Apulia*; now *Lucera*.

lūcescit, [illuxit], *lūcescere*, 3, v. impers., it becomes light; day breaks.

Lūcius, i, m., *Lucius*, a Roman forename.

Lucrētius, i, m., *Lucretius*, a Roman poet.

lūdo, si, sum, *lūdēre*, 3, I play.

lūdus, i, m., play, game; school.

In pl., public games.

lūna, ae, f., the moon.

luscīnia, ae, f., a nightingale.

lux, *lūcis*, f., light.

Lycurgus, i, m., *Lycurgus*, a Spartan legislator.

M

Mācēdo, ōnis, m., a Macedonian.

māgis, comp. adv. (sup. *maximē*), rather, in a higher degree. See p. 76.

māgister, tri, m., a master, teacher.

māgistrātus, ūs, m., a magistrate.

magnificus, a, um, adj., magnificent. See p. 25.

magnōpērē, adv., greatly, earnestly. See p. 76.

magnus, a, um, adj., great. See p. 25.

māior, us, comp. adj., greater: in pl. as subs.,

mājores, um, m., ancestors.

mālē, adv. (comp. *pėjus*, sup. *pejsimē*), badly, ill.

mālēvōlus, a, um, adj., ill-wishing, malevolent, unkindly. See p. 25.

mālo, *māluī*, *malle*, v. irr., I am more willing, I prefer, had rather; usu. foll. by inf. See p. 78.

MENTIOR

mālum, i, n., an apple.

mālum, i, n., an evil.

mālus, i, f., an apple-tree.

mālus, a, um, adj., bad, wicked, evil. See p. 25.

mandātum, i, n., a charge, commission.

mānēo, nsi, nsum, *mānēre*, 2, I remain.

mānifestus, a, um, adj., evident, manifest.

mānipūlus, i, m., a mantle. See Ex. xix, 7.

mānus, ūs, f., a hand.

Mārāthōn, ōnis, f., *Marathon*, a town and plain in *Attica*.

māre, is, n., the sea.

margārita, ae, f., a pearl.

mārinus, a, um, adj., of the sea.

Mārius, i, m., *Marius*, a Roman general.

marmor, ōris, n., marble.

māter, tris, (gen. pl. *mātrum*), f., a mother.

maximē, superl. adv., most, especially. See p. 76.

maximus, superl. of *magnus*, greatest. See p. 25.

Maximus, i, m., *Maximus* (greatest), a surname of *Fabius*.

mēditor, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., I meditate on, practise, study.

mēllior, ūs, comp. adj., better. See pp. 19, 25.

membrāna, ae, f., thin skin, membrane.

mēmōr, ōris, adj., mindful; with gen.

mēmōrābilis, e, adj., memorable.

mēmōria, ae, f., memory.

Mēnāpii, ōrum, m. pl., *Menapii*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

mendax, ācis, adj., lying, false: as subs. m., a liar.

mens, *mentis*, f., the mind.

mensa, ae, f., a table.

mensis, is, m., a month.

mentior, itus, iri, 4, v. dep., I tell a lie, deceive.

MERE0

mērēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2, *I deserve*.
 More freq., mērēor, itus, ēri, 2,
v. dep. (in same sense).
 messis, is, *f.*, a crop, harvest.
 metallum, i, *n.*, a metal.
 mētior, mensus, mētiri, 4, *v. dep.*,
I measure.
 mētūo, ūi, —, ūere, 3, *I fear*.
 mētus, ūs, *m.*, fear.
 mēus, a, um (*voc. sing. masc. mi*),
poss. adj., my, mine.
 migro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I migrate*,
depart from.
 milēs, milītis, *c.*, a soldier.
 millē, num. *adj. indec.*, a thou-
 sand; also as *subs.*, *indec.* in
sing.; *pl. n.* milla, (mill-), ūum,
 thousands.
 Minerva, ae, *f.*, Minerva.
 minimē, *adv.*, in the least degree,
 not at all. See p. 76.
 minister, tri, *m.*, a servant.
 minor, ūs (*comp. adj.* to parvus),
 less.
 miror, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, *I*
wonder at, admire.
 mirus, a, um, *adj.*, wonderful.
 miser, ēra, ērum, *adj.*, wretched.
 misērōr, itus, misērēri, 2, *v.*
dep., with *gen.*, *I pity, have pity on*.
 misēret, āit, misērēre, 2, *v.*
impers., with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it*
excites pity. See p. 87.
 mitis, e, *adj.*, mild.
 mitto, misi, missum, mittere, 3, *I*
send.
 mōdus, i, *m.*, a measure, manner.
 moenia, ūum, *n. pl.*, fortifica-
 tions.
 mōlestus, a, um, *adj.*, trouble-
 some, offensive.
 mollō, īvi, itum, īre, 4, *I soften*,
assuage.
 mollis, e, *adj.*, soft.
 mōnēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2, *I advise*,
warn.
 mons, tis, *m.*, a mountain.
 mōnumentum, i, *n.*, a memorial,
 monument.
 morbus, i, *m.*, a disease.

NEMO

mōrior, mortūus, mōri, 3, *v. dep.*,
I die: fut. part. mōritūrus.
 mors, tis, *f.*, death.
 mortālis, e, *adj.*, mortal.
 mortūus, a, um, *part. and adj.*,
dead.
 mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom;
pl. mōres, um, morals, character.
 mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2,
I move, trouble.
 mox, *adv.*, soon, shortly.
 mulier, ēris, *f.*, a woman, wife.
 multitūdo, īnis, *f.*, a multitude.
 multum, *adv.*, much, greatly. See
 p. 76.
 multus, a, um, *adj.*, much; *pl.*,
 many. See p. 25.
 mundus, i, *m.*, the world, the
 universe.
 mūnimentum, i, *n.*, a fortifica-
 tion.
 mūnio, īvi, itum, īre, 4, *I fortify*.
 mūnus, ēris, *n.*, a gift, a duty.
 mūrus, i, *m.*, a wall.
 mūto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I change*.⁶

N

narro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate*.
 nascor, nātus, nasci, 3, *v. dep.*, *I*
am born.
 nātūra, ae, *f.*, nature.
 nātus, a, um, *part. and adj.*,
 born, aged (so many years).
 nauta, ae, *m.*, a sailor.
 nāvālis, e, *adj.*, naval.
 nāvis, is, *f.*, a ship.
 nē, *conj.*, not, lest, that not. See
 pp. 48, 98.
 nēc, nēquē, *conj.*, neither, nor.
 nēcessārius, a, um, *adj.*, neces-
 sary.
 nēfās, *indecl. n.*, wickedness, im-
 piety.
 nēgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I deny*.
 nēgōtium, i, *n.*, business.
 nēmo, īnem (*gen. and abl. not*
in use), *com.*, nobody, no one.

NEPTUNUS

Neptūnus, *i*, *m.*, *Neptune, god of the sea.*

nēquam, *indecl. adj.*, *worthless.* See p. 25.

nēquō, *ivi* or *īi*, *ītum*, *īre*, 4, *v. irr.*, *I am unable, cannot.* See p. 84.

Nēro, *ōnis*, *m.*, *Nero, a Roman emperor.*

Nervii, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, *the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*

nescio, *ivi* or *īi*, *ītum*, *īre*, 4, *I know not, am ignorant of.*

neuter, *tra*, *trum* (*gen. sing. iūs*, *dat. ī*), *adj.*, *neither of two.*

nē-vē, *conj.*, = *et ne*, *and that not, and not, nor.*

nidus, *i*, *m.*, *a nest.*

niger, *gra*, *grum*, *adj.*, *black.*

nihil, *indecl. n.*, *nothing.*

Nīlus, *i*, *m.*, *the Nile.*

nīmis, *adv.*, *too, too much.*

ningit, *ninxit*, *ningere*, 3, *v. impers.*, *it snows.*

nisi, *conj.*, *unless, except.*

nitor, *nisus* and *nixus*, *nīti*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I strive.*

nix, *nīvis*, *f.*, *snow.*

nōbilis, *e*, *adj.*, *distinguished, celebrated, noble.*

nōcēo, *ti*, *ītum*, *ēre*, 2, *with dat.*, *I hurt, harm, am hurtful to.*

nōlo, *nōlūi*, *nolle*, *v. irr.*, *I am unwilling.* See p. 78.

nōmen, *īnis*, *n.*, *a name.*

nōn, *adv.*, *not.*

non-nullus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *usu. pl.*, *some.* See *nullus*.

non-nunquam, *adv.*, *sometimes.*

nōs, *pl. of ego*: p. 33.

noster, *tra*, *trum*, *poss. pron. adj.*, *our, ours.*

nōtus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *known.*

nōvus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *new.*

nox, *noctis*, *f.*, *night.*

noxius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, *hurtful, injurious, guilty.* See p. 25.

nūbes, *is*, *a*, *a cloud.*

nullus, *a*, *um* (*gen. sing. iūs*, *dat. ī*), *adj.*, *no, not.*

ODIUM

num, *interrog. part.* See p. 95.

nūmero, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, *I count.*
nūmerus, *i*, *m.*, *a number, a quantity.*

nunc, *adv.*, *now.*

nunquam, *adv.*, *never.*

nūtrio, *ivi*, *ītum*, *īre*, 4, *I nourish, nurture.*

O

ōb, *prep. with acc.*, *on account of.*
ōbādō, *ivi*, *ītum*, *īre*, 4, *with dat.*, *I obey.*

ōb-ēo, *ivi* or *īi*, *ītum*, *īre*, 4, *v. irr.*, *I meet, esp. meet death, I die.*
obliviscor, *litus*, *livisci*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I forget; with gen.*

obscurō, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, *I darken.*
ob-servo, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, *I observe, respect.*

obsēs, *īdis*, *com.*, *a hostage.*

obsidēo [*ob, sēdeo*], *sēdi*, *sessum*, *sīdēre*, 2, *I blockade, lay siege to.*

obsīdiō, *ōnis*, *f.*, *a siege, blockade.*

ob-sto, *stīti*, *stātum*, *stāre*, 1, *I oppose, prevent.*

ob-sum, *obfui*, *obesse*, *v. irr.* *with dat.*, *I am hurtful to, injure.*

ob-tempēro, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, *with dat.*, *I obey, comply with.*

obtīnēo [*ob, tēneo*], *tīi*, *tentum*, *tīnēre*, 2, *I hold, keep possession of.*

occīdens, *tis*, *m.* (*prop. part. of occīdo*, *to set*); *the setting sun, the west.*

occīdo [*ob, caedo*], *cīdi*, *cisum*, *cīdēre*, 3, *I slay, kill.*

occīdo [*ob, cādo*], *cīdi*, *cāsum*, *cīdēre*, 3, *to set* (as the sun, moon, etc.).

occūpātus, *a*, *um*, *part. and adj.*, *engaged, busy.*

occūpo, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, *I seize upon.*

ocēānus, *i*, *m.*, *the ocean.*

octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, *eighty.*

ocūlus, *i*, *m.*, *an eye.*

ōdium, *i*, *n.*, *hatred.*

ODOR

ōdor, ōris, *m.*, a smell, scent.
offēro [ob, fēro], obtūli, oblātum,
 offerre, 3, *v. irr.*, I present.
ōlim, adv., formerly, once upon
 a time.
omnis, e, *adj.*, all, every.
ōnus, ōris, *n.*, a load, burden.
ōpera, ae, *f.*, pains, labour:
 operam dare, to do all in one's
 power.
oportet, ūit, ēre, 2, *v. impers.*,
 with acc., it behoves.
oppidum, i, *n.*, a town.
oppōno [ob, pōno], pōsui, pōsi-
 tum, pōnere, 3, I set against,
 oppose.
opprīmo [ob, prēmo], pressi, pres-
 sum, primēre, 3, I press upon, over-
 whelm.
oppugno [ob, pugno], āvi, ātum,
 1, I attack, assault.
optīmē, adv., sup. of bēnē, ex-
 cellently: p. 76.
optimus, a, um, *adj. sup.* of
 bōnus: p. 25.
opto, āvi, ātum, 1, I wish, desire.
ōpulentus, a, um, *adj.*, wealthy.
opus, ōris, *n.*, a work.
opus, *n. indecl.*, with abl., need,
 necessity; also used as *adj.*, neces-
 sary.
ōra, ae, *f.*, coast.
ōrāculum, i, *n.*, an oracle.
ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*, an oration,
 speech.
ōrātor, ōris, *m.*, an orator, an
 envoy.
ordior, orsus, ordiri, 4, *v. dep.*,
 I begin.
ōrior, ortus, ōriri, 4 and 3, *v.*
dep., to rise (as the sun, moon,
 etc.). *Fut. part.*, ōritūrus. See
 p. 146.
ornāmentum, i, *n.*, an ornament.
orno, āvi, ātum, 1, I adorn,
 decorate.
oro, āvi, ātum, 1, I entreat, pray.
ōs, ōris (no *gen. pl.*), *n.*, mouth.
ōs, ossis (*gen. pl.* ossium), *n.*,
 bone.

PER

P

pābūlor, ātus, āri, 1, *v. dep.*, I
 forage. Milit. word.
paenitet (poe-), ūit, ēre, 2, *v.*
impers., with acc. and *gen.*, it
 repents. See p. 87.
pallium, i, *n.*, a cloak.
pārātus, a, um, *part. and adj.*,
 prepared, ready.
pārens, entis, (*gen. pl.* pārentum),
 e., a parent.
pārēo, āi, itum, ēre, 2, with dat.,
 I obey.
pārio, pēperi, partum, pārēro, 3,
 I bring forth. *Fut. part.* pārītūrus.
pāro, āvi, ātum, 1, I prepare,
 get, gain; raise (forces).
pars, tis, *f.*, a part.
partior, itus, iri, 4, *v. dep.*, I
 share, divide.
parvus, a, um, *adj.*, small, little.
 See p. 25.
passus, ūs, *m.*, a pace (about 5
 feet). Mille passus or passuum,
 1000 paces, a (Roman) mile.
pāter, tris, (*gen. pl.* patrum), *m.*,
 a father.
pātienter, adv., patiently.
patientia, ae, *f.*, patience.
pātiōr, passus, pāti, 3, *v. dep.*, I
 endure, suffer.
patria, ae, *f.*, native land, one's
 country.
pauci, ae, a, *pl. adj.*, few.
pauper, ōris, *adj.*, poor.
paupertās, ātis, *f.*, poverty.
pāvo, ōnis, *m.*, a peacock.
pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pēcūnia, ae, *f.*, money.
pēdēs, itis, *m.*, a foot-soldier. *In*
pl., infantry?
peditātus, ūs, *m.*, infantry.
pellis, is, *f.*, a skin, hide (of an
 animal).
pēnēs, *prep.* with acc., in the
 power of.
pēr, *prep.* with acc., through;
 during.

PERCIPIO

percipio [per, cāpio], cēpi, cep-
tum, cāpere, 3, *I take in; perceive.*
per-do, dīdi, dītum, perdere, 3,
I destroy, ruin.
per-ēo, ēi, itum, īre, 4, *v. irr., I*
perish.
perfectus, a, um, *part. and adj.,*
finished, perfect.
per-fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v.*
irr., I bear through, endure.
pericūlum, i, n., *danger.*
pēritus, a, um, *adj., with gen.,*
skilful, skilled in.
per-lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgere, 3,
I read through.
per-multi, ae, a, *pl. adj., very*
many.
perniciōsus, a, um, *adj., destruc-*
tive, baneful.
perpētūus, a, um, *adj., continual.*
per-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rum-
pere, 3, *I burst through.*
Persa (-ēs), ae, m., *a Persian.*
per-suādēo, suāsi, suāsum, suā-
dere, 2, *with dat., I persuade.*
per-vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnire,
4, *I arrive at.*
perversus, a, um, *adj., wilful,*
perverse.
pēs, pēdis, m., *a foot.*
pessimē, see **mālē**.
pēto, īvi and īi, itum, pētēre, 3,
I seek, make for.
Phaëthōn, ontis, m., *Phaëthon, a*
son of Apollo.
Phidiās, ae, m., *Phidias, a*
famous Athenian sculptor.
philōsophus, i, m., *a philosopher.*
pīgēt, pīguit and pīgītum est,
pīgēre, 2, *v. impers., with acc. and*
gen., it vezes. See p. 87.
pingo, pinxi, pīctum, pingēre,
3, *I paint, embroider.*
pīrum, i, n., *a pear.*
pīrus, i, f., *a pear-tree.*
piscis, is, m., *a fish.*
Pisistrātus, i, m., *Pisistratus, a*
despot of Athens.
placēo, ūi, itum, ēre, 2, *with*
dat., I please, am pleasing to; also,

POTIOR

plācet, ūit or ītum est, ēre, 2, *v.*
impers., with dat., it pleases.
plācidus, a, um, *adj., quiet.*
plānē, *adv., altogether.*
plānitēs, ēi, f., *a plain.*
planta, ae, f., *a shoot, plant.*
Plāto, ōnis, m., *Plato, a famous*
Greek philosopher.
plēnus, a, um, *adj., with gen.,*
full.
Plīnius, i, m., *Pliny, the name of*
two Roman authors.
pluit, pluit or plūvit, plūere, 3,
v. impers., it rains.
plūrimus, a, um, *sup. adj., very*
much; in pl., very many, most. See
p. 25.
plūrimum, *sup. adv., most, very*
much. See p. 76.
plūs, ūris, *compar. adj., neut.,*
in pl. plūres, plūra, more.
poena, ae, f., *punishment.*
Poeni, ōrum, m. *pl., the Cartha-*
ginians.
poenitet, see **pae-**.
pōēta, ae, m., *a poet.*
pollicēor, itus, ēri, 2, *v. dep., I*
promise.
Pompēius (usu. *trisyll.*), i, m.,
Pompey, the rival of Caesar.
pōnē, *prep. with acc., behind.*
pōno, pōsti, pōsitum, pōnēre, 3,
I place, pitch (a camp).
pōns, ntis, m., *a bridge.*
portā, ae, f., *a gate.*
porto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I carry.*
portus, ūs, m., *a harbour.* See
p. 120.
possum, pōtūi, posse, *v. irr., I*
am able, can. See p. 77.
post, *prep. with acc., after, be-*
hind.
postūlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I de-*
mand.
pōtens, entis, *adj., powerful.*
pōtentia, ae, f., *power, influence,*
personal ascendancy.
pōtētās, ātis, f., *(lawful) power*
(of a magistrate).
pōtior, itus, īri, 4 and 3 (see

PRAE

p. 146), *v. dep.*, with *abl.*, also *gen.*, *I take possession of, obtain.*

prae, *prep.* with *abl.*, *before, in comparison with; by reason of (after a negative).*

prae-altus, a, um, *adj.*, *very high, very deep.*

praebeo, ūi, ūtum, ēre, 2, *I furnish, afford, exhibit, set (an example).*

praeceptor, ōris, m., *a teacher.*

praeceptum, i, n., *precept, instruction, lesson.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

prae-ēo, iui and iī, ūtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go before.*

prae-fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I prefer, place or esteem before.*

prae-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittere, 3, *I send on before.*

praemium, i, n., *a reward.*

praesens, entis, *adj.*, *present.*

praestābilis, e, *adj.*, *excellent.*

praestans, antis, *adj.*, *excellent.*

prae-sum, fui, esse, *v. irreg.*, with *dat.*, *I am at the head of.*

praetēr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *beside.*

praetēr-ēo, iui, more frequently iī, ūtum, īre, 4, *v. irr.*, *I pass by.*

praetērītus, a, um, *adj.*, *past.*

prae-vēnio, vēni, ventum, vēnire, *I anticipate.*

prēmo, pressi, pressum, prēmēre, 3, *I press.*

primārius, a, um, *adj.*, *first-rate, eminent.*

primō, *sup. adv.*, *at first.*

primum, *sup. adv.*, *first, in the first place.* See p. 76.

primus, a, um, *sup. adj.*, *first.* See p. 26.

priōr, ūs, *comp. adj.*, *former.* See p. 26.

prištīnus, a, um, *adj.*, *former, older.*

prīus, *comp. adv.*, *sooner, before.*

prīus-quam (often as two words separated by others), *conj.*, *before that.*

PUGNA

prō, *prep.* with *abl.*, *before, for, on behalf of.*

prōbē, *adv.*, *rightly, properly.*

prōbitās, ātis, f., *honesty, integrity.*

prōbus, a, um, *adj.*, *good, upright.*

prō-do, dīdi, dītum, prōdēre, 3, *I hand down; betray.*

proellum, i, n., *a battle.*

prō-fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I extend.*

prōfficeor, fectus, ficeisci, 3, *v. dep.*, *I set out.*

prōfundus, a, um, *adj.*, *very deep.*

prōgrēdiōr [pro, grādiōr], gressus, grēdi, 3, *v. dep.*, *I advance.*

prōhibēo [pro, hābeo], ūi, ūtum, ēre, 2, *I keep off, prohibit, prevent.*

prō-mitto, mīsi, missum, mittere, 3, *I promise.*

prōpē, *prep.* with *acc.*, *near.*

prōpē, *adv.*, *near, nearly.*

prōpinquus, a, um, *adj.*, *near.*

proptēr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *on account of.*

prō-sum, fui, prōdesse, *v. irr.*, *I am serviceable to, do good to.* See p. 32.

Multum prodesse, *to be of great service to.*

prō-vidēo, vīdi, visum, vīdēre, 2, *I foresee, provide.*

proximē, *sup. adv.*, *very near.* See p. 76.

proximus, a, um, *sup. adj.*, *nearest, next, preceding.* See p. 26.

prūdēns, ntis, *adj.*, *prudent, sagacious.*

prūdētīa, ae, f., *knowledge, prudence.*

prūnum, i, n., *a plum.*

prūnus, i, f., *a plum-tree.*

publicus, a, um, *adj.*, *public, i.e. belonging to the state.*

pūdet, ūit or pūdtum est, ēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it shames.* See p. 87.

pūella, ae, f., *a girl.*

pūer, ēri, m., *a boy.*

pugna, ae, f., *a battle.*

PUGNO

pugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight*.
pulcher, chra, chrum, *adj.*, beautiful.

Pūnicus, a, um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian.

pūnio, īvi, itum, īre, 4, *I punish*.

pūto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think*.

Pythāgorās, ae, m., Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher

Q

quaero, quaesīvi (xi), sītum, quaerēre, 3, *I seek, enquire*.

quaestio, ōnis, f., a question.

quālis, e, pron. *adj.*, of what sort; with tālis, such as.

quam, *adv.* and *conj.*, than, as.

quantus, a, um, *adj.*, how great; with tantus, as great as.

quārē, *adv.*, why, on what account.

quāsi, *conj.*, as if.

quātio, no *perf.*, quassum, quātēre, 3, *I shake*.

quattuor, indec. num. *adj.*, four.

-que, *conj.* (always attached to the word which it connects with what precedes), and.

quercus, ūs, f., an oak, oak-tree.

quīā, *conj.*, because.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, pron. *indef.*, a certain, certain one, somebody.

quidē, *adv.* and *conj.* (never first in a sentence), indeed.

quīn, *conj.*, that not (with subj.). See pp. 48, 98.

quīnquē, indec. num. *adj.*, five.

quīs (quī), quae, quīd (quōd), pron. *interrog.*, who, which, what?

quisnam, quāenam, quīdnam, *interrog. pron.*, who, which, what?

quisquē, quaeque, quodque (and subst. quidque or quicque), *indef. pron.*, every one, each one, each.

quō, *interrog.* and *rel. adv.*, whither.

REGO

quō, *conj.* with subj., in order that. See p. 99.

quōd, *conj.*, because, that.

quōminūs, *conj.* with subj., that not. See p. 99.

quondam, *adv.*, at a certain time, formerly, once.

quōquē, *conj.*, also, even, too.

quōt, indecl. num. *adj.*, how many?

quōtidīe (cōt-), *adv.*, every day.

quum : see cum.

R

rādix, icis, f., a root.

rāpax, ācis, *adj.*, rapacious.

rāpidus, a, um, *adj.*, rapid.

rāpio, ūi, raptum, rapēre, 3, *I seize*.

rārō, *adv.*, seldom, rarely.

rārus, a, um, *adj.*, rare, thinly scattered.

rātio, ōnis, f., reason; a reckoning.

rēcito, āvi, ātum, 1, *I read aloud*.

rēcōrdor, ātus, āri, 1, v. *dep.*, usu. with acc., also *gen.*, *I call to mind*.

rē-crēo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I refresh*.

rectē, *adv.*, rightly.

rectus, a, um, *adj.*, straight,

right.

rēcūpēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I recover, get back*.

rēcūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I object, refuse*.

rēd-āmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I love in return*.

rēd-ēo, īi, itum, īre, 4, v. *irr.*, *I return*.

re-fēro, rettūli or rētūli, rēlātum, rēfferre, 3, v. *irr.*, *I bring back*.

rēgina, ae, f., a queen.

regno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I reign, am king*.

regnum, i, n., a kingdom.

rēgo, rēxi, rectum, rēgēre, 3, *I rule*.

REGULUS

Rēgūlus, i, m., *Regulus*, a famous Roman.

rē-linguo, liqui, lictum, linquere, 3, *I leave, quit.*

rēmīniscor, —, isci, 3, *v. dep.* with gen., *I remember.*

rē-novo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I make new again, restore.*

rēpērio [pārio], reppēri, reperitum, repērire, 4, *I find, invent.*

rēs, rei, f., *thing, matter, affair, subject.*

rē-sisto, stīti, sistere, 3, with dat., *I resist.*

re-spondēo, di, sum, dēre, 2, with dat., *I answer.*

res-publīca, rei-publīcae, f., *commonwealth.* See p. 22.

rētē, is, n., *a net.*

rēus, i, m., *an accused man, defendant.*

rēverto, ti, sum, tēre, 3; also as *v. dep.*, **rēvertor**, versus, 3, *I turn back, return.*

rex, rēgis, m., *a king.*

Rhēnus, i, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhōdānus, i, m., *the Rhone.*

Rhōdōs (-us), i, f., *Rhodes, an island off Asia Minor.*

rīpa, ae, f., *a bank (of river).*

rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I ask.*

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, adj., *Roman.* Also as *subs.*, **Rōmānus**, i, m., *a Roman.*

Rōmūlus, i, m., *Romulus.*

rōsa, ae, f., *a rose.*

Roscīus, i, m., *Roscius, a Roman.*

rūpēs, is, f., *a rock.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country* (as distinguished from town or city).

S

sācer, cra, crum, adj., *sacred.*

saepē, adv., *often.* Comp. **saepius**, *oftener*; sup. **saepissimē**, *oftenest, very often.*

saepēnūmēro, adv., *oftentimes.*

SEPTEM

sāgitta, ae, f., *an arrow.*

Sāguntini, ōrum, m. pl., *Saguntines, the people of Saguntum, in Spain.*

Sālāmis, inis, acc. **Sālāmīnā**, f., *Salamis, an island near Athens.*

Sallustius, i, m., *Sallust, a Roman historian.*

salto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dance.*

sālūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*

salvus, a, um, adj., *safe.*

sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*

sapienter, adv., *wisely.*

sāpiens, ntis, adj., *wise*; as *subs.* m., *a wise man.*

sāpientia, ae, f., *wisdom.*

sāpio, īvi or īi, no sup., ēre, 3, *to savour or taste of*; *to be wise.*

sātis, adv., *enough, sufficiently.*

Satrius, i, m., *Satrius, a Roman.*

scēlus, ēris, n., *a crime.*

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge.*

scio, īvi, ītum, scire, 4, *I know.*

Scīpio, ōnis, m., *Scipio* (a Roman family name).

scribo, psi, ptum, hēre, 3, *I write.*

scriptor, ōris, m., *a writer, author.*

scūtum, i, n., *a shield.*

Scythā and **Scythēs**, ae, m., *a Scythian.*

secundum, prep. with acc., *following, in accordance with.*

sēd, conj., *but.*

sēdēo, sēdi, sessum, sēdēre, 2, *I sit.*

sēdēs, is, f., *a seat.*

segnitēs, ēi, f., *slowness, indolence.*

semper, adv., *always.*

sēnātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

sēnectūs, ūtis, f., *old age.*

sēnex, sēnis, adj. (of persons only), *old.* As *subs.* m., *an old man.* See p. 22; also p. 25 (compar.).

sensus, ūs, m., *sense.*

sentio, si, sum, sentire, 4, *I feel, perceive.*

sēpēlio, īvi or īi, pultum, sēpēlire, 4, *I bury.*

septem, num. adj. *indec.*, *seven*

SEQUOR

sēquor, **sēcūtus**, **sēqui**, 3, *v. dep.*, *I follow. Impers.*, *sēquitur*, *it follows.*

sērēnus, *a, um, adj.*, *clear, calm.*

sermo, **ōnis**, *m.*, *a discourse.*

sēro, **sēvi**, **sātum**, **sērere**, 3, *I plant, sow.*

servitūs, **ūtis**, *f.*, *slavery.*

Servius, *i, m.*, *Servius, a Roman forename.*

servo, **āvi**, **ātum**, 1, *I preserve, save.*

servus, *i, m.*, *a slave.*

sēvērus, *a, um, adj.*, *strict, severe.*

sī, *conj.*, *if.*

Sicilia, *ae, f.*, *Sicily.*

sīdus, **ēris**, *n.*, *a constellation.*

signum, *i, n.*, *a sign, signal.*

silentium, *i, n.*, *silence.*

silva, *ae, f.*, *a wood.*

sīmilis, *e, adj.*, *like. See p. 25.*

sīmūl, *adv.*, *at the same time.*

sīmūl-āc (*atque*), or as two words, *conj.*, *as soon as.*

sīmūlācrum, *i, n.*, *an image, statue.*

sīmūlatiō, **ōnis**, *f.*, *a pretence.*

sīnē, *prep.* with *abl.*, *without.*

sōcer, **eri**, *m.*, *a father-in-law.*

sōciūs, *i, m.*, *a partner, ally, companion.*

Sōcrātēs, *is, m.*, *Socrates, the sage of Athens.*

sōl, **sōlis**, *m.*, *the sun.*

sōlēo, **ītus sum**, **ēre**, 2, *v. semi-dep.*, *I am accustomed. See p. 86.*

sōlers (*sollers*), **rtis**, *adj.*, *skilful, ingenious.*

Sōlōn, **ōnis**, *m.*, *Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.*

sōlum, *adv.*, *only.*

sōlus, *a, um, adj.* (*gen. sing. iūs*, *dat. ī*), *alone. See p. 23.*

solvō, **solvi**, **sōlūtum**, **solvēre**, 3, *I loosen, pay, dissolve.*

somnus, *i, m.*, *sleep.*

sōnītus, **ūs**, *m.*, *sound, noise.*

sōror, **ōris**, *f.*, *sister.*

sors, **tis**, *f.*, *lot, portion.*

SUMMUS

Sparta, *ae, f.*, *Sparta.*

specto, **āvi**, **ātum**, 1, *I look at, behold.*

spēcūlor, **ātus**, **āri**, 1, *v. dep.*, *I spy out.*

spērātus, *a, um, part. and adj.*, *hoped for.*

spēro, **āvi**, **ātum**, 1, *I hope.*

spēs, **ei**, *f.*, *hope: in spem venire, to conceive a hope.*

splendīdus, *a, um, adj.*, *splendid, bright.*

splendor, **ōris**, *m.*, *brightness, brilliancy.*

stātīm, *adv.*, *immediately.*

stātiō, **ōnis**, *f.*, *a post, station.*

stātuo, **tūi**, **ūtum**, **ūere**, 3, *I fix, determine.*

stella, *ae, f.*, *a star.*

sto, **stēti**, **stātum**, **stāre**, 1, *I stand.*

strēnūē, *adv.*, *vigorously.*

strēnūus, *a, um, adj.*, *vigorous.*

stūdēo, **ūi**, **ēre**, 2, with *dat.*, *I am eager, zealous for.*

stūdīōsus, *a, um, adj.*, with *gen.*, *zealous, eager after.*

stūdium, *i, n.*, *zeal, a pursuit, study.*

stultitiā, *ae, f.*, *folly.*

stultus, *a, um, adj.*, *foolish.*

suādēo, **suāsī**, **suāsum**, **suādēre**, 2, with *dat.*, *I advise.*

suāvis, *e, adj.*, *sweet, delightful.*

sūb, *prep.* with *abl.*, *beneath, under; with acc., to beneath, up to; of time, about, towards.*

sub-difficilis, *e, adj.*, *somewhat difficult.*

sūb-ēo, **īi**, **ītum**, **īre**, 4, *v. irr.*, *I go up to, under.*

sūbitus, *a, um, adj.*, *sudden.*

sub-cēquor, **cūtus**, **sēqui**, 3, *v. dep.*, *I follow up.*

sub-sum, *no perf.*, **sūbesse**, *v. irr.*, *I am under, near.*

subter, *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl.*, *under, beneath.*

summus, *a, um, superl.* of **sūpērus**, *highest, utmost, greatest: p. 25.*

SUPER

sūpēr, *prep.*, usually with *acc.*, sometimes *abl.*, *over*, *above*.

sūpéro, *āvi, ātum*, 1, *I overcome*, *surmount*, *cross* (mountains).

sūper-sum, *fui, esse, v. irr.*, with *dat.*, *I remain over*, *survive*.

sūpērus, *a, um, adj.*, *upper*. See p. 25.

suprā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *above*.

suprēmus, *a, um, adj.*, *sup.* of *sūpērus*, *highest*; relating to time, *last*. See p. 25.

suscipio [*sub, capio*], *cēpi, cep-tum, cīpēre*, 3, *I undertake*.

sūus, *a, um, refl. pron. adj.*, *his, her, its, their own*.

Syracusae, *arum, f. pl.*, *Syracuse*.

T

tābernācūlum, *i, n.*, *a tent*.

tācēo, *ui, itum, ēre*, 2, *I am silent*.

taedēt, *dūit* or *pertaesum est*, *taedēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, *it disgusts, wearies*. See p. 87.

tālis, *e, pron. adj.*, *of that sort, such*.

tam, *adv.*, *so, to such a degree*.

tandem, *adv.*, *at length, at last*.

tantum, *adv.*, *only*.

Tarquinius, *i, m.*, *Tarquinius* (*Tarquin*); the name of two kings of Rome.

taurus, *i, m.*, *a bull*.

tēgo, *texi, tectum, tēgere*, 3, *I cover*.

tēlum, *i, n.*, *a dart, weapon, missile*.

tēmēritās, *ātis, f.*, *recklessness, rashness*.

tempestās, *ātis, f.*, *a tempest*.

templum, *i, n.*, *a temple*.

tempus, *ōris, n.*, *time*.

tēnēo, *ui, tentum, tēnēre*, 2, *I hold, contain, retain*.

tēner, *ēra, erum, adj.*, *tender*.

tēnūis, *e, adj.*, *thin, delicate*.

TRISTIS

tēnūs, *prep.* with *abl.* and *gen.*, *reaching to, as far as*. See p. 74.

terra, *ae, f.*, *the earth, land*.

terrēo, *ui, itum, ēre*, 2, *I terrify, frighten, alarm*.

terror, *ōris, m.*, *terror, alarm*.

Thālēs, *is and ētis, m.*, *Thales, a philosopher*.

Thēmistōclēs, *is, m.*, *Themistocles, a famous Athenian*.

Tībērius (*Ti.*), *i, m.*, *Tiberius, a Roman emperor*.

tigris, *is or idis, com.*, *a tiger, tigress*.

tīmēo, *ui, ēre*, 2, *I fear*.

tīmīdus, *a, um, adj.*, *timid*.

tīmor, *ōris, m.*, *fear*.

Timōthēus, *i, m.*, *Timotheus, a famous Athenian*.

Titus (*T.*), *i, m.*, *Titus* (a common Roman forename).

tōnat, *uit, āre*, 1, *v. impers.*, *it thunders*.

tōtus, *a, um, adj.* (*gen. ius, Lat. i*), *the whole, all*: p. 23.

trabs, *trābis, f.*, *a beam*.

tracto, *āvi, ātum*, 1, *I handle, deal with*.

trādo [*trans, do*], *dixi, dītum, dēre*, 3, *I hand down, deliver*.

trāho, *traxi, tractum, trāhēre*, 3, *I draw, drag*.

tranquillus, *a, um, adj.*, *calm*.

trans, *prep.* with *acc.*, *across*.

trans-dūco, *duxi, ductum, dū-cēre*, 3, *I lead across*.

trans-ēo, *ivi* or *ii, itum, īre*, 4, *v. irr.*, *I cross over, pass through*.

Trāsimēnus, *i, m.*, *the lake Trasi-menus in Italy*.

Trēbōnīus, *i, m.*, *Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

trēcenti, *ae, a, num. adj. pl.*, *three hundred*.

trēs, *trīa, num. adj. pl.*, *three*. See p. 27.

tribūo, *ui, ūtum, ūere*, 3, *I give, assign, ascribe*.

trīgintā, *num. adj. indec.*, *thirty*.

tristis, *e, adj.*, *sad*.

TRIUMPHO

trīumpho, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enjoy a triumph.* See foll. art.

trīumphus, 1, m., a triumphal procession of a victorious general at Rome; a triumph.

Trōja, ae, f., Troy, in Asia Minor.

Trōjānus, a, um, adj., Trojan.

tū, thou (you). See p. 33.

tūēor, tūtus, ēri, 2, v. dep., *I guard, protect.*

Tullius, i, m., Tullius, a Roman family name

tum, adv., then.

turpis, e, adj., base, disgraceful.

turpītudo, inis, f., disgrace.

turris, is, f., a tower. See p. 118.

tūtus, a, um, adj., safe.

tūus, a, um, poss. pron. adj., thy, thine; your, yours. (Only used in speaking of one person.)

tyrannus, i, m., a despot, tyrant.

U

ubi, adv., where.

ullus, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. iūs, dat. ī), any. See p. 23.

ultrā, prep. with acc., on the farther side of, beyond.

unquam, adv., at any time, ever.

ūnus, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. iūs, dat. ī), one, alone. See pp. 23, 125.

urbs, urbis, f., a city.

ūt, conj., that, in order that. See p. 98.

ūter, trā, trum, adj. (gen. sing. iūs, dat. ī), which of two. See p. 23.

ūtīlis, e, adj., useful.

ūtor, ūsus, ūti, 3, v. dep., with abl., *I use, enjoy.*

ūterquē, utrāquē, utrumquē (gen. sing. utriusque, dat. utriquē), each, both.

uxor, ōris, f., a wife.

V

vālēs, ūi, itum, ēre, 2, *I am strong, in good health.*

vālētudo, inis, f., health.

PR L. I.

VEXO

vālīdus, a, um, adj., strong.

vallis (-ēs), is, f., a valley.

vārius, a, um, adj., different, various.

vasto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I lay waste.*

vectigāl, ālis, n., a tax.

vēhēmenter, adv., vehemently, warmly, greatly.

vēho, vxi, vectum, vēhēre, 4, *I carry; in pass., I ride.*

Vēiētēs, um, m. pl., the people of Veii, near Rome.

vēlox, ōcis, adj., swift.

vēnērōr, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I reverence, worship.*

vēniō, vēni, vēntum, vēnīre, 4, *I come.*

vēnor, ātus, āri, 1, v. dep., *I hunt.*

ventīto, āvi, 1, v. freq., *I come frequently.*

ventus, i, m., the wind.

Vēnūsia, ae, f., Venusia, a town in Italy, now Venosa.

vēr, vēris, n., the spring.

vērēor, itus, ēri, 2, v. dep., *I fear, reverence.*

vērī-similis, e, adj., likely, probable.

versus, ūs, m., a line, verse.

versūs, prep. with acc., towards (only of place or direction). See p. 73.

vērūs, a, um, adj., true.

vescor, no perf., vesci, 3, v. dep., with abl., *I feed, live on.*

vespērascit, āvit, ascōre, 3, v. imper., evening approaches.

Vesta, ae, f., Vesta, the goddess of fire and hearth.

vester, tra, trum, poss. pron., your, yours (only in speaking to more than one person).

vestimentum, i, n., clothing.

vestio, ivi, itum, ire, 4, *I clothe.*

vestis, is, f., clothing, a garment.

vēterrīmus, sup. of vetus.

vētus, vētēris, adj., old, ancient.

Pl. m., vētērēs, um, the ancients.

vexo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I vex, harass, oppress.*

VIA

via, ae, f., a way, road.
victima, ae, f., a victim.
victor, ōris, m., a conqueror.
victōria, ae, f., victory.
vidēo, vīdi, visum, vidēre, 2, I see; in pass.—
vidēor, visus, vidēri, 2, I seem, appear.
vigilo, āvi, ātum, 1, I watch, I am awake.
vīginti, indec. num. adj., twenty.
vilis, e, adj., cheap, common.
vincio, vinxi, vinctum, vincire, 4, I bind.
vinco, vīci, victum, vincere, 3, I conquer.
vinculum, i, n., a chain, bond.
vinum, i, n., wine.
vir, vīri, m., a man.
virgo, inis, f., a maiden.
virtus, ūtis, f., valour, virtue, good quality.
vis, f., strength, power, force. See p. 22
viso, visi, visum, visere, 3, v. freq., I go to see, visit.

XERXES

visus, ūs, m., sight.
vita, ae, f., life.
vītūpēro, āvi, ātum, 1, I blame, find fault with.
vivo, vixi, victum, vivere, 3, I live.
vix, adv., scarcely; with difficulty.
volo, āvi, ātum, 1, I fly.
vōlo, vōlti, velle. v. irr., I wish, am willing. See p. 78.
vōluntās, ātis, f., a wish, will.
vōluptās, ātis, f., pleasure.
vōs, ye or you, pl. of tu: p. 33.
vox, vōcis, f., a voice.
vulnēro, āvi, ātum, 1, I wound.
vulnus, ōris, n., a wound.
vultur, ūris, m., a vulture.
vultus, ūs, m., countenance.

X

Xēnōphōn, ōntis, m., Xenophon, an Athenian.
Xerxēs, is, m., Xerxes, a king of Persia.

ENGLISH INDEX.

ABANDON

A

N.B.—The Infinitives of Verbs (excepting Regular Verbs of the 1st Conjugation), and the quantities of final syllables, are given in the Index of Latin words.

abandon, dēserō, ūi, rtum, 3; (an enterprise) ōmitto, mīsi, ssum, 3.

able, be, possum, p. 77.

abode, dōmicilium, i, n.

about, adv., circiter, adv.

—, prep., v. around.

above, sup̄er, sup̄ra, preps. with acc.; super sometimes with abl.

absurd, absurdus, a, um, adj.

abuse, ābūtor, ūsus, 3, v. dep., with abl.

accident, cāsus, ūs, m.

accompany, cōmītor, ātus, 1, v. dep.

accomplish, conficīo, fēcī, fec-tum, 3.

accordance, in — with, sēcun-dum, prep. with acc.

account of, on, ūb, propt̄er, preps. with acc.; causā, with gen.

accuse, accūso, āvi, ātum, 1.

accused man, rēus, i, m.

accustomed, to be, solēo, ūtus sum, 2, semi-dep., p. 86.

acquire, ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3, v. dep.

across, trans, prep. with acc.

act, faciō, fēcī, factum, 3.

— (subs.), factum, i, n.

actively, gnāvīt̄er, adv.

admire, mīror, admiror, ātus, 1, v. dep.

AMBASSADOR

adorn, orno, āvi, ātum, 1.

advance, progrēdiōr, gressus, 3, v. dep.

advice, consilium, i, n.

advise, suādēo, si, sum, 2, with dat.; mōnēo, ūi, ūtum, 2.

affair, rēs, rēi, f.

affliction, aerumna, ae, f.

afford, praebeō, ūi, ūtum, 2.

after, post, prep. with acc.

against, adversus, contrā, preps. with acc.

age, aetās, ātis, f.

—, old, sēnectūs, ūtis, f.
aged (so many years), par̄t̄is, nā-tus, a, um.

agree, consentiō, si, sum, 4.

agreed, it is, constāt, stābat, 1, v. impers.

aid, auxiliūm, i, n.

air, āēr, ēris, acc. āērā, m.

alarm, terror, ōris, m.

—, to, terrēo, ūi, ūtum, 2.

all, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um, adj. See p. 23.

— (together), cunctus, a, um, adj.

allowed, it is, licet, licuit and licitum est, licēre, 2, v. impers. with dat., p. 87.

ally, socius, i, m.

almost, prōp̄e, paenē, adv.

alone, solus, a, um; ūnus, a, um, adj. See p. 23.

Alps, Alpes, ūm, pl. f.

already, jam, adv.

also, etiā; quōquē, conj.

altogether, plānē, adv.

always, semp̄er, adv.

ambassador, lēgātus, i, m.

AMONG

among, *inter*, *prep.* with *acc.*
 —, to be, *intersum* (with *dat.*), p. 32.
 amuse, *dēlecto*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
 ancestors, *mājōres*, *um*, *m. pl.*
 ancient, *antīquus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
 ancients, the, *vētēres*, *um*, *m. pl.* of *adj.* *vētus*.
 and, *et*, *atque*, *ac*, *-que*, *conj.*
 anger, *ira*, *ae*, *f.*
 angry, *irātus*, *a*, *um*, *part. adj.*
 —, to be, *irascor*, *irātus*, 3, *v. dep.*
 animal, *animāl*, *ālīs*, *n.*
 —, large, *bēlūa* (bell-), *ae*, *f.*
 —, small, *bestiola*, *ae*, *f.*
 another, *ālius*, *ā*, *ūl*; *gen.* *ālius*, *dat.* *āli*: see pp. 23, 24. See also *other*.
 answer, *respondēo*, *di*, *sum*, 2.
 any, *ullus*, *a*, *um* (*any single one*), *adj.* See p. 23.
 any one, *quisquam*, *quidquam* (*any single person or thing*): p. 129.
 any time, *at*, *unquam*, *adv.*
 appear, *vidēor*, *visus*, 2, *v. pass.*
 apple, *mālum*, *i*, *n.*
 apple-tree, *mālus*, *i*, *f.*
 appoint, *fāciō*, *fēci*, *factum*, 3;
as pass., *fio*: see p. 85.
 approach, to, *appropinquo*, *ad-*
vento, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1; *accēdo*, *cessi*,
cessum, 3.
 arms, *arma*, *ōrum*, *n. pl.*
 army, *exercitus*, *ūs*, *m.*
 around, *circā*, *circum*, *preps.* with
acc.
 arrange, *instrūo*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.
 arrival, *adventus*, *ūs*, *m.*
 arrive, *pervēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*,
 4; to be on the point of -ing, *ad-*
vento, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
 arrow, *sāgitta*, *ae*, *f.*
 art, *ars*, *artis*, *f.*
 as (*adv.* and *conj.*), *ūt*.
 as . . . as (*adv.*), in comparisons,
tam . . . *quam*; after *such* (*tālis*),
quālis, *e*.
 as far as, *tēnus*, *prep.* with *abl.*
 and *gen.*, p. 74.

BEAR

as if, *quāsi*, *conj.*
 — soon as, *simul atque* (*ac*),
simulatque, *simulac*, with *perf.*
ind. when used of the past.
 ascertain, *cognosco*, *nōvi*, *nītum*,
 3.
 ascribe, *tribūo*, *ūi*, *ūtum*, 3.
 ask, *rūgo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1; *pēto*,
ivi and *ii*, *itum*, 3.
 assault, *oppugno*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
 assemble, *convēnio*, *vēni*, *ven-*
tum, 4.
 assign, *tribūo*, *ūi*, *ūtum*, 3.
 assist, *adjuvo*, *jūvi*, *jūtum*, 1.
 assistance, *auxilium*, *i*, *n.*
 assuage, *mollio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.
 at: see p. 93, Rule 22.
 at last, at length, *tandem*, *adv.*
 Athenian, *Athēniensis*, *e*, *adj.*
 As *subs.*, *Athēniensis*, *is*, *m.*
 Athens, *Athēnae*, *arum*, *f. pl.*
 attack, *impētus*, *ūs*, *m.*
 —, to, *oppugno*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
 attain to, *adipiscor*, *adeptus*, 3,
v. dep.
 attempt, *cōnor*, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.*
 attentive, *attentus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
 attentively, *attentē*, *adv.*
 author, *scriptor*, *ōris*, *m.*
 authority, *auctoritas*, *ātis*, *f.*
 autumn, *autumnus* (*auct-*), *i*, *m.*
 awake, to be, *vigilo*, *āvi*, *ātum*,
 1.

B

bad, *mālus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
 banishment, *exsiliūm* (*exil-*), *i*,
n.
 bank, *ripa*, *ae*, *f.*
 base, *turpis*, *e*, *adj.*
 battle, *pugna*, *ae*, *f.*; *proelium*,
i, *n.*
 be, to, *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, p. 29.
 — in, among, &c., see com-
 pounds of *sum*, p. 31.
 beam, *trabs*, *trabīs*, *f.*
 bear, *fēro*, *tūli*, *lātum*, *ferre*, 3,
v. irr., p. 81.
 — through, *perfēro*, etc.

BEAST

beast, bestia, *ac, f.*
 —, great, belua (bell-), *ae, f.*
 —, small, bestiula, *ae, f.*
 beautiful, pulcher, chra, *chrom,*
adj.
 because, quia, quod, *conj.*
 — of, ob, propter, *preps.*
 with *acc.*
 become, fio, factus, fieri, *p. 85.*
 becomes, it, decet, *2, v. impers.,*
 with *acc., p. 87.*
 before (*prep.*), ante, with *acc.*;
 prae, pro, with *abl.*
 — (*adv.*), prius.
 — (*conj.*), priusquam, ante-
 quam; or as separate words,
p. 150 (note).
 —, to be, praesum, *p. 32.*
 beg, peto, iui and ii, itum, *3.*
 begin, incipio, cepi, ceptum, *3;*
 coepi, *v. def., p. 147.*
 beginning, initium, *i, n.*
 behalf of, on, pro, *prep. with*
abl.
 behind, pone, *prep. with acc.*
 behold, specto, avi, atum, *1.*
 behoves, it, oportet, ut, *2, v.*
impers., with acc., p. 87.
 believe, credo, didi, ditum, *3,*
 with *dat.*
 beneath, sub, subter, *preps. with*
acc. and abl.
 benevolent, benivolus, *a, um,*
adj. See p. 25.
 beside, praeter, *prep. with acc.*
 besiege, obsideo, sedi, sessum, *2.*
 betake (oneself), confero, tuli,
 collatum, ferre, *3, v. irr.*
 betray, prodere, didi, ditum, *3.*
 between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
 beyond, ultra, *prep. with acc.*
 bid, iubeo, iussi, iussum, *2, with*
acc.
 bind, vincio, xi, nctum, *4.*
 bird, avis, *is, f.*
 black, niger, gra, grum; ater,
 atra, atrum, *adj.*
 blame, culpo, vitupero, avi,
 atum, *1.*
 —, subs., culpa, *ae, f.*

BUILDING

blessing, a, bonum, *i, n.*
 blind, caecus, *a, um, adj.*
 blockade, obsidio, onis, *f.*
 —, to, obsideo, sedi, ses-
 sum, *2.*
 blood, sanguis, inis, *m.*
 bloom, floro, ui, —, *2.*
 blossom forth, effloresco, florui,
3.
 blow, flo, flavi, flatum, *1.*
 board, go on, conscendo, di,
 sum, *3 (with navem, naves).*
 body, corpus, oris, *n.*
 bold, audax, acis, *adj.*
 bond, vinculum, *i, n.*
 bone, os, ossis, *n.*
 book, liber, bri, *m.*
 booty, praeda, *ae, f.*
 born, be, nascor, natus, *3, v.*
dep.
 both . . . and (*conjs.*), et . . . et.
 boundary, finis, *is, m. (rarely f.).*
 boy, puer, eri, *m.*
 bow, arcus, us, *m.*
 brave, fortis, *e, adj.*
 bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
 break, frango, fregi, fractum, *3.*
 bridge, pons, tis, *m.*
 bright, splendidus, *a, um, adj.*
 brightness, brilliancy, splendor,
 oris, *m.*
 bring, fero, tuli, latum, ferre,
3, v. irr., p. 81.
 — back, refero, rettuli (ret-),
 relatum; see compounds of fero,
p. 82.
 — forth (young), pario, pe-
 peri, partum (*ful. part. pariturus*),
3.
 — to an end, finio, iui,
 itum, *4;* conficio, feci, factum, *3.*
 — together, cogo, coegi,
 actum, *3;* contraho, xi, etum, *3.*
 Britain, Britannia, *ae, f.*
 Briton, Britannus, *i, m.*
 broad, latus, *a, um, adj.*
 brother, frater, tris, *m.*
 brow, frons, tis, *f.*
 build, aedifico, avi, atum, *1.*
 building, aedificum, *i, n.*

BULL

bull, taurus, *i. m.*
 burden, ōnus, ēris, *n.*
 burn, *trans.*, incendio, *di. sum*, 3.
 —, be on fire, *intrans.*, ardēo, *si. sum*, 2.
 burnt down, to be, dēflagro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 burst through, perrumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3.
 bury, sēpēlio, īvi, pultum, 4.
 business, nēgōtium, *i. n.*
 busy, occupātus, *a. um*; *in-* *dustrius*, *a. um, adj.*
 but, sēd, autem; the former first, the latter second in a sentence: after a negative *phr.*, quin, *p. 98.*
 buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.
 by (denoting personal agent, *p. 63*), āb (before a vowel), ā (before a consonant), *prep.* with *abl.*

C

call, vōco, āvi, ātum, 1.
 — together, convōco, āvi, ātum, 1.
 — to mind, rēcordor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*; with *acc.* or, less freq., *gen.*
 calm, tranquillus, *a. um, adj.*
 camp, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*
 can, possum, *v. irr.*, *p. 77.* *I cannot but . . .*, facere non possum quin.
 care, cūra, *ae. f.*
 —, take, cūro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 careful, diligens, ntis, *adj.*
 carefully, diligētēr, *adv.*
 carry, porto, āvi, ātum, 1; vēho, vexi, vectum, 3.
 — (a wall, ditch, &c.), dūco, xī, ctum, 3.
 — on (war), gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.
 Carthage, Carthāgo, īnis, *f.*
 Carthaginian, *subs.*, Poenus, *i. m.*
 —, *adj.*, Pūnicus, *a. um*; Carthāgīniensis, *e.*

CLOUD

cast away, abjicio (ābjīcio), jēci, jectum, 3.
 — down, dējicio (dējīcio), jēci, jectum; affligo, xī, ctum, 3.
 — forth, out, ējicio (ējīcio), jēci, jectum, 3.
 catch, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3.
 Catiline, Cātīlina, *ae. m.*
 cause, causa, *ae. f.*
 cavalry, ēquītātus, ūs, *m.*
 celebrated, clārus, *a. um, adj.*; nōbilis, *e. adj.*
 celestial, caelestis, *e. adj.*
 century, centūria, *ae. f.*
 certain, certus, *a. um, adj.*
 —, *a. quidam*, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, *pron.*
 chain, vinculum, *i. n.*
 chance, cāsus, ūs, *m.*
 —, by, fortē, cāsū.
 change, mūto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 charge, (*commission*) mandātum, *i. n.*
 —, to, mando, āvi, ātum, 1.
 chariot, currus, ūs, *m.*
 chastise, castigo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 cheap, vilis, *e. adj.*
 cheer, exhīlāro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 cheerful, hīlāris, *e. adj.*
 cheese, cāsēus, *i. m.*
 cherish, cōlo, tū, cultum, 3.
 cherry, cērāsus, *i. n.*
 — tree, cērāsus, *i. f.*
 children, libērī, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 Cimbrians, Cimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*
 citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
 citizen, cīvis, *is. c.*
 citizenship, cīvitas, ātis, *f.*
 city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
 civil, belonging to a citizen, cīvīlis, *e. adj.*
 class, gēnus, gēnēris, *n.*
 clear, clārus, sērēnus, *a. um, adj.*
 —, it is, liquet, 2, *v. impers.*, *p. 87.*
 cloak, palliūm, *i. n.*
 clothe, vestiō, īvi, itum, 4.
 clothing, vestis, *is. f.*; vestīmentum, *i. n.*
 cloud, nūbēs, *is. f.*

COAST

coast, ōra, ae, *f.*
 cohort, cōhors, rtis, *f.*
 cold, frigus, ōris, *n.*
 colony, cōlōnia, ae, *f.*
 colour, cōlor, ōris, *m.*
 come, vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
 — frequently, ventito, āvi, ātum, 1.
 — to pass, fio, factus, fieri : see p. 85.
 — together, convēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
 command, impēro, āvi, ātum, 1, with *dat.*; jūbō, jussi, jussum, 2, with *acc.* and *inf.*
 commander (in chief), impērātor, ōris, *m.*
 commission, mandātum, i, *n.*
 common, communis, e (*shared*); vilis, e (*cheap*).
 commonly, fēre, plerumquē, *adv.*
 commonwealth, respública, rēipublicae, *f.*
 companion, (on a journey) cōmēs, itis, c.; (*in general*) sōcius, i, *m.*
 comparison with, in, prae, *prep.* with *abl.*
 comply with, obtempēro, āvi, ātum, 1; with *dat.*
 comrade, sōcius, i, *m.*; (*fellow-soldier*) commilitō, ōnis, *m.*
 concerning, dē, *prep.* with *abl.*
 confess, fātēor, fassus; confitēor, fessus, 2, *v. dep.*
 conflagration, incendium, i, *n.*
 conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3.
 conqueror, victor, ōris, *m.*
 conscience, conscientia, ae, *f.*
 conspiracy, conjuratio, ōnis, *f.*
 constellation, sidus, ōris, *n.*
 consul, consul, ūlis, *m.*
 —, office of, consulate, consūlātus, ūs, *m.*
 consult, consūlo, lūi, lūm, 3.
 consume, absūmo, consūmo, sumpsī, sumptum, 3.
 contemplate, contemplor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.* [with *abl.*
 contented, contentus, a, um, *adj.*;
 continual, perpētūus, a, um, *adj.*

DANGER

contrary to, contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
 converse, collōquor, locūtus, 3.
 Corinth, Cōrinthus, i, *f.*
 correct, corrigo, rexi, rectum, 3.
 counsel, consilium, i, *n.*
 count, nūmero, āvi, ātum, 1.
 countenance, vultus, ūs, *m.*;
 faciēs, ēi, *f.*
 country, the (opp. to 'the town'), rūs, rūris, *n.*
 —, one's own, patria, ae, *f.*: see also state.
 courage, ānīmus, i, *m.*
 cover, tēgo, xi, ctum, 3.
 cowardice, ignāvia, ae, *f.*
 create, crēo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 creator, creātor, ōris, *m.*
 credible, crēdibilis, e, *adj.*
 Crete, Crēta, ae, *f.*
 crime, scēlus, ōris, *n.*; (*daring*) faciūs, ōris, *n.*
 crop, messis, is, *f.*: fruges, um, *f. pl.*
 cross over, transēo, 4, *v. irr.*, p. 84. Also supēro, āvi, ātum, 1 (*to surmount*).
 crown, (wreath) cōrōna, ae, *f.*
 In fig. sense, regnum, i, *n.*
 cruel, crūdēlis, e; atrox, ōcis, *adj.*
 crush, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.
 cry out, clāmo, exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 cultivate, cōlo, cōlti, cultum, 3.
 — carefully, excōlo, cōlti, cultum, 3.
 curb, cōero, ōti, ūtum, 2.
 current, flūmen, īnis, *n.*
 custom, consuetudo, īnis, *f.*;
 mōs, mōris, *m.*
 cut off, interclūdo, si, sum, 3;
 to destroy, absūmo, sumpsī, sumptum, 3.

D

dance, salto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 danger, pēricūlum, i, *n.*

DANGEROUS

dangerous, periculōsus, a, um, *adj.*
 dare, audēo, ausus sum, 2, *semi-dep.*, p. 86.
 daring, audax, acis, *adj.*
 daringly, audacter, *adv.*
 darken, obscurō, āvi, ātum, 1.
 dart, telum, i, n.
 daughter, filia, ae, f.
 day, dies, ei, m. and f. in *sing.*; pl. *masc.* only.
 dead, mortuus, a, um; *part. of* morior.
 deal with, tracto, āvi, ātum, 1; with *acc.*
 dear, carus, a, um, *adj.*
 death, mors, rtis, f.
 —, put to, interficō, feci, *fectum*, 3.
 deceive, decipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
 deed, factum, i, n.; a bold, daring —, facinus, ōris, n.
 deep, altus, a, um; profundus, a, um, *adj.*
 —, very, praealtus, a, um, *adj.*
 defeat, clādēs, is, f.
 defend, defendo, di, sum, 3.
 defendant, reus, i, m.
 delicate, tēnūis, e, *adj.*
 delight, delecto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 delightful, iucundus, a, um; iulcis, suavis, e, *adj.*
 delightfully, iucundē, *adv.*
 deliver, libero, āvi, ātum, 1.
 — (hand down), trādo, didi, *litum*, 3.
 demand, postulo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 deny, nego, āvi, ātum, 1.
 depart, excedo, cessi, cessum, 3;
 migro, emigro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 deplore, deploro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 deserve, mereor, itus, 2, *v. dep.*: the act. form is also used.
 design, consilium, i, n. To form a —, consilium capere, inire.
 desire, to, opto, āvi, ātum, 1;
 cupio, iui and iū, itum, 3.
 —, studium, i, n.; cupiditas, atis, f.

DISTANT

despise, contemno, mpsi, mptum, 3; aspernor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
 despot, tyrannus, i, m.
 destitute, inops, opis, *adj.*
 destroy, perdo, didi, *litum*, 3; (*utterly*) delēo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
 destruction, exitium, i, n.
 destructive, perniciosus, a, um, *adj.*
 deter, deterreo, āi, itum, 2.
 determine, constituo, ūi, ūtum, 3; statuo, ūi, ūtum, 3.
 devote oneself, operam do, dedi, *datum*, dare, 1.
 devoted to, studiōsus, a, um, with *gen.*
 die, morior, mortuus, mōri, 3, *v. dep.* Fut. *part.*, moritūrus.
 different, varius, a, um, *adj.*
 difficult, difficilis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
 —, somewhat, subdifficilis, e, *adj.*
 dig, fodio, fodi, fossum, 3.
 diligence, diligentia, ae, f.
 diligent, diligens, ntis, *adj.*
 dine, ceno (cae-, coe-), āvi, ātum, 1, *perf. part.* cenātus, *having dined*, p. 86.
 disaster, clādēs, is, f.
 discern, cerno, [crevi, crētum], 3.
 discharge, fungor, nctus, 3, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*
 discourse, sermo, ōnis, m.
 discover, detego, texi, tectum, 3.
 disease, morbus, i, m.
 disembark, trans-, expōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3.
 disgrace, turpitudō, inis, f.
 disgraceful, turpis, e, *adj.*
 disgusts, it, taedet, 2, *v. imperf.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, p. 87.
 dishonest, improbus, a, um, *adj.*
 dishonesty, fraus, dis, f.
 dismiss, dimitto, mīsi, missum, 3.
 displease, displicēo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*
 dissolve, solvo, vi, ūtum, 3.
 distance, longinquitas, tātis, f.
 distant, longinquus, a, um, *adj.*

DISTANT

distant from, to be, absum, abfui & afui, abesse, p. 31.
 distinguished, insignis, nobilis,
 e; egrēgius, a, um, *adj.*
 distrust, diffido, isus sum, 3,
semi-dep., p. 86; with *dat.* of
 person; *dat.* or *abl.* of thing.
 disturb, turbo, āvi, ātum, 1;
 mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
 ditch, fossa, *ae, f.*
 divide, sēpāro, āvi, ātum, 1;
 divido, isi, isum, 3; partior, itus,
 4, *v. dep.*
 divine, divinus, a, um, *adj.*
 do, fācio, fēcī, factum, 3; as
pass., fio, factus, fīeri, p. 85.
 dog, cānis, is, c.
 doubt, dubito, āvi, ātum, 1.
 doubtful, dubius, a, um, *adj.*
 dove, cōlumba, *ae, f.*
 draw, drag, trāho, traxi, trac-
 tum, 3.
 — together, contrāho, traxi,
 tractum, 3; cōgo, cōgī, cōactum, 3.
 — up in order, instrūo, xi,
 ctum, 3.
 drink, to, bībo, i, 3.
 drive out, expello, pūli, pul-
 sum, 3.
 duty, mūnus, ēris, *n.*
 dwell, hābito, āvi, ātum, 1.
 dwelling-place, dōmiciūm, i,
n.; sēdes, is, *f.*

E

eager after, stūdiōsus, a, um,
 with *gen.*
 eager, be, stūdeō, tū, —, 2.
 eagle, āquīla, *ae, f.*
 ear, auris, is, *f.*
 earnestly, vēhēmētēr, magnū-
 pērē, strēnūē, *adv.*
 earth, terra, *ae, f.*
 easily, fācilē, *adv.*
 easy, fācilis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
 eat, ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, ēdere and
 esse, 3, *v. irr.* See p. 85.
 educate, ēdūco, āvi, ātum, 1.

EVERY

elegant, ēlēgans, ntis, *adj.*
 elephant, ēlēphantus, i, *m.*
 eloquent, ēlōquens, ntis, *adj.*
 embark, intrāns, nāvem (nāves)
 conscendo, di, sum, 3.
 embroider, pingo, pinxi, pic-
 tum, 3.
 eminent, exīmīus, ēgrēgius, pri-
 mārius, a, um, *adj.*
 empire, impēriūm, i, *n.*
 employ, ādhībēo, tū, itum, 2.
 encourage, hortor, ādhortor,
 ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
 end, finis, is, *m.* (rarely *f.*).
 —, put to an, finio, ivi, itum, 4.
 endure, patiōr, passus, 3; fēro,
 perfēro, p. 81.
 enemy (*public*), hostis, is, c.
 — (personal), inimicus, i,
m.
 engaged, occūpātus, a, um, *adj.*
 enjoy, frūor, itus and ctus, 3, *v.*
dep. with *abl.*
 enmity, inimicitia, *ae, f.*
 enough, sātis, *adv.*
 enquire, quaero, quaesīvi and
 xi, quaesitum, 3.
 enter, intro, āvi, ātum, 1; in-
 grēdiōr, gressus, 3, *v. dep.*
 entreat, ōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 envy, invidiā, *ae, f.*
 epistle, ēpistōla, *ae, f.*; littērae
 (lit.), ārum, *f. pl.*
 erect, exstrūo, struxi, struc-
 tum, 3.
 err, erro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 escape, fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3.
 esteem, diligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
 eternal, sempiternus, a, um, *adj.*
 Europe, Eurōpa, *ae, f.*
 even, *adj.*, aequus, a, um.
 —, *conj.*, ētiam, quodquē.
 evening, vesper, ēris and ēri, *m.*
 — comes on, vespērascit,
 3, *v. impers.*, p. 88.
 ever, at any single time, unquam,
adv.
 —, always, semper, *adv.*
 every, omnis, e, *adj.*
 — day (*adv.*), quōtidie (cot-).

EVERY

every one, quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, and *subst.* quicquē (*quidquē*), *pron.*

— thing, omnia, *n. pl.*;
omnēs rēs.

evident, manifestus, *a, um, adj.*

evil (*adj.*), malus, *a, um.*

—, *subst.*, malum, *i, n.*

example, exemplum, *i, n.*

excellent, optimus, *a, um*; egregius, *a, um*; praestans, *ntis*; *adj.*

except, praeter, *prep.* with *acc.*;
nisi, *conj.*

exercise, to, exercēo, ūi, ūtum, 2.

exhibit, = afford, praebēo, ūi, ūtum, 2.

exhort, hortor, adhortor, ātus, 1.

exile, exsiliū (exil-), *i, n.*

—, live in, ex(s)iliū āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.

experienced, pēritus, *a, um, adj.*,
with *gen.*

extend, profēro, tūli, lātum,

ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, p. 81.

eye, ōculus, *i, m.*

F

fable, fabūla, *ae, f.*

face, facies, *ei, f.*; vultus, ūs, *m.*

fall, cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, 3.

faith, fides, *ei, f.*

faithful, fidēlis, *e*; fidus, *a, um*,
adj.

false, falsus, *a, um, adj.*

famous, nobilis, *e, adj.*

far, far off, longē, *adv.*

— and wide, longē lātēquē.

farther, too far, longius, *comp.*
adv.

father, pater, *tris, m.*

— in-law, sōcer, *eri, m.*

fault, culpa, *ae, f.*

— with, find, culpo, vītūpēro,
āvi, ātum, 1.

favour, grātia, *ae, f.*

fear, mētus, ūs, *m.*; tīmor, ōris,
m.

FLATTERY

fear, to, mētūo, *i, —, 3*; tīmēo,
ti, —, 2; vēreor, ūtus, 2, *v. dep.*

feeble, dēbilis, *e*; infirmus, *a, um, adj.*

feed on, vescor, *no perf.*, 3, *v. dep.*; with *abl.*

feel, sentio, *si, sum, 4.*

feelings, the, (collectively) ānī-
mus, *i, m.*

feign, sīmūlo, āvi, ātum, 1;

fiingo, ānxi, fictum, 3.

fellow-citizen, -countryman,
civis, *is, c.*

fellow-soldier, commilito, ōnis,
m.

few, pauci, *ae, a, adj. pl.*

fidelity, fides, *ei, f.*

field, āger, *gri, m.*

fierce, fērus, *a, um*; saevus, *a, um.*

fiery (made of fire), ignēus, *a, um, adj.*

fig, fig-tree, ficus, *i* and *ūs, f.*

fight, pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.

— a battle, committo, misi,
missum, 3 (with proelium); dī-

mīco, āvi, ātum, 1.

find, rēpērio, reppēri, rēpertum,
4; invēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.

— fault with, culpo, vītūpēro,
āvi, ātum, 1.

finish, conficō, fēci, fectum, 3.

finished, perfectus, *a, um, adj.*

fire, ignis, *is, m.*

— = conflagration, incendium,
i, n.

—, be on, ardēo, *si, sum, 2.*

—, made of, ignēus, *a, um.*

—, set on, incendio, *di, sum, 3.*

first, primus, *a, um, adj.*

—, at, in the first place (*adv.*),
primum, primo.

first-rate, primarius, *a, um, adj.*

fish, piscis, *is, m.*

fix, figo, fīxi, fixum, 3; statūo,
ti, ūtum, 3.

flatter, ādūlor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*,

with *acc.* or *dat.*; blandior, ūtus,
4, *v. dep.*, with *dat.*

flattery, ādūlatiō, ōnis, *f.*

FLEE

flee, *fūgio, fugi, fugitum*, 3.
 — for refuge, *confūgio, fugi*, 3.
 fleet, *classis*, is, *f*.
 flesh, *cāro, carnis*, *f*.
 flight, put to, *fūgo, āvi, ātum*, 1.
 flourish, *flōreo, ūi*, 2.
 flourishing, *flōrens, entis*, *adj*.
 flow, *flūo, fluxi, fluxum*, 3.
 flower, *flōs, ōris*, *m*.
 fly (or rush) together, *convōlo, āvi, ātum*, 1.
 follow, *sēquor, secutus*, 3, *v. dep*.
 — up, *subsequor, cūtus*, 3, *v. dep*.
 folly, *stultitia*, ae, *f*.
 foolish, *stultus*, a, um, *adj*.
 foot, *pēs, pēdis*, *m*.
 foot-soldier, *pēdēs, itis*, *m*.
 for (*prep.*), *prō* (on behalf of), with *abl*.
 — (*conj.*), *nam, enim*; the former first, the latter second in its clause.
 forage, *pābūlor, ātus*, 1, *v. dep*.
 forced marches, *maxima itinera*, *n. pl*.
 forges, *cōpia, ārum*, *f. pl*.
 forehead, *frons, tis*, *f*.
 foresee, *prōvidēo, vidi, visum*, 2.
 forget, *obliviscor, litus*, 3, *v. dep.*, usu. with *gen*.
 form (*a plan*), *inēo* (with *consilium*), 4, *v. irr.*, p. 84.
 former, *pristinus*, a, um; *prior*, us, *adj*.
 formerly, *olim, quondam*, *adv*.
 fortification, *mūnimentum*, i, *n*.;
moenia, ium, *n. pl*.
 fortify, *mūnio, ūvi, ūtum*, 4.
 fortunate, *fēlix, icis*, *adj*.
 fortune, *fortuna*, ae, *f*.
 forum, *fōrum*, i, *n*.
 fountain, *fons, ntis*, *m*.
 frame, *fābrico, āvi, ātum*, 1;
fringo, finxi, actum, 3.
 free, *liber, ēra, ērum*, *adj*.
 —, to, *libero, āvi, ātum*, 1.
 freedom, *libertas, ātis*, *f*.
 freely, *liberē*, *adv*.
 friend, *amicus*, i, *m*.

GO

friendship, *amicitia*, ae, *f*.
 frighten, *terrēo, deterreo, ūi, ūtum*, 2.
 from, *ab* (*ā*), *dē*, *preps.* with *abl*.
 fruit, *fructus, ūs*, *m*.; *fruges*, um, *f. pl*.
 full, *plenus*, a, um, *adj.* with *gen*.
 function, *mūnus, ēris*, *n*.
 funeral, *fūnus, ēris*, *n*.
 furnish = supply, *praebēo, ūi, ūtum*, 2.
 future, *fūtūrus*, a, um, *fut. part.* of *sum*; *posterus*, a, um.

G

gain = get, obtain, *pāro, āvi, ātum*, 1; *ādipiscor, adeptus*, 3, *v. dep*.
 game, *lūdus*, i, *m*.
 garden, *hortus*, i, *m*.
 garment, *vestis*, is, *f*.; *vestimentum*, i, *n*.
 gate, *porta*, ae, *f*.
 gather, *lēgo, lēgi, lectum*, 3.
 — together, *contrāho, xi, ctum*, 3; *cōgo, cōēgi, actum*, 3.
 Gaul, *Gallia*, ae, *f*.
 —, belonging to, *Gallicus*, a, um, *adj*.
 Gauls, *Galli, ōrum*, *m. pl*.
 gaze, *tūdor, ūtus*, 2, *v. dep*.
 general, *impērātor, ōris*, *m.* (*commander-in-chief*); *dux, dūcis*, *c*.
 Germans, *Germani, ōrum*, *m. pl*.
 get, gain, *pāro, āvi, ātum*, 1; *ādipiscor, adeptus*, 3, *v. dep*.
 — back, *recūpero, āvi, ātum*, 1.
 — together, *compāro, āvi, ātum*, 1; *cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum*, 3.
 gift, *dōnum*, i, *n*.; *mūnus, ēris*, *n*.
 girl, *pūella*, ae, *f*.
 give, do, *dēdi, dātum, dāre*, 1;
tribūo, ūi, ūtum, 3.
 glide, *lābor, lapsus*, 3, *v. dep*.
 glory, *glōria*, ae, *f*.
 go, *eo, ūvi and ūi, ūtum, īre*, 4, *v. irr.*: p. 83.
 — away, in, out, &c., see *comps.* of *eo*, p. 84.

GO

- go to see, viso, visi, visum, 3.
 —, let, dimitto, misi, missum, 3.
 God, Dēus, i, m.; *belonging to God or the gods*, divinus, a, um.
 goddess, dea, ae, f.
 gold, aurum, i, n.
 golden, aureus, a, um, *adj.*
 good, bonus, probus, a, um, *adj.*
 —, *subs.*, bonum, i, n.
 —, do, prōsum, p. 32.
 —, quality, virtus, tūtis, f.
 goods, bona, ōrum, n. *pl.*
 govern, gubernō, āvi, ātum, 1.
 grandfather, āvus, i, m.
 grass, grāmen, īnis, n.
 great, magnus, a, um, *adj.*
 —, how, quantus, a, um, *inter. & rel. adj.*
 —, so, tantus, a, um.
 greatly, magnōpērē, *adv.*
 Greece, Graecia, ae, f.
 Greek, Grecian, Graecus, a, um, *adj.* *The Greeks*, Graeci, ōrum, n. *pl.*
 grief, dōlor, ōris, m.
 grieves, it, pigēt, piguit & pigitum est, pigere, 2, v. *impers.*; with *acc. and gen.*
 grievously, grāviter, *adv.*
 ground, hūmus, i, f.: *on the* —, hūmī, see p. 93.
 guard, to, custōdiō, īvi, itum, 4; tūcōr, itus, 2, v. *dep.*
 guardian, custōs, ōdis, c.
 guilt, scēlus, ēris, n.
 guilty, noxius, a, um, *adj.*

H

- habit, consuetudo, īnis, f.
 hails, it, grandinat, āvit, 1, v. *impers.*
 hand, mānus, ūs, f.
 hand down, trādo, prōdo, dīdi, ditum, 3.
 handicraft, ars, artis, f.
 handle, tracto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 happen, fio, factus sum, fieri, v. *irr.*, p. 85; accīdo, īdi, 3.
 happily, beatē, *adv.*

HOME

- happy, beatus, a, um, *adj.*
 harass, vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 harbour, portus, ūs, m.
 hard, durus, a, um, *adj.*
 hardship, labor, ōris, m.
 hare, lepūs, ōris, m.
 harm, nocēo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*
 hasten, contendo, di, tum, 3.
 hate, ōdi, *perf.* with *pres. sense*, p. 147.
 hatred, ōdium, i, n.
 have, habēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 —, rather, (*prefer*) mālo, ūi, *malle, irr. v.*, p. 78.
 head, caput, itis, n.
 —, be at the, praesum, fui, with *dat.*, p. 32.
 health, valētudo, īnis, f.
 —, be in good, vālēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 heap up, exstruo, xi, ctum, 3.
 hear, audio, īvi, itum, 4.
 hearing, auditus, ūs, m.
 heart, cōr, cordis, n.
 heat, calor, ōris, m.
 heaven, caelum, i, n.
 heavenly, caelestis, e, *adj.*
 heavily, grāviter, *adv.*
 heavy, grāvis, e, *adj.*
 help, auxilium, i, n.
 —, to, adjūvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.
 helpless, iners, eris, *adj.*
 Helvetian, *adj.*, Helvētius, a, um.
 The Helvetians, Helvētīi, ōrum, n. *pl.*
 hide (of an animal), pellis, is, f.
 high, altus, a, um, *adj.*
 —, vary, praealtus, a, um, *adj.*
 highest, summus, a, um, *sup. adj.*
 his, hers, *gen.* of is, ea: when referring to Subject, suus, a, um, *poss. pron. adj.*
 hold, tēnēo, ūi, tentum, 2.
 —, a levy, delectum habēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 —, together, continēo, ūi, entum, 2.
 home, dōmus, p. 22. At —, dōmi.

HOMER

- Homer, Hōmērus, i, m.
 honesty, prōbītās, ātis, f.
 honour, hōnor, ōris, m.
 hope, to, spēro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 —, spēs, ēi, f.
 hoped for, spērātus, a, um, *part. adj.*
 Horace, Hōrātius, i, m.
 horn, cornu, ūs, n.
 horse, ēquus, i, m.
 horse-soldier, ēquēs, ītis, m.
 hostage, obses, īdis, c.
 hour, hōra, ae, f.
 house, dōmus, ūs; see p. 22:
 at my —, domi meae; see p. 93;
 at the — of, apud, with *acc.*
 how great, quantus, a, um, *inter.*
 and *rel. adj.*
 — many, quōt, *indecl. inter.*
 and *rel. adj.*
 human, hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*
 hunger, fāmēs, īs, f.
 hunt, vēnor, ātus, 1.
 hurt, harm, nōcēo, tū, ītum, 2.
 with *dat.*; obsum, with *dat.*, p. 32.
 hurtful, noxius, a, um, *adj.*
 —, to be, obsum, with *dat.*,
 p. 32.
 husbandman, agrīcōla, ae, m.

I

- idle, ignāvus, a, um; ĩners, tis,
adj.
 if, sī, *conj.*
 —, as, quāsi, *conj.*
 ignorance, ignōrātiō, ōnis, f.;
 imprudentia, ae, f.
 ignorant of, be, ignōro, āvi,
 ātum, 1; nescio, īvi and īi, ītum, 4.
 ill, *adj.*, mālus, a, um.
 —, *adv.*, mālē.
 illness, morbus, ī, m.
 ill-will, īnvidīa, ae, f.
 image, īmāgo, īnis, f.; sīmūla-
 crum, i, n.
 imitate, īmītor, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*
 immediately, statim, *adv.*
 immense, ingens, tis, *adj.*
 immortal, immortālis, e, *adj.*

ITALY

- immortality, immortālītās, ātis,
 f.
 impair, infringo, frēgi, fractum,
 3.
 impiety, impious, nēfās, n. *indecl.*
 improve, ēmendo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 imprudence, imprudentia, ae, f.
 in, īn, *prep.* with *abl.*, p. 74.
 indeed, quidem, dēmum, *adv.*
 Indian, Indīcus or Indus, a, um.
adj. The Indians, Indi, ōrum, m.
 pl.
 indolence, ignāvia, ae; segnītīcs,
 ēi, f.
 indolently, ignāvē, *adv.*
 indulge, indulgēo, sī, tum, 2.
 with *dat.*
 industrious, industrīus, a, um.
adj.
 infamous, infāmīs, e, *adj.*
 infamy, infāmia, ae, f.
 infantry, pēdītātus, ūs, m.
 inferior, infērior, īus, *comp. adj.*
 See p. 25.
 infinite, īnfīnītus, a, um, *adj.*
 infirm, debilis, e; infirmus, a,
 um, *adj.*
 inhabitant, īncōla, ae, c.
 injure, obsum, obfūi or offūi.
 obesse, v. *irr.* with *dat.*, p. 32;
 nōceo, tū, ītum, 2, with *dat.*
 injurious, noxius, a, um, *adj.*
 innumerable, īnnūmērus, a, um,
adj.
 inquire, rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1;
 quaero, quaeſivi and īi, quaeſi-
 tum, 3.
 inquiry, cognītiō, ōnis, f.
 insect, bestīōla, ae, f.
 inside of, īntrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
 institute, īnstītūtiō, tū, ūtum, 3.
 instruction, praeceptum, i, n.
 instrument, īnstrūmentum, i, n.
 (usu. collective).
 integrity, prōbītās, ātis, f.
 intellect, mens, tis, f.
 into, īn, *prep.* with *acc.*, p. 74.
 iron, ferrum, i, n.
 island, īnsula, ae, f.
 Italy, Itālīa, ae, f.

ITS

its, *gen.* of is, ea, id; — *own* (referring back to Subject), sūs, a, um, *poss. pron. adj.*

J

join, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.
 — (battle), proelium com-
 mitto, misi, missum, 3.
 — together (*intrans.*), cōcō, 4, v. *irr.*, p. 84.
 journey, iter, itinēris, n.
 joy, gaudium, i, n.; laetitia, ae, f.
 joyful, laetus, a, um, *adj.*
 judge, iudex, icis, c.
 —, to, iudico, āvi, ātum, 1.
 judgement, iudicium, i, n.
 Jupiter, Jūpiter (Juppiter), Jū-
 vis, m.; p. 22.
 just, justus, aequus, a, um, *adj.*
 justly, justē, *adv.*

K

keen, ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*
 keep off, prōhibēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 — guard, vīgilo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 keeper, custōs, ōdis, c.
 kill, interficō, fēcī, fectum, 3;
 occido, cidi, cisum, 3.
 kind, bēignus, a, um, *adj.*
 kindly, bēignē, *adv.*
 king, rex, regis, m.
 —, to be, regno, āvi, ātum, 1.
 kingdom, regnum, i, n.
 knee, gēnu, ūs, n.
 know, scīo, īvi and īi, itum, 4.
 — not, not to know, nescīo, īvi and īi, itum, 4.
 knowledge, sciētia, ae, f.;
 cognitio, ōnis, f.
 — of, without, clam,
 prep. with acc. and, less freq., abl.
 known, nōtus, a, um, *part.* and
adj.

LETTERS

L

labour, labor, ōris, m.
 lake, lacus, ūs, m.
 lament over, dēplōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 land, terra, ae, f.; āger, gri, m.
 — (native), patria, ae, f.
 language, lingua, ae, f.
 large, magnus, a, um, *adj.*
 last, at, tandem, dēmum, *adv.*
 Latin, Lātinus, a, um, *adj.*
 law, lex, legis, f.; jūs, jūris, n.
 lawful, it is, licet, ūit, 2, v. *impers.* with dat., p. 87.
 lay waste, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 — siege to, obsīdēo, sēdi, ses-
 sum, 2.
 lead, dūco, xi, ctum, 3.
 — across, transdūco (trādūco),
 xi, ctum, 3.
 — out, ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.
 leader, dux, dūcis, c.
 learn, disco, didici, —, 3: to
 ascertain, cognosco, nōvi, nītum, 3.
 — in addition, addisco, dī-
 dici, —, 3.
 learned, doctus, a, um, *adj.*
 learning, littērae (lit.), ārum,
 f. pl.
 least, mīnimus, a, um, *sup. adj.*,
 p. 25.
 — degree, in the, mīnimē,
sup. adv.
 leave, relīquo, liqui, licum, 3.
 leg, crūs, ūris, n.
 legion, lēgio, ōnis, f.
 length, longitūdo, inis, f.; lon-
 ginquitas, ātis, f.
 —, at, tandem, *adv.*
 less, mīnor, us, *comp. adj.*, p. 25.
 lesson, praeceptum, i, n.
 lest, nē, *conj.*, p. 98.
 —, and, nēvē, *conj.*
 letter, of the alphabet, littēra
 (lit.), ae, f.; an epistle, littērae
 (lit.), ārum, f.; epistola, ae, f.
 letters, literature, littērne (lit.),
 ārum, f.

LEVEL

level, æquus, a, um, *adj.*
 levy, delectus, ūs, *m.*
 liar, lying, (homo) mendax, *adj.*
 liberty, libertas, ātis, *f.*
 lictor, lictor, ōris, *m.*
 lie (on the ground), jācō, ūi, 2.
 — (to speak falsely), mentor, itus, 4, *v. dep.*
 lieutenant, lēgātus, i, *m.*
 life, vita, æ, *f.*
 —, time of, aetas, ātis, *f.*
 light (*adj.*), lēvis, e, *adj.*
 — (subs.), lux, lūcis, *f.*
 —, it becomes, lūcescit (il-luxit), 3, *impers. v.*, p. 88.
 lightning, fulmen, inis, *n.*; fulgur, ūris, *n.*
 like, sīmīlis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
 likely, vērisīmīlis, e, *adj.*
 likeness, imāgo, inis, *f.*
 limit, finis, *m.* (rarely *f.*)
 —, to, finio, īvi, itum, 4.
 line, of poetry, versus, ūs, *m.*
 — of battle, acies, ēi, *f.*
 lion, lēo, ōnis, *m.*
 little, parvus, a, um, *adj.*
 live, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.
 — on, vescor, no *perf.*, 3, *v. dep.*; with *abl.*
 — in exile, exilium āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
 Livy, Līvius, i, *m.*
 load, ōnus, ēris, *n.*
 lofty, celsus, a, um, *adj.*
 long (*adj.*), longus, a, um.
 — (*adv.*), dū.
 look at, specto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 — upon or into, intueor, tuī-tus, 2, *v. dep.*
 looks, vultus, ūs, *m.*
 loosen, solvo, solvi, solūtum, 3.
 lord, dōmīnus, i, *m.*
 lot, sors, rtis, *f.*
 love, amor, ōris, *m.*
 —, to, amo, āvi, ātum, 1; dī-ligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
 — in return, redāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.

MEMBRANE

lovely, amābilis, e, *adj.*
 low, hūmilis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
 lower, infērus, a, um; infērior, *ius, comp. adj.*
 luckily, feliciter, *adv.*
 lucky, felix, icis, *adj.*

M

Macedonian, Mācēdo, dōnis, *m.*
 madness, furor, ōris, *m.*
 magistrate, māgistrātus, ūs, *m.*
 magnificent, magnificus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 25.
 maiden, virgo, inis, *f.*
 maintain, servo, conseruo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 make, facio, fēci, factum, 3.
 malevolent, mālēvōlus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 25.
 man, hōmo, inis, e; vīr, vīri, *m.*
 Plur. men = soldiers, milites, um, (Often expressed only by masc. ending of *adj.*)
 manage, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.
 manifest, mānifestus, a, um, *adj.*
 maniple, mānīpūlus, i, *m.*
 manner, mōs, mōris, *m.*; mōdus, i, *m.*
 many, multi, æ, a, *adj.*
 —, how, quōt, *indec. adj.*
 —, very, permulti, æ, a, *adj.*
 marble, marmōr, ōris, *n.*
 march, iter, itinēris, *n.*; forced -es, maxima itinera.
 market-place, fōrum, i, *n.*
 master, (owner) dōmīnus, i, *m.*; (teacher) māgister, trī, *m.*
 matter, rēs, rēi, *f.*
 measure, mōdus, i, *m.*
 —, to, mētiōr, mensus, 4, *v. dep.*
 meditate on, mēdītōr, ātus, 1;
 cogito, āvi, ātum, 1.
 meet (death, danger), ūbeo, īvi and īi, itum, 4, *v. irr.*
 mellow, mollis, e, *adj.*
 membrane, membrāna, æ, *f.*

MEMORABLE

memorable, mēmōrābilis, e, *adj.*
 memory, mēmōria, ae, *f.*
 metal, mētallum, i, *n.*
 migrate, migro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 mild, mītis, e, *adj.*
 milk, lac, lactis, *n.*
 mind, mens, ntis, *f.*; ānimus, i, *m.*
 mindful, mēmōr, ōris, *adj.*; with *gen.*
 miserable, miser, ēra, ērum, *adj.*
 missile, tēlum, i, *n.*
 mistake, error, ōris, *m.*
 —, make a, erro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 mistress, dōmīna, ae, *f.*
 money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*
 month, mensis, is, *m.*
 monument, mōnūmentum, i, *n.*
 moon, lūna, ae, *f.*
 more (*adj.*), plūs, plūris, *neut. adj.*; in *pl.*, plūres, a.
 — (*adv.*), māgis.
 mortal, mortālis, e, *adj.*
 most, plūrimus, a, um, *sup. adj.*
 mother, māter, tris, *f.*
 mound, agger, ēris, *m.*
 mount, to, conscendo, di, sum, 3.
 mountain, mons, ntis, *m.*
 mouth, ōs, ōris, *n.* (no *gen. pl.*)
 move, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
 much, *adj.*, multus, a, um.
 —, *adv.*, multum.
 multitude, multitūdo, īnis, *f.*
 my (mine), meus, a, um, *poss. pron. adj.*; *voc. sing. masc.*, mi.

N

name, nōmen, īnis, *n.*
 narrow, angustus, a, um, *adj.*
 native-land, patria, ae, *f.*
 nature, nātūra, ae, *f.*
 naval, nāvālis, e, *adj.*
 near (*adj.*), prōpinquus, a, um, *adj.*; *comp.* prōpior; *sup.* proximus.
 — (*prep.*), ad, with *acc.*:
 prōpē, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*
 nearest, proximus, a, um, *sup. adj.*: see p. 26.

OBSERVE

necessary, nēcessārius, a, um, *adj.*
 necessity, nēcessitas, ātis, *f.*
 need, ōpus, *indec. subs.*, with *abl.*
 needful, nēcessārius, a, um, *adj.*
 needle, ācus, ūs, *f.* See p. 120.
 neither, neuter, tra, trum: see p. 23.
 — . . . nor (*conj.*), nēquē (nēc) . . . nēquē (nēc).
 Neptune, Neptūnus, i, *m.*
 nest, nidus, i, *m.*
 net, rēte, is, *n.*
 never, nunquam, *adv.*
 new, nōvus, a, um, *adj.*
 next, proximus, a, um, *sup. adj.*: see p. 26.
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*
 nightingale, luscīna, ae, *f.*
 Nile, Nilus, i, *m.*
 no, none, nullus, a, um: see p. 23.
 noble, (famous) nōbilis, e, *adj.*
 nobody, no one, nēmo, īnēm, *c.*: not found in *gen.* or *abl.* (Use nullus.)
 noise, sōnītus, ūs, *m.*
 nor, nēquē, nēc, *conj.*: v. neither.
 not, nōn, haud, *adv.* See also that . . . not.
 nothing, nīhīl, *indec. subs. n.*
 nourish, nūtrīo, īvi, ītum, 4; ālo, ālui, ālitum and altum, 3.
 now, nunc, jam, *adv.*
 number, nūmērus, i, *m.*
 nurture, nūtrīo, īvi, ītum, 4.

O

oak, oak-tree, quercus, ūs, *f.*
 oath, iurāndum, iurisjūrandi, *n.*
 obey, pāreo, ūi, ītum, 2; ōbēdio, īvi, ītum, 4; both with *dat.*
 obscure, obscurus, a, um, *adj.*
 —, to, obscurō, āvi, ātum, 1.
 observe, ānimadvertō, verti,

OBTAIN

sum, 3; — carefully, contemplor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
 obtain, pāro, āvi, ātum, 1; ādīpiscor, ādeptus, 3, *v. dep.*
 — possession of, pōtior, itus, 4, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*; sometimes *gen.*
 ocean, ōcēānus, i, *m.*
 often, saepē, *adv.*
 —, very, saepissimē, *sup. adv.*
 oftentimes, saepēnūmērō, *adv.*
 old, sēnex, sēnis (of persons only); vētus, ēris, *adj.*
 — age, sēnectūs, ūtis, *f.*
 older, antiquus, pristīnus, a, um, *adj.*
 once, (not twice) sēmēl, *adv.*
 — upon a time, ōlim, quondam, āliquando, *advs.*
 one, ūnus, a, um, *adj.* See p. 23.
 — (of two), alter, a, um, p. 23.
 — (of any number), ālius, ā, ūd, p. 23.
 — . . . another, ālius . . . ālius, p. 23.
 —, the, . . . the other, alter . . . alter, p. 23.
 only, *adj.* ūnus, a, um, p. 23.
 —, *adv.* solum, tantum.
 onset, impētus, ūs, *m.*
 oppose, rēsisto, stīti, —, 3, with *dat.*; obsto, stīti, stātum, 1, with *dat.*
 oracle, ōrācūlum, i, *n.*
 oration, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
 orator, ōrātor, ōris, *m.*
 order, jūbēo, jussī, jussum, 2; with *acc.* and *inf.*
 ornament, ornāmentum, i, *n.*; dēcus, ōris, *n.*
 other, of two, altēr, ēra, ērum, p. 23.
 others, ālii, p. 23. See also *rest*, *the*.
 ought, one, oportet, ūit, 2, *v. impers.* with *acc.*, p. 87; dēbēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 out of, ē, ex, *prep.* with *abl.*
 outside of, extrā, *prep.* with *acc.*

PR. I. I.

PERSON.

overcome, sūpēro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 overwhelm, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.
 owe, dēbēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 owing to, it is, per (te, &c.) stat (of a negative consequence only): in positive sense expr. by ōpērā (tuā, &c.) fit.
 ox, bōs, bōvis, c., p. 22.

P

nace, passus, ūs, *m.*
 pain, dōlor, ōris, *m.*
 pains, to take, cūro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 paint, pingo, pinxi, p'ictum, 3.
 parent, pārens, entis, *c.*
 part, pars, tis, *f.*
 partner, sōciū, i, *m.*
 pass away, lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep.*
 — by, over, praetērēo, īvi and īi, itum, 4, *v. irr.*
 — through, transēo, īvi and īi, itum, 4, *v. irr.*
 —, come to, fio, factus, fīxī, p. 85.
 passion, cūpīditas, ātis, *f.*
 past, praetērītus, a, um, *adj.*
 path, via, ae, *f.*
 patience, pātientia, ae, *f.*
 patiently, pātientēr, *adv.*
 pay, solvo, vi, ūtum, 3.
 peace, pax, pācis, *f.*
 peacock, pāvo, ōnis, *m.*
 pear, pīrum, i, *n.*
 — tree, pīrus, i, *f.*
 pearl, margārita, ae, *f.*
 perceive, intelligo, exi, etum, 3; sentio, si, sum, 4; percipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
 perfect, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*
 perish, pēro, intērēo, īvi and īi, itum, 4, *v. irr.*
 Persian, Persa (-es), ae, *m.*
 person, hōmo, īnis, c., often expr. by masc. *adj.* only. See p. 46.

P

PERSUADE

persuade, persuādēo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.*
 perverse, perversus, a, um, *adj.*
 philosopher, philōsōphus, i, *m.*
 pillage, dirīpio, rīpui, reptum, 3.
 pitch a camp, castra pōno, pōsi, pōsitum, 3.
 pity, misēreor, itus, 2, *v. dep.*; misēret or misērētur, misērītum est, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* of subject; both with *gen.* of object.
 place, lōcus, i, *m.*; *pl.* lōca, *n.*, and (rarely) i, *m.*
 —, to that, cō, illūc, istūc, *adv.*
 —, to, collōco, āvi, ātum, 1.
 plain, plānitiēs, ēi, *f.*; campus, i, *m.*
 plan, consilium, i, *n.*
 plant, planta, ae, *f.*
 —, to, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.
 play, lūdo, si, sum, 3.
 pleasant, jūcundus, a, um, *adj.*
 pleasantly, jūcundē, *adv.*
 please, placeo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*
 pleases, it, plācet, libet, ūit, 2, *v. impers.*, p. 87; both with *dat.*
 pleasing, grātus, a, um, *adj.*
 pleasure, vōluptas, ātis, *f.*
 plenty, cōpia, ae, *f.*
 Pliny, Plīnius, i, *m.*
 plum, prūnum, i, *n.*
 — tree, prūnus, i, *f.*
 plunder (*subs.*), praeda, ae, *f.*
 —, to, dirīpio, rīpui, reptum, 3.
 poem, carmen, īnis, *n.*
 post, pōcta, ae, *m.*
 Pompey, Pompēius (-ēius), i, *m.*
 poor, paupēr, ēris, *adj.*
 portrait, imāgo, īnis, *f.*
 post, stātio, ōnis, *f.*
 poverty, paupertas, ātis, *f.*
 power, pōtentia, ae, *f.*; pōte tas, ātis, *f.* See Latin Index.
 — of, in the, pēnēs, *prep.*
 with *acc.*
 powerful, pōtens, tis, *adj.*

PUT

praise (*subs.*), laus, dis, *f.*
 praise, to, laudo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 pray, ōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 precept, praeceptum, i, *n.*
 precious, cārus, a, um, *adj.*
 prefer, mālō, mālui, malle, *v. irr.*, with *inf.*; antēpōno, pōsi, pōsitum, 3, with *acc.* and *dat.*
 prepare, pārō, āvi, ātum, 1.
 prepared, pārātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
 presence of, in the, cōram, *prep.* with *abl.*
 present, praesens, tis, *adj.*
 —, to be, adsum, adfui or affui, ādesse, *v. irr.*, p. 31: with *dat.*
 preserve, servo, conservo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 press, prēmō, pressi, pressum, 3.
 pretence, simūlatiō, ōnis, *f.*
 prevent, obsto, stiti, stātum, 1, with *dat.*; prōhibēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 probable, vērīsimilis, ae, *adj.*
 promise, prōmitto, misi, missum, 3; pollicēor, itus, 2, *v. dep.*
 properly, prōbē, rectē, *adv.*
 prostrate, to, affligo, fīxi, fīctum, 3.
 protect, tuōr, itus, 2, *v. dep.*
 provide, prōvidēo, vidi, visum, 2.
 provisions, commēātus, ūs, *m.*
 prudence, prūdētia, ae, *f.*
 prudent, prūdēns, tis, *adj.*
 public, publicus, a, um, *adj.*
 punish, pūnio, īvi, itum, 4.
 punishment, poena, ae, *f.*
 pupil, discipulus, i, *m.*
 pursuit, stūdium, i, *n.*
 put an end to, finio, īvi, itum, 4.
 — forth, prōfero, tūli, lātum, 3, *v. irr.*; expōno, pōsi, pōsitum, 3.
 — to death, interficēo, feci, factum, 3.
 — to flight, fūgo, āvi, ātum, 1.

QUALITY

Q

quality, good, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 queen, rēgina, *ae, f.*
 question, quaestio, ōnis, *f.*
 quiet, tranquillus, *a, um, adj.*
 quit, (*a place*) excēdo, cessi,
 cessum, *3, with abl.; (abandon*
a person) rēlinquo, liqui, lictum,
3.

R

race, gēnus, ōris, *n.*
 rainbow, arcus caelestis, *m.*
 rains, it, pluit, pluit and pluvit,
 plūere, *3, v. impers.*
 raise (*forces*), compāro, āvi,
 ātum, *1.*
 rapacious, rāpax, ācis, *adj.*
 rapid, rāpidus, *a, um, adj.*
 rare, rārus, *a, um, adj.*
 rarely, rārō, *adv.*
 rashness, tēmēritas, ātis, *f.*
 rather, have, mālō, ūi, malle, *v.*
irr., p. 78.
 read, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, *3.*
 — aloud, rēcito, āvi, ātum, *1.*
 — through, perlēgo, lēgi,
 lectum, *3.*
 ready, pārātus, *a, um, part. and*
adj.
 reason, rātio, ōnis, *f.*
 receive, accipio, cēpi, ceptum, *3.*
 recklessness, tēmēritas, ātis, *f.*
 recover, rēcūpero, āvi, ātum, *1;*
 rēcipio, cēpi, ceptum, *3.*
 refresh, rēcero, āvi, ātum, *1.*
 refuse, rēcūso, āvi, ātum, *1.*
 regions, lōca, ōrum, *n. pl.*
 reign, regno, āvi, ātum, *1.*
 reject, aspernor, ātus, *1, v. dep.*
 rejoice, gaudēo, gāvisus sum, *2,*
semi-dep., p. 86.
 relate, narro, enarro, āvi, ātum,
1.
 remain, mănēo, mansi, mansum,
2.

ROSE

remain over, supersum, fui, esse,
 with *dat.*, *p. 31.*
 remember, rēminiscor, —, *3, v.*
dep.; usu. with gen.
 render assistance, auxiliū
 fero, tūli, lātum, ferre, *3, v. irr.*
 renowned, clārus, *a, um, adj.*
 repents, it, paenitet (*poe.*), *2, v.*
impers. with acc. and gen., p. 87.
 republic, respublica, rēpub-
 licae, *f.*
 resist, resisto, stiti, —, *3; obsto,*
stiti, stātum, 1; both with dat.
 resolve, constitūo, ūi, ātum, *3.*
 respect, to, observo, āvi, ātum, *1.*
 rest, the, cētēri, ērae, ēra, *adj.*
pl. Sing. rare.
 restrain, cōcēro, ūi, itum, *2.*
 retain, tēneo, ūi, tentum, *2.*
 retire, cēdo, concēdo, cessi, ces-
 sum, *3.*
 return, rēdeo, *4, v. irr., p. 84;*
 rēverto, tū, sum; rēvertor, sus, *3,*
v. dep. (Active form of perfect
preferred.)
 reverence, to, vērēror, ātus, *1,*
v. dep.; vērēor, itus, 2, v. dep.
 reward, praemium, *i, n.*
 Rhine, Rhēnus, *i, m.*
 Rhodes, Rhōdos (-us), *i, f.*
 Rhone, Rhōdānus, *i, m.*
 rich, dives, itis, *adj.* See *p. 25.*
 riches, divitiāe, ārum, *f. pl.*
 ride, to, vēhor, vectus, *3, v. pass.*
 used as *dep.*
 right, *adj.*, rectus; *a, um.*
 —, *subs.* jūs, jūris, *n.*
 rightly, probē, rectē, *adv.*
 rise, to, (*as the sun*) orior, ortus,
 oriri, *4 & 3, v. dep.: see p. 146.*
 river, fluvius, *i, m.; flūmen,*
inis, n.
 road, viā, *ae, f.*
 robber, latro, ōnis, *m.*
 rock, rūpes, *is, f.*
 Roman, Rōmānus, *a, um, adj.:*
 as *subs.* Rōmānus, *i, m.*
 Rome, Rōma, *ae, f.*
 root, rādix, icis, *f.*
 rose, rōsa, *ae, f.*

ROUGH

rough, rugged, asper, ěra, ěrum,
adj.
round, circum, *prep.* with *acc.*
rule, rĕgo, rexi, rectum, 3.
run, curro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3.
rush together, convŏlo, āvi,
ātum, 1.

S

sacred, sācer, cra, crum, *adj.*
sacrifice, to, immŏlo, āvi, ātum,

1.

sad, tristis, e, *adj.*
safe, tŭtus, a, um, *adj.*
safety, sālŭs, ūtis, *f.*
sagacious, prŭdens, tis, *adj.*
Saguntines, Sāguntini, ōrum,
m. pl.
sailor, nauta, ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, grātīā, causā,
with *gen.*
Sallust, Sallustius, i, *m.*
same, idem, ēādem, idem, *pron.*
adj.

sanguinary, atrox, ōcis, *adj.*
save, servo, conservo, āvi, ātum,

1.

savour of, sāpio, sāpivi and īi, 3.
say, dico, xi, ctum, 3.
scarcely, vix, *adv.*
scent, ōdor, ōris, *m.*
scholar, discipŭlus, i, *m.*
school, schŭla, ae, *f.*; lŭdus, i,
m.

Scythians, Scŭthae, arum, *pl. m.*
sea, mārē, is, *n.*

—, of the, mārīnus, a, um, *adj.*
seat, sēdes, is, *f.*

second, sēcundus, a, um; alter,
ěra, ěrum, *adj.*

secretly, clam, *adv.* and *prep.*
with *acc.* or, less freq., *abl.*

see, vidĕo, vidī, vīsum, 2; cerno,
[crĕvi, crĕtum], 3.

—, go to, vīso, vīsi, vīsum, 3.
seeing, visus, ūs, *m.*

seek, quaero, quaesīvi & īi,
quaesītum, 3; (sue for) pĕto, īvi
and īi, ītum, 3.

SIDE

seem, vīdĕor, visus, 2, *v. pass.*
seemly, it is, dĕcet, ūit, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, p. 87.
seize, comprĕhendo, di, sum, 3;
rāpio, ūi, tum, 3.

— upon, occŭpo, āvi, ātum, 1.
seldom, rārŏ, *adv.*

senate, sĕnātus, ūs, *m.*
send, mitto, misi, missum, 3.

— on before or forward, prac-
mitto, etc.

sense, sensus, ūs, *m.*
separate, sĕpāro, āvi, ātum, 1;
divido, vīsi, vīsum, 3.

servant, mīnister, tri, *m.*;
(slave) servus, i, *m.*

serviceable, ūtilis, e, *adj.*
—, to be, prŏsum, prŏ-

fui, prŏdesse, *v. irr.*, p. 32.
set, (an example) praebĕo, ūi,
ītum, 2.

— against, in array, 'ppŏno,
pŏsui, pŏ-ītum, 3.

— out, prŏficio, fectus, 3,
v. dep.

settle, constituo, ūi, ūtum, 3.
severe, sĕvērus, a, um; grāvis,
e, *adj.*

severely, grāvītĕr, *adv.*
shake, quāŭo, no *perf.*, quassum,
3; concutio, ssi, ssum, 3.

shames, it, pŭdet, ūit, 2, *v. impers.*
with *acc.* and *gen.*, p. 87.

share, partior, itus, 4, *v. dep.*
sharp, (pointed) ācūtus, a, um,
adj.; (keen) ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*

sharpen, ācĕo, ūi, ūtum, 3.
shield, cŭtum, i, *n.*

shine, fulgĕo, si, 2.
ship, nāvis, is, *f.*

shore, litus, ōris, *n.*
short, brĕvis, e, *adj.*

shortly, mĕx, *adv.*
shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

—, to, clāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.
shut off, interclādo, īi, sum, 3.

Sicily, Sicīlia, ae, *f.*
sick, aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*

side with, adsum, adfui, ādesse
v. irr., with *dat.*, p. 31.

SIDE

side, on this, *cis, citrâ, preps.*
with *acc.*
siege, obsidio, *ônis, f.*
sign, signal, signum, *i, n.*
silence, silentium, *i, n.*
silent, to be, tacéo, *ûi, itum, 2.*
silver, argentum, *i, n.*
sing, canto, *âvi, âtum, 1; cāno,*
cēcini, cantum, 3.
sister, soror, *ôris, f.*
sit, sêdo, *sēdi, sessum, 2.*
skilful, skilled in, peritus, *a,*
um, with gen.
skin, (of animal) pellis, *is, f.;*
(of man) cutis, *is, f.*
— (thin), membrāna, *ae, f.*
slaughter, caedes, *is, f.*
slave, servus, *i, m.*
slavery, servitūs, *ûtis, f.*
slay, interficio, *feci, factum;*
(in battle) occido, *cidi, cisum, 3.*
sleep (subs.), somnus, *i, m.*
—, to, dormio, *ivi and ii,*
itum, 4.
slender, tēnuis, *e, adj.*
slothfulness, segnitēs, *ei, f.*
sluggish, segnis, *e; ignāvus, a,*
um; iners, tis, adj.
small, parvus, *a, um, adj.*
smell, odor, *ôris, m.*
snow, nix, *nivis, f.*
snows, it, *ningit, p. 88.*
so, (to such a degree) tam, *adv.;*
(in that way) itā, *sic, adv.*
soft, mollis, *e, adj.*
soften, mollo, *ivi, itum, 4.*
soldier, miles, *itis, c.*
—, fellow, commilito, *ônis,*
m.
—, foot, pēdēs, *itis, m.*
—, horse, equēs, *itis, m.*
Solon, Sôlon or Solo, *ônis, m.*
some, nonnullus, *â, um, adj.*
See also *alius, p. 24.*
some one, some thing, aliquis
(qui), aliquā, aliquid (quod), *indef.*
pron.
somebody, aliquis: see *preced.*
art.
sometime, quondam, *adv.*

STRAIGHT

sometimes, nonnunquam, *ali-*
quando, adv.
son, filius, *i, m.; voc. fili.*
— in-law, gener, *eri, m.*
song, (poem) carmen, *inis, n.;*
(singing) cantus, *ûs, m.*
soon, mox, *adv.*
— as, as, simūl atquē (ac);
or as one word: when used of a
past event, with *perf. ind.*
sooner, prius, *adv.*
sorrow, dolor, *ôris, m.*
sort, of that, talis, *e, adj.*
—, of what, quālis, *e, adj.*
soul, animus, *i, m.*
sound, sonitus, *ûs, m.*
sovereignty, dominātus, *ûs, m.*
sow, sêro, *sēvi, sātum, 3.*
speak, loquor, locutus, *3, v. dep.;*
dico, dixi, dictum, 3.
— to, alloquor, *cūtus, 3; with*
acc.
speech, oratio, *ônis, f.*
spend (life), aetātem ago, *egi,*
actum, 3.
spirited, ferox, *ôcis, adj.*
splendid, splendidus, *a, um, adj.*
spring, vēr, *vēris, n.*
spur, calcār, *âris, n.*
spy out, spēcūlor, *âtus, 1, v.*
dep.; explōro, *âvi, âtum, 1.*
stag, cervus, *i, m.*
stand, sto, stēti, stātum, stāre, *1.*
— by, adsum, adfui, *âdesse,*
v. irr. with dat., p. 31.
star, (single) stella, *ae, f.;* (con-
stellation) sidus, *êris, n.*
state, civitas, *âtis, f.*
station, statio, *ônis, f.*
statue, imāgo, *inis, f.;* simūlā-
crum, *i, n.*
steep, arduus, *a, um, adj.*
stern, atrox, *ôcis, adj.*
stone, lapis, *idis, m.*
—, of, lapidēus, *a, um, adj.*
storm, tempestas, *ât's, f.*
—, take by, expugno, *âvi*
âtum, 1.
story, fabūla, *ae, f.*
straight, rectus, *a, um, adj.*

STRENGTH

- strength, *vis, f.*, p. 22.
 strengthen, *firmitas, avi, atum, 1.*
 strive, *nitor, nisus and nixus*,
 3. *v. dep.*
 ——— hard, *enitor, nisus, &c.*, 3,
v. dep.
 strong, *firmus, validus, a, um*;
 fortis, *e, adj.*
 ———, be, *valēo, ui, 2.*
 ———, make, *firmitas, avi, atum, 1.*
 study, (*pursuit*) *studium, i, n.*
 successful, *felix, icis, adj.*
 such, *talis, e, pron. adj.*
 sudden, *sūbitus, a, um, adj.*
 suddenly, *sūbitō, adv.*
 suffer, *pātor, passus, 3, v. dep.*
 sufficiently, *sātis, adv.*
 summer, *aestas, atis, f.*
 sun, *sōl, solis, m.*
 sup, *cēno (cae-, coe-), avi, cēnā-*
tum, 1. See p. 86.
 supplies, *commeātus, ūs, m.*
 surround, *cingo, nxi, nctum, 3.*
 survive, *sūpersum, fui, esse, v.*
irr. with dat., p. 32.
 swear, *jūro, avi, atum, 1.* See
 p. 86.
 sweet, *dulcis, suavis, e, adj.*
 swell, *intumesco, tūmūi, 3.*
 swift, *cēlēr, ēris, ēre; vēlox*,
ōcis, adj.
 sword, *glādius, i, m.*; *ensis, is*,
m.; *ferrum, i, n.*
 Syracuse, *Syrācūsae, ārum, f. pl.*

T

- table, *mensa, ae, f.*
 take, *cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3.*
 ——— by storm, *expugno, avi*,
atum, 1.
 tall, *celsus, a, um, adj.*
 taste, *to, gusto, avi, atum, 1.*
taste of, v. savour of.
 tax, *vectigal, ālis, n.*
 teach, *docēo, ūi, ctum, 2.*
 teacher, *māgister, tri, m.*; *prae-*
ceptor, ōris, m.
 tell, *dīco, xi, ctum, 3.*

TOWARDS

- temper, *ānīmus, i, m.*
 tempest, *tempestas, atis, f.*
 temple, *templum, i, n.*
 tender, *tēnēr, a, um, adj.*
 tent, *tābernāculum, i, n.*
 terrify, *terrēo, ūi, ctum, 2.*
 territories, *fines, ūm, pl. m.*
 terror, *terror, pavor, ōris, m.*
 than, *quam, adv.*
 that (*pron.*), *istē, illē, is, pp. 34*,
 35.
 ——— (*conj.*), *ut, p. 98.*
 ——— not, *nē, quin, p. 98*; and
 that not (*after nē*), *nēvē, neu.*
 their, *gen. pl. of is, ēa, id*:
 when referring to Subject, *sūus*,
a, um, pron. adj.: p. 33.
 then, *tum, adv.*
 ——— indeed, *tum dēnum.*
 there, *ibi, adv.*
 thin, *tēnuis, e, adj.*
 thing, *rēs, ei, f.*
 think, *pūto, avi, atum*; (*medi-*
tate) *cōgito, avi, atum, 1.*
 thither, *ēō, illūc, istūc, adv.*
 three, *trēs, tria, num. adj.*: p. 27.
 through, *per, prep. with acc.*
 throw, *jacio, jēci, jactum, con-*
jicio (cōnicio), jēci, jectum, 3; — *a*
bridge over a river, flūmen ponte
jungo, 3.
 thunderbolt, *fulmen, īnis, n.*
 thunders, *it, tōnāt, ūit, āre, 1*:
 p. 88.
 thus, *itā, sic, adv.*
 tiger, *tigris, tigris, is and*
idis, c.
 time, *tempus, ōris, n.*
 ——— of life, *aetas, atis, f.*
 ———, for a long, *dīū, adv.*
 timid, *timīdus, a, um, adj.*
 to, *ad, prep. with acc.*; See
 also p. 92, Rule 21.
 too, = also, *quōquē, etiam.*
 ———, too much, *nīmīs, adv.*
 tongue, *lingua, ae, f.*
 torture, *cruciātus, ūs, m.*
 towards, *versūs, after its noun*
 (see p. 73), *adversūs, preps. with*
acc.

TOWER

- tower, turris, is, *f.*
 town, oppidum, i, *n.*
 train, train up, ērudīo, īvi, itum, 4.
 trained, ērudītus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
 Trasimēnus (lake in Etruria), Trāsīmēnus, i, *m.*
 tree, arbor, ōris, *f.*
 triumph, triumpho, āvi, ātum, 1.
 —, a, triumphus, i, *m.*
 (procession of a victorious Roman general).
 Trojan, Trōjānus, a, um, *adj.*
 trouble (*subs.*) aerumna, *ne. f.*
 —, to, mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
 troublesome, mōlestus, a, um, *adj.*
 Troy, Trōja, ae, *f.*
 tru., verus, a, um, *adj.*
 trust, fido, confido, fīsus sum, p. 86 : with *dat.* of person, *dat.* or *abl.* of thing.
 try, expērior, rtus, 4, *v. dep.*
 turn back, rēvorto, tī, sum, 3, and rēvortor, sus, 3, *v. dep.* (See *return.*)
 two, dūō, ae, ō, *num. adj.* : p. 27.
 tyrant, tūrannus, i, *m.*

U

- unable, to be, nēquēo, īvi and īi, itum, 4, *v. irr.*, p. 84.
 unbecoming, it is, dēdēcēt, ūit, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, p. 87.
 unbounded, infinitus, a, um, *adj.*
 unbrakfasted, impransus, a, um, *part. adj.*
 uncertain, incertus, a, um, *adj.*
 under, sub, subter, *preps.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
 undergo, sūbō, īvi and īi, itum, 4, *v. irr.*
 understand, intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
 undertake, suscipio, cēpi, cepitum, 3.

WAGE

- undone, infectus, a, um, *adj.*
 unfriendly, inimicus, a, um, *adj.*
 unjust, injustus, a, um, *adj.*
 unjustly, injustē, *adv.*
 unlearned, indoctus, a, um, *adj.*
 unless, nisi, *conj.*
 unlike, dissimilis, e, *adj.* See p. 25.
 unseemly, it is, dēdēcēt, ūit, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.*, p. 87.
 unskilful, impēritus, a, um, *adj.*; with *gen.*
 unwilling, to be, nōlo, *v. irr.*, p. 78.
 upper, supērus, a, um, see p. 25.
 upright, prōbus, a, um, *adj.*
 urge, hortor, ādhortor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
 use, to, ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*
 useful, ūtilis, e, *adj.*
 utmost, summus, a, um, *sup. adj.* See p. 25.

V

- valley, vallis (-es), is, *f.*
 valour, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 various, vārius, a, um, *adj.*
 vehemently, vēhēmentēr, *adv.*
 verse, versus, ūs, *m.*
 vexes, it, pīget, ūit, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*, p. 87.
 victory, victōria, ae, *f.*
 vigorous, strēnūs, a, um, *adj.*
 vigorously, strēnūē, gnāvītēr, *adv.*
 virgin, virgo, īnis, *f.*
 virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 visit, to, or go to, vīso, sī, sum, 3.
 voice, vox, vōcis, *f.*
 vulture, vultūr, ūris, *m.*

W

- wage (war), to, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.

WAKE

wake (*intrans.*), *vīgīlo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
walk, take a walk, *ambūlo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
wall, *mūrus*, *i*, *n*.
wanting, to be, *dēsum*, *fūi*, *esse*, *v. irr.* with *dat.*, p. 31.
war, *bellum*, *i*, *n*.
warlike, *bellicōsus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
warm, *cālidus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
warmly, *vēhementēr*, *adv.*
warn, *mōnēo*, *ūi*, *ītum*, 2.
waste, to lay, *vasto*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
watch, to, *vīgīlo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
water, *āqua*, *ae*, *f*.
—, to fetch, *āquor*, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.* (*milit.* term).
way, *vīa*, *ae*, *f*.
—, in that, *itā*, *adv.*
—, to be in the, *obsum*, *obfui* & *offui*, *ōbesse*, *v. irr.* with *dat.*: p. 32.
weak, *infirmus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*; *dēbilis*, *e* (*helpless, disabled*).
weakness, *infirmītas*, *ātis*, *f*.
wealthy, *opulentus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
weapon, *tēlum*, *i*, *n*.
wearies, it, *taedet*, *taeduit* & *pertaesum est*, 2, *v. impers.*, with *acc.* and *gen.*: p. 87.
weep, *flēo*, *flēvi*, *flētum*, 2.
well, *bēnē*, *adv.*; *comp.* *mēlius*, *sup.* *optimē*.
—, to be, *vālēo*, *ūi*, *ītum*, 2.
west, *occidens*, *entis*, *m*.
whale, *bālaena*, *ae*, *f*.
what, *quis* (*quī*), *quae*, *quid* and *quod*, *inter.* and *indef. pron.*
— sort, of, *quālis*, *e*, *rel.* *adj.*
when, *quando*, *inter. adv.*; *cum* (*quum*), *adv.* and *conj.*
where, *ūbi*, *adv.*
whether, *utrum*, *inter. particle*, p. 95.
which of two, *ūter*, *tra*, *trum*, *pron. adj.*
while, *dum*, *conj.*
whilst (*doing something*), *inter.* with *gerund.*

WONDER

white, *albus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
whither, *quō*, *rel. adv.*
who, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *rel. pron.*; *quīs* (*quī*), *quae*, *quid* or *quod*, *inter. pron.*
whole, *tōtus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*: p. 23.
why, *cūr*, *quārē*, *adv.*
wicked, *imprōbus*, *mālus*, *a*, *um*; *nēquam*, *indec. adj.*: p. 25.
wickedness, *scōlus*, *ēris*, *n*.; *nēfās* (*indecl.*), *n*.
wide, *lātus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.* *Far and wide*, *longē lātēque*.
widely, *lātē*, *adv.*
wife, *uxor*, *ōris*, *f*.; *mūliēr*, *ēris*, *f*.
wilful, *perversus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
will, *vōluntas*, *ātis*, *f*.
willing, to be, *vōlo*, *v. irr.*, p. 78.
—, to be more, *mālo*, *v. irr.*, p. 78.
win, *ādīpiscor*, *ādeptus*, 3, *v. dep.*; *pāro*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
— upon, *blandīor*, *ītus*, 4, *dep.*; with *dat.*
wind, *ventus*, *i*, *m*.
wine, *vinum*, *i*, *n*.
wing, *āla*, *ae*, *f*.
winter, *hiems* (*hīemps*), *ēmis*, *f*.
—, of, *winty*, *hibernus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
—, to, *hīēmo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
— quarters, *hiberna*, *ōrum*, *n. pl.*
wisdom, *sāpientīa*, *ae*, *f*.
wise, to be, *sāpio*, *īvi* and *īi*, 3.
—, a wise man, *sāpiens*, *entis*, *adj.* and *subst.*
wisely, *sāpienter*, *adv.*
wish, *vōluntas*, *ātis*, *f*.
—, to, *opto*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1; *vōlo*, *v. irr.*, p. 78.
—, not to, *nōlo*, *v. irr.*, p. 78.
with, *cum*, *prep.* with *abl.*
within, *intā*, *prep.* with *acc.*; also *in* with *abl.*
woman, *fēmīna*, *ae*, *f*.; *mūliēr*, *ēris*, *f*.
wonder at, *mīror*, *admīror*, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.*

WONDERFUL

^s
wonderful, mirus, mirābilis, e,
adj.

wood, silva, ae, f.

work, ōpus, ēris, n.

world, mundus, i, m.

worship, to, vērēror, ātus, 1, v.
dep.

wound, vulnus, ēris, n.

——, to, vulnēro, āvi, ātum, 1.

wounded, sauciūs, a, um.

wretched, mišēr, ērā, ērum, *adj.*

write, to, scribo, scripsi, scrip-
tum, 3.

writer, scriptor. ōris, m.

Y

year, annus, i, m.

yesterday, hērī, *adv.*

ZEALOUS

yield, cēdo, concēdo, cessi, ces-
sum, 3.

your, yours, (in speaking to one
person) tūus, a, um; (to more
than one) vester, tra, trum, *poss.*
pron. adj.

yourself, tu, tui, *pers. pron.* used
reflexively.

youth, (*the period of youth; also*
in collective sense, young persons)
juventūs, tūtis, f.

—— (a young man or woman),
jūvēnis, is, c.

Z

zeal, stūđrum, i, n.

zealous, stūđiōsus, a, um, *adj.*;
with *gen.*

——, to be, stūđeo, ūi, 2, with
dat.

SIR WILLIAM SMITH'S SMALLER HISTORIES.

Maps, Plans, and Woodcuts. Small crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

England, from the Earliest Times to 1887.

Scripture History, continued down to A.D. 70.

Ancient History. Down to the Conquests of Alexander the Great.

Ancient Geography.

Rome, to the Establishment of the Empire.

Greece, to the Roman Conquest.

Classical Mythology. For Ladies' Schools and Young Persons.

English Literature. With Lives of our Chief Writers.

Specimens of English Literature.

SIR WM. SMITH'S SCHOOL DICTIONARIES.

Latin.

A Smaller Latin-English Dictionary. With a Dictionary of Proper Names. By Sir WM. SMITH and Prof. T. D. HALL, M.A. (730 pp.) 7s. 6d.

Smaller English-Latin Dictionary. 7s. 6d.

Larger Latin-English Dictionary. 16s.

Larger English-Latin Dictionary. Compiled from Original Sources. 16s.

An English-Latin Gradus or Verse Dictionary. By A. C. AINGER, M.A. and H. G. WINTLE, M.A. (448 pp.) Crown 8vo. 9s.

Bible.

Concise Dictionary of the Bible. Illustrations. 21s.

Smaller Bible Dictionary. Illustrations. 7s. 6d.

Classical.

Classical Dictionary of Greek and Roman Mythology, Biography, and Geography. With 800 Woodcuts. 18s.

Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities. With many Illustrations. One Vol. 8vo. 21s.

Smaller Classical Dictionary. 200 Woodcuts. 7s. 6d.

Smaller Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities. 200 Woodcuts. 7s. 6d.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.